GENERAL KNOWLEDGE

THE COMPLETE GK BOOK

For School Students & Competitive Examination Aspirants

2026 EDITION

Important Facts • One-Liners • Short Notes
Exam-Oriented Information • Quick Revision

COMPILED & PREPARED BY
MAJJARIB KHAN

LEARN • UNDERSTAND • REVISE • SUCCEED

INDIA: BASIC GK

A. BASIC IDENTITY OF INDIA

1. Constitutional Name: India, that is Bharat.
2. Official Designation: Republic of India (भारत गणराज्य).
3. Capital: New Delhi.
4. Continent: Asia.
5. Region: South Asia.
6. Location: India lies entirely in the Northern Hemisphere (half of the Earth north of the Equator) and Eastern Hemisphere (half east of the Prime Meridian).
7. Currency: Indian Rupee (₹).
8. Currency Code: INR.
9. Standard Time: Indian Standard Time (IST).
10. IST: UTC +5:30.
11. Number of States: 28.
12. Number of Union Territories: 8.
13. Total States and Union Territories: 36.
14. Northern Boundary: Himalayas.
15. Western Sea: Arabian Sea.
16. Eastern Sea: Bay of Bengal.
17. Southern Ocean: Indian Ocean.
18. Southernmost Point of India: Indira Point, Great Nicobar Island.
19. Southernmost Point of Mainland India: Kanyakumari, Tamil Nadu.
20. Longest Land Border with a Neighbouring Country: Bangladesh.

B. INDIA AND ITS NEIGHBOURS

21. Land-Bordering Countries: Pakistan, Afghanistan, China, Nepal, Bhutan, Bangladesh and Myanmar.
22. Maritime Neighbours (countries connected by sea): Sri Lanka and Maldives.
23. Western Neighbour: Pakistan.
24. Northern Neighbours: China, Nepal and Bhutan.
25. Eastern Neighbours: Bangladesh and Myanmar.
26. Country Separated from India by the Palk Strait: Sri Lanka.
27. Island Country Located to the Southwest of India: Maldives.

C. NATIONAL IDENTITY

28. National Flag: Tiranga (Tricolour).
29. Colours of the National Flag: Saffron, white and green.
30. Ashoka Chakra: Navy-blue wheel with 24 spokes (spokes = radiating lines).
31. National Emblem: Lion Capital of Ashoka at Sarnath.
32. National Motto: Satyameva Jayate (Truth Alone Triumphs).
33. Source of the National Motto: Mundaka Upanishad.
34. National Anthem: Jana Gana Mana.

35. Author of the National Anthem: Rabindranath Tagore.
36. Original Language of Jana Gana Mana: A highly Sanskritised (strongly influenced by Sanskrit) form of Bengali.
37. National Song: Vande Mataram.
38. Author of the National Song: Bankim Chandra Chattopadhyay.
39. National Animal: Bengal Tiger (Panthera tigris).
40. National Bird: Indian Peacock (Indian Peafowl).
41. National Flower: Lotus.
42. National Tree: Banyan.
43. National Fruit: Mango.
44. National Aquatic Animal: Ganges River Dolphin.
45. National River: Ganga.
46. National Heritage Animal: Indian Elephant.
47. National Calendar: Saka Calendar.

D. CONSTITUTIONAL IDENTITY

48. Nature of India: Sovereign (fully independent), Socialist (aiming for social and economic equality), Secular (equal respect for all religions), Democratic (government elected by the people) Republic (head of state is elected).
49. Constitutional Provision for the Name of India: Article 1.
50. Article 1 States: "India, that is Bharat, shall be a Union of States."
51. Constitution of India: The supreme law (highest legal authority) of India.
52. Preamble: The introductory statement that explains the ideals and objectives of the Constitution.
53. Constitution Day: 26 November.
54. Republic Day: 26 January.
55. Independence Day: 15 August.

E. NATIONAL SYMBOLS & NATIONAL IDENTITY — CONTINUED

56. National Flag Designer: Pingali Venkayya.
57. National Flag Adopted: 22 July 1947.
58. Ratio of the National Flag: 3:2 (length to width).
59. Ashoka Chakra Source: Lion Capital of Ashoka at Sarnath.
60. National Emblem Adopted: 26 January 1950.
61. Lion Capital of Ashoka: Located at Sarnath, Uttar Pradesh.
62. Number of Lions in the Original Lion Capital: Four.
63. Visible Lions in the National Emblem: Three.
64. Animals Shown on the Abacus (base/platform) of the Lion Capital: Horse, bull, lion and elephant.
65. National Emblem Motto: Satyameva Jayate (Truth Alone Triumphs).

NATIONAL ANTHEM

66. National Anthem: Jana Gana Mana.
67. Author of Jana Gana Mana: Rabindranath Tagore.
68. National Anthem Adopted: 24 January 1950.
69. Original Composition: Jana Gana Mana was originally composed in Bengali.
70. Full National Anthem: The officially prescribed version consists of the first stanza of the original song.
71. Normal Duration of National Anthem: Approximately 52 seconds.

NATIONAL SONG

72. National Song: Vande Mataram.
73. Author of Vande Mataram: Bankim Chandra Chattopadhyay.
74. Language of Vande Mataram: Sanskritised Bengali (Bengali with strong Sanskrit influence).
75. Source of Vande Mataram: The novel *Anandamath*.
76. First Public Performance of Vande Mataram at an Indian National Congress Session: 1896, Calcutta Session.
77. Singer at the 1896 Congress Session: Rabindranath Tagore.

NATIONAL ANIMAL

78. National Animal: Bengal Tiger.
79. Scientific Name of Bengal Tiger: *Panthera tigris*.
80. National Animal Declared: Tiger was adopted as the National Animal in 1973.
81. Tiger Conservation Programme: Project Tiger.
82. Project Tiger Launched: 1973.

NATIONAL BIRD

83. National Bird: Indian Peacock (Indian Peafowl).
84. Scientific Name of Indian Peafowl: *Pavo cristatus*.
85. National Bird Declared: 1963.

NATIONAL FLOWER

86. National Flower: Lotus.
87. Scientific Name of Lotus: *Nelumbo nucifera*.
88. Lotus Symbolism: It is associated with purity and beauty.

NATIONAL TREE

89. National Tree: Indian Banyan.
90. Scientific Name of Banyan: *Ficus benghalensis*.

91. Special Feature of Banyan: It develops aerial roots (roots growing from branches towards the ground).

NATIONAL FRUIT

92. National Fruit: Mango.
93. Scientific Name of Mango: *Mangifera indica*.
94. Mango Origin: Mango has been cultivated in the Indian subcontinent for thousands of years.

NATIONAL AQUATIC ANIMAL

95. National Aquatic Animal: Ganges River Dolphin.
96. Scientific Name: *Platanista gangetica*.
97. Other Name: Ganges River Dolphin is also called the **Susu** in parts of its range.
98. Major Habitat: Ganga-Brahmaputra-Meghna river systems.

NATIONAL HERITAGE ANIMAL

99. National Heritage Animal: Indian Elephant.
100. Scientific Name: *Elephas maximus indicus.*
101. Indian Elephant: A subspecies (a distinct population within a species) of the Asian Elephant.

NATIONAL CALENDAR

102. National Calendar: Saka Calendar.
103. Saka Calendar Adopted for Official Purposes: 1957.
104. First Month of the Saka Calendar: Chaitra.
105. Saka Calendar: It is based on the Saka Era (a historical calendar era).

IMPORTANT NATIONAL DAYS

106. Republic Day: 26 January.
107. Independence Day: 15 August.
108. Gandhi Jayanti: 2 October.
109. Constitution Day: 26 November.
110. National Youth Day: 12 January.
111. National Science Day: 28 February.
112. National Technology Day: 11 May.
113. National Sports Day: 29 August.
114. National Unity Day: 31 October.
115. National Voters' Day: 25 January.

F. INDIA — GEOGRAPHICAL BASICS

116. Geographical Location of India: India is situated in South Asia.
117. Latitudinal Extent of Mainland India: 8°4′N to 37°6′N.
118. Longitudinal Extent of India: 68°7′E to 97°25′E.
119. Tropic of Cancer: 23°30′N approximately.
120. Tropic of Cancer Passes Through: 8 Indian states.
121. States Through Which the Tropic of Cancer Passes: Gujarat, Rajasthan, Madhya Pradesh, Chhattisgarh, Jharkhand, West Bengal, Tripura and Mizoram.
122. Southernmost Point of India: Indira Point.
123. Location of Indira Point: Great Nicobar Island, Andaman and Nicobar Islands.
124. Southernmost Point of Mainland India: Kanyakumari, Tamil Nadu.
125. Northernmost Point of India: Indira Col, in the region of Ladakh.
126. Westernmost Point of India: Guhar Moti, Gujarat.
127. Easternmost Point of India: Kibithu, Arunachal Pradesh.
128. Standard Meridian of India: 82°30′E longitude.
129. Standard Meridian Passes Through: Mirzapur, Uttar Pradesh.
130. Indian Standard Time: Based on 82°30′E longitude.
131. Time Difference Between Gujarat and Arunachal Pradesh: Approximately 2 hours.
132. Total Geographical Area of India: About 3.28 million square kilometres.
133. India's Rank by Geographical Area: 7th largest country in the world.
134. India's Land Boundary: About 15,200 km.
135. India's Total Coastline: About 7,516.6 km, including mainland, Lakshadweep and Andaman & Nicobar Islands.
136. Mainland Coastline: About 6,100 km.
137. Arabian Sea: Lies to the west of India.
138. Bay of Bengal: Lies to the east of India.
139. Indian Ocean: Lies to the south of India.
140. Himalayan Range: Lies along the northern part of India.

G. INDIA'S PHYSICAL DIVISIONS

141. Major Physical Divisions of India: The Himalayan Mountains, Northern Plains, Peninsular Plateau, Indian Desert, Coastal Plains and Islands.
142. Himalayas: A young fold mountain system (mountains formed mainly by the folding of Earth's crust).
143. Northern Plains: Vast plains formed mainly by the deposits of the Indus, Ganga and Brahmaputra river systems.
144. Peninsular Plateau: One of the oldest and most stable landmasses of India.
145. Indian Desert: Also known as the Thar Desert.
146. Thar Desert: Mainly located in Rajasthan.
147. Coastal Plains: Narrow plains lying between the Peninsular Plateau and the coast.
148. Western Coastal Plain: Lies between the Western Ghats and the Arabian Sea.
149. Eastern Coastal Plain: Lies between the Eastern Ghats and the Bay of Bengal.
150. Islands of India: Mainly include the Andaman and Nicobar Islands and Lakshadweep.

H. IMPORTANT MOUNTAIN RANGES

151. Highest Mountain Range in India: The Himalayas.
152. Three Main Parallel Ranges of the Himalayas: Himadri, Himachal and Shiwalik.
153. Himadri: Also called the Greater Himalaya (highest Himalayan range).
154. Himachal: Also called the Lesser Himalaya.
155. Shiwalik: Also called the Outer Himalaya.
156. Western Ghats: Mountain range running parallel to India's western coast.
157. Eastern Ghats: Discontinuous mountain range along India's eastern side.
158. Highest Peak Located Entirely in India: Kangchenjunga, in Sikkim.
159. Height of Kangchenjunga: 8,586 metres.
160. Kangchenjunga: The world's third-highest mountain.

I. INDIA — PHYSICAL FEATURES

161. Major Physiographic Divisions (large natural physical regions) of India: The Himalayas, Northern Plains, Peninsular Plateau, Indian Desert, Coastal Plains and Islands.

162. Himalayas: A major mountain system forming the northern mountain region of India.

163. Length of the Himalayan Mountain Wall in India: About 2,400 km.

164. Major Himalayan Ranges: Himadri, Himachal and Shiwalik.

165. Himadri: Also called the Greater Himalaya; it is the highest Himalayan range.

166. Himachal: Also called the Lesser Himalaya; it lies south of the Himadri.

167. Shiwalik: Also called the Outer Himalaya; it is the southernmost Himalayan range.

168. Northern Plains: Extensive plains formed mainly by the alluvial deposits (sediments deposited by rivers) of the Indus, Ganga and Brahmaputra river systems.

169. Alluvium: Fine soil and sediments deposited by rivers.

170. Indo-Gangetic Plains: A vast plain region associated mainly with the Indus and Ganga river systems.

171. Peninsular Plateau: An ancient and relatively stable landmass forming a major part of southern India.

172. Deccan Peninsula: The large southern part of the Peninsular Plateau.

173. Major Ranges of the Peninsular Region: Aravalli, Vindhya, Satpura, Maikala and Ajanta ranges.

174. Western Ghats: A mountain range running along the western side of the Peninsular Plateau.

175. Eastern Ghats: A discontinuous (not continuous) mountain range along the eastern side of the Peninsular Plateau.

176. Nilgiri Hills: A hill region where the Eastern and Western Ghats meet.

177. Cardamom Hills: Hills located further south and regarded as a continuation of the Western Ghats.

178. Indian Desert: Commonly known as the Thar Desert.

179. Thar Desert: The major desert region of India, mainly located in Rajasthan.

180. Great Desert: The larger part of the Thar Desert.

181. Little Desert: The smaller desert region lying between the Luni region and the northwestern part of Rajasthan.

J. COASTAL PLAINS & ISLANDS

182. Coastal Plains: Narrow or broad lowland areas located between the Peninsular Plateau and the sea.

183. Western Coastal Plain: Lies between the Western Ghats and the Arabian Sea.

184. Eastern Coastal Plain: Lies between the Eastern Ghats and the Bay of Bengal.

185. Western Coastal Plain: Generally narrower than the Eastern Coastal Plain.

186. Eastern Coastal Plain: Generally broader than the Western Coastal Plain.

187. Major Island Groups of India: Andaman and Nicobar Islands and Lakshadweep.

188. Andaman and Nicobar Islands: Located in the Bay of Bengal.

189. Lakshadweep: Located in the Arabian Sea.

190. Lakshadweep: An archipelago (group of islands) of India.

191. Great Nicobar Island: The largest island of the Nicobar group.

192. Indira Point: Located on Great Nicobar Island and is the southernmost point of the Indian Union.

K. IMPORTANT GEOGRAPHICAL TERMS

193. Latitude: Imaginary lines running east-west and measuring distance north or south of the Equator.

194. Longitude: Imaginary lines running from pole to pole and measuring distance east or west of the Prime Meridian.

195. Equator: The imaginary line at 0° latitude dividing Earth into the Northern and Southern Hemispheres.

196. Prime Meridian: The 0° longitude used as the reference for measuring east and west longitudes.

197. Tropic of Cancer: The line of latitude at approximately 23°30′N that passes through India.

198. Tropic of Cancer in India: It passes through eight states — Gujarat, Rajasthan, Madhya Pradesh, Chhattisgarh, Jharkhand, West Bengal, Tripura and Mizoram.

199. Standard Meridian: The longitude selected as the basis for a country's standard time.

200. Standard Meridian of India: 82°30′E longitude.

L. INDIA — RIVERS & DRAINAGE

201. Drainage: The river system of an area is called its drainage system (network of rivers and streams).

202. Drainage Basin: The area drained by a river and its tributaries (smaller rivers joining a main river).

203. Major River Systems of India: The Himalayan river systems and the Peninsular river systems.

204. Himalayan Rivers: Mainly the Indus, Ganga and Brahmaputra river systems.

205. Peninsular Rivers: Mainly the Mahanadi, Godavari, Krishna, Kaveri, Narmada and Tapi river systems.

206. Perennial Rivers: Rivers that generally contain water throughout the year.

207. Himalayan Rivers: Generally perennial because they receive water from rainfall as well as melting snow and glaciers.

208. Peninsular Rivers: Generally depend mainly on rainfall and have greater seasonal variation in water flow.

INDUS RIVER SYSTEM

209. Indus River: One of the major rivers of the Indian subcontinent.

210. Source of the Indus: Near Lake Manasarovar in the Tibetan region.

211. Indus River Flows Through: Tibet, India and Pakistan.

212. Major Tributaries of the Indus: Jhelum, Chenab, Ravi, Beas and Sutlej.

213. Jhelum: A major tributary of the Indus River system.

214. Chenab: A major tributary of the Indus River system.

215. Ravi: A major tributary of the Indus River system.

216. Beas: A major tributary of the Indus River system.

217. Sutlej: A major tributary of the Indus River system.

GANGA RIVER SYSTEM

218. Ganga: One of the most important rivers of India.

219. Source of the Ganga: The river Ganga begins at Devprayag, where the Bhagirathi and Alaknanda meet; the Bhagirathi originates from the Gangotri Glacier.

220. Gangotri Glacier: A major Himalayan glacier associated with the source of the Bhagirathi River.

221. Bhagirathi: The river that originates from the Gangotri Glacier and meets the Alaknanda at Devprayag.

222. Alaknanda: A major headstream (upper river branch) of the Ganga.

223. Devprayag: The place where Bhagirathi and Alaknanda meet and form the Ganga.

224. Major Tributaries of the Ganga: Yamuna, Ghaghara, Gandak, Kosi and Son, among others.

225. Yamuna: A major tributary of the Ganga.

226. Source of the Yamuna: Yamunotri Glacier in Uttarakhand.

227. Confluence (meeting point) of Ganga and Yamuna: Prayagraj, Uttar Pradesh.

228. Ganga-Brahmaputra Delta: One of the world's largest delta regions.

229. Sundarbans: A vast mangrove (salt-tolerant coastal forest) region in the Ganga-Brahmaputra delta.

BRAHMAPUTRA RIVER SYSTEM

230. Brahmaputra: A major transboundary river (river flowing through more than one country).

231. Source Region of Brahmaputra: Tibetan Plateau.

232. Name of Brahmaputra in Tibet: Yarlung Tsangpo.

233. Brahmaputra in Arunachal Pradesh: It is known as the Siang or Dihang in its upper course.

234. Brahmaputra in Assam: It is known as the Brahmaputra.

235. Brahmaputra Enters Bangladesh: It is known as the Jamuna.

PENINSULAR RIVERS

236. Godavari: The largest Peninsular river system by length.

237. Godavari: Often called the **Dakshin Ganga (Ganga of the South)**.

238. Source of Godavari: Near Trimbakeshwar in Maharashtra.

239. Krishna River: A major Peninsular river flowing towards the Bay of Bengal.

240. Source of Krishna: Near Mahabaleshwar in Maharashtra.

241. Kaveri: A major river of southern India.

242. Source of Kaveri: Talakaveri in the Brahmagiri Hills of Karnataka.

243. Mahanadi: A major east-flowing Peninsular river.

244. Source of Mahanadi: Sihawa region of Chhattisgarh.

245. Narmada: A major west-flowing Peninsular river.

246. Source of Narmada: Amarkantak region of Madhya Pradesh.

247. Narmada Flows Into: Arabian Sea through the Gulf of Khambhat.

248. Tapi (Tapti): A major west-flowing Peninsular river.

249. Source of Tapi: Multai region of Madhya Pradesh.

250. Tapi Flows Into: Arabian Sea.

IMPORTANT RIVER FACTS

251. Major East-Flowing Peninsular Rivers: Mahanadi, Godavari, Krishna and Kaveri.

252. Major West-Flowing Peninsular Rivers: Narmada and Tapi.

253. Rivers Flowing Into the Bay of Bengal: Most major Peninsular rivers, including Mahanadi, Godavari, Krishna and Kaveri.

254. Rivers Flowing Into the Arabian Sea: Major examples include Narmada, Tapi and several west-flowing coastal rivers.

255. Delta: A depositional landform (landform formed by deposited sediments) created where a river meets a sea or lake and slows down.

256. Estuary: A tidal river mouth (place where river water meets the sea) where freshwater and seawater mix.

257. Narmada and Tapi: Major Indian rivers that form estuaries rather than large deltas.

258. River Pollution: Contamination (harmful pollution) of river water can affect human health, aquatic life and ecosystems.

259. National River of India: Ganga.

260. National Aquatic Animal of India: Ganges River Dolphin.

INDIA: BASIC GK

N. INDIA — LAKES, WATERFALLS & IMPORTANT WATER BODIES

311. Lake: A large inland body of standing water surrounded by land.

312. Natural Lake: A lake formed naturally by geographical processes (natural changes in Earth's surface).

313. Artificial Lake/Reservoir: A water body created or enlarged by human activities, often through dams.

IMPORTANT LAKES OF INDIA

314. Wular Lake: A large freshwater lake in Jammu and Kashmir.

315. Wular Lake Location: Bandipora district, Jammu and Kashmir.

316. Dal Lake: A famous urban lake located in Srinagar, Jammu and Kashmir.

317. Dal Lake Famous For: Houseboats and traditional shikaras (small wooden boats).

318. Pangong Tso: A high-altitude endorheic lake (lake without an outlet to the sea) in the Himalayan region.

319. Pangong Tso Location: Ladakh, extending into Tibet.

320. Tso Moriri: A high-altitude lake in Ladakh.

321. Tso Moriri Type: A high-altitude wetland (land area saturated with water).

322. Sambhar Lake: India's largest inland salt lake.

323. Sambhar Lake Location: Rajasthan.

324. Chilika Lake: A large brackish-water lagoon (water body containing a mixture of fresh and salt water) on the coast of Odisha.

325. Chilika Lake Famous For: Migratory birds (birds that travel seasonally between regions) and rich biodiversity (variety of living organisms).

326. Loktak Lake: The largest freshwater lake in northeastern India.

327. Loktak Lake Location: Manipur.

328. Floating Islands of Loktak Lake: Called **phumdis** (floating masses of vegetation, soil and organic matter).

329. Keibul Lamjao National Park: Located on the floating phumdis of Loktak Lake.

330. Kolleru Lake: A freshwater lake located in Andhra Pradesh.

331. Pulicat Lake: A large brackish-water lagoon located on the Andhra Pradesh–Tamil Nadu coast.

332. Vembanad Lake: The longest lake in India and one of the largest lakes in Kerala.

333. Vembanad Lake Location: Kerala.

334. Ashtamudi Lake: A major backwater (water body connected to a river, lake or sea) in Kerala.

335. Nalsarovar: A freshwater lake and wetland in Gujarat.

IMPORTANT WATERFALLS

336. Waterfall: A place where river or stream water falls vertically or steeply from a higher level to a lower level.

337. Jog Falls: A famous waterfall on the Sharavathi River in Karnataka.

338. Jog Falls Location: Shivamogga district, Karnataka.

339. Dudhsagar Falls: A famous waterfall located on the Mandovi River.

340. Dudhsagar Falls Location: Goa-Karnataka border region.

341. Athirappilly Falls: A famous waterfall in Kerala.

342. Athirappilly Falls River: Chalakudy River.

343. Nohkalikai Falls: A famous waterfall in Meghalaya.

344. Nohkalikai Falls Location: Near Cherrapunji (Sohra), Meghalaya.

IMPORTANT SEAS, BAYS & GULFS

345. Arabian Sea: Part of the northern Indian Ocean located west of India.

346. Bay of Bengal: Part of the northeastern Indian Ocean located east of India.

347. Indian Ocean: The ocean located south of India.

348. Gulf of Kachchh: A gulf on the western coast of Gujarat.

349. Gulf of Khambhat: A gulf located on the coast of Gujarat.

350. Gulf of Mannar: A gulf located between southeastern India and Sri Lanka.

351. Palk Strait: A strait (narrow water passage connecting two larger water bodies) between India and Sri Lanka.

352. Palk Bay: A shallow sea area between southeastern India and Sri Lanka.

IMPORTANT ISLANDS

353. Andaman and Nicobar Islands: An Indian Union Territory located in the Bay of Bengal region.

354. Lakshadweep: An Indian Union Territory consisting of islands in the Arabian Sea.

355. Barren Island: The only confirmed active volcano (volcano that has erupted in recent geological times) in India.

356. Barren Island Location: Andaman Sea region of the Andaman and Nicobar Islands.

357. Narcondam Island: A volcanic island in the Andaman and Nicobar Islands.

358. Minicoy: One of the islands of Lakshadweep.

359. Kavaratti: The capital of Lakshadweep.

360. Port Blair: The capital city of the Andaman and Nicobar Islands is officially known as **Sri Vijaya Puram** since 2024.

O. INDIA — CLIMATE, MONSOON & SEASONS

361. Climate: The long-term pattern (long-period condition) of weather of a place.

362. Weather: The day-to-day condition of the atmosphere (air surrounding Earth) at a particular place and time.

363. Climate of India: India has a **monsoon-type climate (climate strongly influenced by seasonal reversal of winds).**

364. Monsoon: Seasonal reversal (change in direction) of wind patterns.

365. Indian Monsoon: The monsoon system is mainly influenced by the differential heating (different rates of heating) of land and water.

366. Main Monsoon Seasons in India: Southwest Monsoon and Northeast Monsoon.

367. Southwest Monsoon: The principal rainy season for most of India.

368. Southwest Monsoon Period: Generally June to September.

369. Northeast Monsoon: Also called the retreating or winter monsoon in parts of India.

370. Northeast Monsoon Period: Generally October to December.

371. Onset of Southwest Monsoon: It normally reaches Kerala around the beginning of June.

372. Retreating Monsoon: The southwest monsoon gradually withdraws from India during September–October.

373. Monsoon Winds: Winds that reverse their direction seasonally.

374. Rainfall: Water falling from the atmosphere in the form of rain, snow, sleet or hail.

375. Orographic Rainfall: Rainfall caused when moist air rises over mountains and cools.

376. Western Ghats: Cause significant orographic rainfall on their windward (facing the incoming moist winds) slopes.

377. Rain Shadow Area: An area receiving relatively little rainfall because mountains block moisture-bearing winds.

378. Meghalaya: One of the wettest regions of India.

379. Mawsynram: Located in Meghalaya and famous for extremely high annual rainfall.

380. Cherrapunji (Sohra): A famous high-rainfall region in Meghalaya.

SEASONS OF INDIA

381. Major Seasons Recognised in India: Winter, Summer, Southwest Monsoon and Retreating/Northeast Monsoon seasons.

382. Winter Season: Generally December to February.

383. Summer Season: Generally March to May.

384. Southwest Monsoon Season: Generally June to September.

385. Retreating Monsoon Season: Generally October to November.

386. Winter: The season generally associated with lower temperatures over much of northern India.

387. Summer: The season generally associated with high temperatures, especially in northern and central India.

388. Loo: A strong, hot and dry local wind that blows over parts of northern and northwestern India during summer.

389. Kal Baisakhi: Local violent thunderstorms (storms with strong winds, thunder and lightning) common in parts of eastern India during the pre-monsoon season.

390. Mango Showers: Pre-monsoon showers in parts of southern India that are useful for mango cultivation.

RAINFALL & MONSOON FACTS

391. Most of India's Annual Rainfall: Received during the southwest monsoon season.

392. Monsoon Dependency: Agriculture in India is significantly influenced by the timing and distribution of monsoon rainfall.

393. Unequal Rainfall: Rainfall varies greatly from region to region in India.

394. Heavy Rainfall Region: Parts of northeastern India and the western coast receive very high rainfall.

395. Low Rainfall Region: Parts of western Rajasthan receive very low rainfall.

396. Western Rajasthan: One of the driest regions of India.

397. Tamil Nadu Coast: Receives a significant share of its rainfall from the northeast/retreating monsoon.

398. Monsoon Break: A period during the rainy season when rainfall temporarily decreases over a region.

399. El Niño: A periodic warming of the central and eastern tropical Pacific Ocean that can influence global weather patterns, including the Indian monsoon.

400. La Niña: A periodic cooling of the central and eastern tropical Pacific Ocean that can also influence global weather patterns.

P. INDIA — SOILS & AGRICULTURE

401. Soil: The upper layer of Earth’s surface in which plants can grow.

402. Soil Formation: Soil is formed through the interaction of parent rock (original rock material), climate, organisms, relief and time.

403. Major Soil Types of India: Alluvial soil, Black soil, Red and Yellow soil, Laterite soil, Arid soil and Forest/Mountain soil.

ALLUVIAL SOIL

404. Alluvial Soil: Soil formed mainly from sediments (deposited particles) brought and deposited by rivers.

405. Distribution of Alluvial Soil: Mainly found in the Northern Plains and river valleys.

406. Alluvial Soil: One of the most widespread and agriculturally important soils of India.

407. Khadar: Newer alluvial soil deposited frequently by rivers.

408. Bhangar: Older alluvial soil found above the level of newer flood deposits.

409. Major Crops in Alluvial Soil: Rice, wheat, sugarcane, maize, pulses and oilseeds.

BLACK SOIL

410. Black Soil: Also called Regur soil.

411. Black Soil Colour: Generally black or dark in colour.

412. Black Soil Distribution: Mainly found in the Deccan Plateau region.

413. Black Soil: Has high moisture-retaining capacity (ability to hold water).

414. Major Crop Associated with Black Soil: Cotton.

415. Black Soil: Also suitable for crops such as soybean, groundnut, wheat and pulses.

RED & YELLOW SOIL

416. Red Soil: Gets its reddish colour mainly from iron compounds.

417. Red and Yellow Soil: Widely found in parts of southern and eastern India.

418. Major Areas of Red Soil: Tamil Nadu, Karnataka, Andhra Pradesh, Telangana, Odisha, Chhattisgarh and parts of Maharashtra and Madhya Pradesh.

LATERITE SOIL

419. Laterite Soil: Develops mainly under conditions of high temperature and heavy rainfall.

420. Laterisation: A process in which heavy rainfall causes intense leaching (washing away of soluble minerals from soil).

421. Laterite Soil: Generally low in fertility unless properly managed and fertilised.

422. Major Areas of Laterite Soil: Parts of Karnataka, Kerala, Tamil Nadu, Maharashtra, Odisha and northeastern India.

ARID SOIL

423. Arid Soil: Soil found mainly in dry and desert regions.

424. Major Distribution of Arid Soil: Western Rajasthan and adjoining dry regions.

425. Arid Soil: Generally contains low organic matter (decayed plant and animal material).

FOREST & MOUNTAIN SOIL

426. Forest Soil: Soil commonly found in hilly and mountainous areas under forest vegetation.

427. Forest Soil: Its characteristics vary according to altitude, climate and vegetation.

AGRICULTURE OF INDIA

428. Agriculture: The cultivation (growing) of crops and rearing of animals for food and other purposes.

429. Importance of Agriculture: Agriculture is an important economic activity and provides livelihoods to a large population of India.

430. Major Food Crops of India: Rice, wheat, maize, millets and pulses.

431. Major Cash Crops: Cotton, jute, sugarcane, tea, coffee and rubber.

432. Kharif Crops: Crops generally sown with the beginning of the southwest monsoon.

433. Major Kharif Crops: Rice, maize, cotton, groundnut, soybean and millets.

434. Rabi Crops: Crops generally sown during the winter season and harvested in spring.

435. Major Rabi Crops: Wheat, barley, gram, peas and mustard.

436. Zaid Crops: Short-duration crops grown mainly between the Rabi and Kharif seasons.

437. Examples of Zaid Crops: Watermelon, muskmelon, cucumber and some vegetables.

438. Rice: A major food crop of India requiring relatively high temperature and adequate water.

439. Wheat: A major Rabi crop of India.

440. Wheat-Producing Regions: Mainly the northwestern and northern parts of India.

441. Cotton: An important fibre crop (crop used to produce fibre).

442. Jute: An important fibre crop mainly grown in the humid eastern region.

443. Sugarcane: An important commercial crop used mainly for producing sugar and related products.

444. Tea: An important plantation crop grown mainly in Assam, West Bengal and southern India.

445. Coffee: An important plantation crop mainly grown in Karnataka, Kerala and Tamil Nadu.

446. Rubber: An important plantation crop grown mainly in Kerala and parts of southern India.

447. Plantation Agriculture: Large-scale cultivation of a single commercial crop.

448. Green Revolution: A major increase in agricultural production associated with improved seeds, irrigation, fertilisers and modern farming methods.

449. Green Revolution in India: Initially focused strongly on increasing the production of wheat and rice.

450. M. S. Swaminathan: Indian agricultural scientist widely known for his major contribution to the Green Revolution in India.

Q. INDIA — NATURAL VEGETATION & WILDLIFE

451. Natural Vegetation: Plants that grow naturally without human interference (direct human control).

452. Flora: All plant life found in a particular region.

453. Fauna: All animal life found in a particular region.

454. Biodiversity: Variety of living organisms, including plants, animals and microorganisms.

455. Natural Vegetation in India: It varies according to rainfall, temperature, soil, altitude and other environmental conditions.

456. Major Types of Natural Vegetation in India: Tropical Evergreen Forests, Tropical Deciduous Forests, Tropical Thorn Forests, Mountain Vegetation and Mangrove Forests.

TROPICAL EVERGREEN FORESTS

457. Tropical Evergreen Forests: Dense forests found in areas with high temperature and heavy rainfall throughout the year.

458. Evergreen Forests: Trees generally do not shed all their leaves at the same time.

459. Major Areas: Western Ghats, Andaman and Nicobar Islands and parts of northeastern India.

460. Important Trees: Ebony, mahogany and rosewood.

TROPICAL DECIDUOUS FORESTS

461. Tropical Deciduous Forests: Forests in which trees shed their leaves during the dry season.

462. Tropical Deciduous Forests: Also called monsoon forests.

463. Major Areas: Large parts of central, eastern and northern India.

464. Important Trees: Teak, sal, shisham, mahua, sandalwood and bamboo.

TROPICAL THORN FORESTS

465. Tropical Thorn Forests: Vegetation adapted to dry conditions and low rainfall.

466. Major Areas: Rajasthan, Gujarat and parts of Punjab, Haryana, Madhya Pradesh and the Deccan Plateau.

467. Important Plants: Acacia, babul, cactus and euphorbia.

MOUNTAIN VEGETATION

468. Mountain Vegetation: Vegetation that changes with increasing altitude (height above sea level).

469. Lower Mountain Areas: Deciduous and subtropical vegetation may occur.

470. Higher Mountain Areas: Coniferous forests (forests of cone-bearing trees) such as pine, deodar, fir and spruce occur.

471. Alpine Vegetation: Vegetation found at very high elevations near and above the tree line.

MANGROVE FORESTS

472. Mangroves: Salt-tolerant trees and shrubs growing mainly along tropical and subtropical coasts.

473. Mangrove Forests in India: Found mainly in the deltas of major rivers and coastal wetlands.

474. Sundarbans: Famous mangrove region of the Ganga-Brahmaputra delta.

475. Sundari Tree: A characteristic mangrove tree associated with the Sundarbans.

WILDLIFE OF INDIA

476. Wildlife: Animals and other living organisms living in their natural habitats (natural living environments).

477. Project Tiger: A Government of India conservation programme launched in 1973 to protect tigers and their habitats.

478. Project Elephant: A Government of India programme launched in 1992 for the conservation (protection) of elephants and their habitats.

479. National Park: A protected area created mainly for conserving wildlife and natural ecosystems.

480. Wildlife Sanctuary: A protected area established mainly for the protection of wild animals and their habitats.

481. Biosphere Reserve: A large protected area intended to conserve biodiversity and support sustainable use (use without destroying resources).

482. Tiger Reserve: An area designated for tiger conservation under the Project Tiger framework.

483. Asiatic Lion: A wild lion population found naturally in India, mainly in and around Gir landscape of Gujarat.

484. Gir National Park and Wildlife Sanctuary: Important protected area for the Asiatic Lion.

485. One-Horned Rhinoceros: An important species found mainly in Assam and parts of northern India.

486. Kaziranga National Park: Famous for the Indian one-horned rhinoceros.

487. Great Indian Bustard: A critically endangered (facing an extremely high risk of extinction) bird found in parts of India.

488. Hangul: The Kashmir stag (a subspecies of red deer) associated with Jammu and Kashmir.

489. Dachigam National Park: Important protected area for the Hangul.

490. Nilgiri Tahr: A mountain ungulate (hoofed animal) found mainly in the Western Ghats.

491. Lion-Tailed Macaque: An endangered primate (member of the monkey and ape group) found in the Western Ghats.

492. Ganges River Dolphin: India's National Aquatic Animal.

493. Indian Elephant: India's National Heritage Animal.

494. Bengal Tiger: India's National Animal.

495. Indian Peacock: India's National Bird.

IMPORTANT PROTECTED AREAS

496. Jim Corbett National Park: Located in Uttarakhand and famous for its tiger population.

497. Ranthambore National Park: Located in Rajasthan and known for its tigers.

498. Kanha National Park: Located in Madhya Pradesh and known for its rich wildlife.

499. Bandhavgarh National Park: Located in Madhya Pradesh and known for its tiger population.

500. Periyar National Park: Located in Kerala and known for elephants and other wildlife.

INDIA — NATIONAL PARKS, WILDLIFE SANCTUARIES & CONSERVATION

501. Protected Area: A geographically defined area managed for the conservation (protection) of nature, wildlife and ecosystems.

502. National Park: A protected area established to conserve wildlife and natural ecosystems.

503. Wildlife Sanctuary: A protected area where wildlife and their habitats receive legal protection.

504. Conservation: Protection and careful management of natural resources and wildlife.

505. Habitat: The natural home or environment of a plant or animal.

506. Endangered Species: A species facing a high risk of extinction (complete disappearance).

507. Critically Endangered Species: A species facing an extremely high risk of extinction.

508. Extinct Species: A species for which no living individual is known to exist.

509. Vulnerable Species: A species considered at high risk of becoming endangered.

510. IUCN: International Union for Conservation of Nature.

511. IUCN Red List: A global system that assesses the extinction risk of species.

IMPORTANT NATIONAL PARKS

512. Jim Corbett National Park: Located in Uttarakhand and famous for its tiger population.

513. India's First National Park: Jim Corbett National Park, established in 1936 as Hailey National Park.

514. Kaziranga National Park: Located in Assam and famous for the one-horned rhinoceros.

515. Gir National Park: Located in Gujarat and famous for the Asiatic Lion.

516. Ranthambore National Park: Located in Rajasthan and known for its tiger population.

517. Kanha National Park: Located in Madhya Pradesh and known for its tiger habitat and barasingha conservation.

518. Bandhavgarh National Park: Located in Madhya Pradesh and known for its tiger population.

519. Pench National Park: Located in Madhya Pradesh and Maharashtra and associated with rich wildlife.

520. Periyar National Park: Located in Kerala and famous for elephants and other wildlife.

521. Sundarbans National Park: Located in West Bengal and famous for mangrove forests and Bengal Tigers.

522. Dachigam National Park: Located near Srinagar in Jammu and Kashmir and important for Hangul conservation.

523. Hemis National Park: Located in Ladakh and famous for the snow leopard.

524. Great Himalayan National Park: Located in Himachal Pradesh and recognised as a UNESCO World Heritage Site.

525. Valley of Flowers National Park: Located in Uttarakhand and famous for alpine (high-altitude) flowers.

526. Nanda Devi National Park: Located in Uttarakhand and part of the Nanda Devi and Valley of Flowers UNESCO World Heritage Site.

527. Keoladeo National Park: Located in Rajasthan and famous for its birdlife.

528. Silent Valley National Park: Located in Kerala and known for its rich tropical evergreen forest ecosystem.

529. Namdapha National Park: Located in Arunachal Pradesh and known for high biodiversity.

530. Manas National Park: Located in Assam and recognised as a UNESCO World Heritage Site.

TIGER CONSERVATION

531. Project Tiger: A Government of India programme launched in 1973 for tiger conservation.

532. National Tiger Conservation Authority (NTCA): Statutory body responsible for strengthening tiger conservation in India.

533. Tiger Reserve: A protected landscape designated for tiger conservation and management.

534. Tiger Census: A scientific assessment used to estimate India's tiger population.

535. All India Tiger Estimation: A nationwide tiger population assessment carried out periodically.

ELEPHANT CONSERVATION

536. Project Elephant: A centrally sponsored scheme launched in 1992 for the conservation of elephants, their habitats and corridors.

537. Elephant Corridor: A natural or managed passage connecting elephant habitats and allowing elephants to move between them.

BIOSPHERE RESERVES

538. Biosphere Reserve: A large area designed to conserve biodiversity while supporting sustainable development.

539. UNESCO Man and the Biosphere Programme: An international programme supporting biosphere reserves and sustainable relationships between people and nature.

540. Nilgiri Biosphere Reserve: India's first designated biosphere reserve, established in 1986.

WETLANDS

541. Wetland: An area where land is permanently or seasonally saturated with water.

542. Ramsar Site: A wetland recognised as being of international importance under the Ramsar Convention.

543. Ramsar Convention: An international treaty for the conservation and wise use of wetlands.

544. Chilika Lake: A major Indian wetland and one of the country's internationally recognised Ramsar sites.

545. Keoladeo National Park: An important wetland and bird habitat recognised as a Ramsar site.

IMPORTANT SPECIES

546. Asiatic Lion: A wild lion population naturally found in Gujarat.

547. One-Horned Rhinoceros: A major Indian rhinoceros species strongly associated with Assam.

548. Snow Leopard: A high-altitude wild cat found in the Himalayan and trans-Himalayan regions.

549. Hangul: The Kashmir stag, a subspecies of red deer found in Jammu and Kashmir.

550. Great Indian Bustard: A critically endangered bird species found in parts of India.

S. INDIA — MINERALS, ENERGY & NATURAL RESOURCES

551. Natural Resources: Materials and substances obtained from nature and used by humans.

552. Mineral: A naturally occurring inorganic substance (substance not produced by living organisms) with a definite chemical composition.

553. Mineral Resources of India: India has important deposits of coal, iron ore, manganese, bauxite, mica, limestone and other minerals.

METALLIC MINERALS

554. Metallic Mineral: A mineral containing metallic elements that can be extracted for use.

555. Iron Ore: An important mineral used mainly for producing iron and steel.

556. Major Iron Ore-Producing Regions: Odisha, Chhattisgarh, Karnataka and Jharkhand are among India's important iron ore-producing states.

557. Manganese: An important mineral used mainly in steel production and other industries.

558. Major Manganese-Producing States: Odisha, Karnataka, Madhya Pradesh and Maharashtra are important producers.

559. Bauxite: The principal ore (raw mineral source) of aluminium.

560. Major Bauxite-Producing States: Odisha, Gujarat, Jharkhand, Maharashtra and Chhattisgarh are important producers.

561. Copper: A metal widely used in electrical equipment, construction and various industries.

562. Major Copper-Producing Areas: Rajasthan, Madhya Pradesh and Jharkhand are important copper-producing regions.

563. Mica: A group of minerals known for their ability to split into thin sheets.

564. Important Mica-Producing Areas: Jharkhand, Andhra Pradesh and Rajasthan.

NON-METALLIC MINERALS

565. Limestone: An important mineral used extensively in cement manufacturing.

566. Major Limestone-Producing States: Rajasthan, Madhya Pradesh, Andhra Pradesh, Chhattisgarh and Gujarat are important producers.

567. Salt: An important mineral resource obtained from seawater, salt lakes and underground deposits.

568. Major Salt-Producing State: Gujarat is India's leading salt-producing state.

FOSSIL FUELS

569. Fossil Fuel: Fuel formed from the remains of ancient plants and organisms over millions of years.

570. Coal: A major fossil fuel and an important source of energy in India.

571. Major Coal-Producing States: Jharkhand, Odisha, Chhattisgarh, West Bengal, Madhya Pradesh and Telangana are important coal-producing states.

572. Anthracite: Coal with very high carbon content and high calorific value (heat produced by burning a unit of fuel).

573. Bituminous Coal: A widely used type of coal with relatively high carbon content.

574. Lignite: A low-grade brown coal with relatively low carbon content.

575. Petroleum: A fossil fuel occurring naturally underground and refined into fuels and other products.

576. Crude Oil: Unrefined petroleum obtained from underground reservoirs.

577. Major Oil-Producing Areas: Assam, Gujarat and offshore areas such as the Mumbai High region.

578. Natural Gas: A fossil fuel consisting mainly of methane.

579. Mumbai High: A major offshore oil and gas field in the Arabian Sea.

RENEWABLE ENERGY

580. Renewable Energy: Energy obtained from sources that are naturally replenished (replaced naturally).

581. Solar Energy: Energy obtained from the Sun.

582. Wind Energy: Energy produced by using the movement of air.

583. Hydroelectric Power: Electricity generated using moving or falling water.

584. Biomass Energy: Energy obtained from organic material (material derived from living or recently living organisms).

585. Geothermal Energy: Energy obtained from heat within the Earth.

586. Tidal Energy: Energy produced from the movement of ocean tides.

587. India's Solar Energy Potential: India has significant potential for solar power because of its large geographical area and high solar radiation (solar energy received per unit area).

588. International Solar Alliance: An international organisation promoting solar energy cooperation among countries.

589. Headquarters of International Solar Alliance: Gurugram, Haryana, India.

NUCLEAR ENERGY

590. Nuclear Energy: Energy released from changes in atomic nuclei (central parts of atoms).

591. Nuclear Power: Electricity generated using energy released from nuclear reactions.

592. Nuclear Power Plants in India: India operates nuclear power plants for electricity generation.

593. Department of Atomic Energy: The Government of India department responsible for India's atomic energy programme.

594. Atomic Energy Commission: A key institution associated with India's atomic energy programme.

595. Nuclear Fuel: Materials such as uranium that can be used to produce energy through nuclear reactions.

IMPORTANT ENERGY TERMS

596. Electricity: A form of energy associated with electric charges.

597. Power: The rate at which energy is produced, transferred or used.

598. Watt: SI unit of power.

599. Kilowatt: 1,000 watts.

600. Megawatt: 1,000 kilowatts.

601. Gigawatt: 1,000 megawatts.

602. Energy Efficiency: Using less energy to provide the same useful service.

603. Conservation of Energy: The principle that energy cannot be created or destroyed but can change from one form to another.

604. Natural Resource Conservation: Careful use and protection of natural resources so that they remain available for future generations.

INDIA: BASIC GK

T. INDIA — INDUSTRIES & MANUFACTURING

605. Industry: Economic activity involving the production or processing of goods and services.

606. Manufacturing: The process of converting raw materials (basic materials obtained from nature) into finished or semi-finished products.

607. Industrialisation: The development and expansion of industries in an economy.

608. Industrial Sector: The part of an economy concerned mainly with manufacturing, mining, electricity, construction and related activities.

IRON & STEEL INDUSTRY

609. Iron and Steel Industry: A basic industry (industry supplying essential materials to other industries) that provides steel for construction, transport and machinery.

610. First Modern Iron and Steel Plant in India: Tata Iron and Steel Company, established at Jamshedpur in 1907.

611. Tata Steel: One of India's oldest major steel-producing companies.

612. Jamshedpur: A major steel-producing industrial city in Jharkhand.

613. Bhilai Steel Plant: Located in Chhattisgarh.

614. Rourkela Steel Plant: Located in Odisha.

615. Durgapur Steel Plant: Located in West Bengal.

616. Bokaro Steel Plant: Located in Jharkhand.

617. Visakhapatnam Steel Plant: Located in Andhra Pradesh.

COTTON TEXTILE INDUSTRY

618. Cotton Textile Industry: An industry that converts cotton fibre into yarn, cloth and other textile products.

619. First Successful Cotton Textile Mill in India: Established in Mumbai in 1854.

620. Mumbai: Historically one of India's major centres of cotton textile manufacturing.

621. Ahmedabad: An important centre of cotton textile production in Gujarat.

622. Textile Industry: One of India's major manufacturing and employment-generating industries.

JUTE INDUSTRY

623. Jute: A natural fibre obtained mainly from plants of the genus *Corchorus*.

624. Jute Textile Industry: Industry producing products such as bags, ropes, mats and packaging materials from jute.

625. Major Jute-Producing Region: West Bengal is the major jute-producing state of India.

626. Hooghly River Valley: An important region for India's jute industry.

SUGAR INDUSTRY

627. Sugar Industry: Industry that processes sugarcane to produce sugar and related products.

628. Major Sugarcane-Producing States: Uttar Pradesh and Maharashtra are among India's major sugarcane-producing states.

629. Sugar Mills: Often located close to sugarcane-producing areas because sugarcane is bulky and perishable (spoils relatively quickly).

CEMENT INDUSTRY

630. Cement Industry: A major mineral-based industry used extensively in construction.

631. Main Raw Materials for Cement: Limestone, clay and other materials.

632. Cement: A binding material (material that holds other materials together) widely used in construction.

AUTOMOBILE INDUSTRY

633. Automobile Industry: Industry involved in designing, manufacturing and selling motor vehicles and their components.

634. Major Automobile Manufacturing Centres: Chennai, Pune, Gurugram-Manesar, Mumbai, Bengaluru, Sanand and several other industrial regions.

635. Automobile Components: Parts such as engines, tyres, batteries, brakes and electronic systems used in vehicles.

INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY INDUSTRY

636. Information Technology (IT): Use of computers and digital systems to create, store, process and communicate information.

637. IT Industry: Sector providing software, digital services, technology solutions and related services.

638. Bengaluru: Widely known as India's major information technology hub (major centre).

639. Hyderabad: A major centre for information technology and technology services.

640. Pune: An important IT and automobile industry centre.

641. Chennai: An important centre for IT and automobile manufacturing.

PHARMACEUTICAL INDUSTRY

642. Pharmaceutical Industry: Industry involved in developing, manufacturing and distributing medicines.

643. India: One of the world's major producers of generic medicines (medicines equivalent to branded medicines in active ingredients).

644. Hyderabad: An important pharmaceutical and biotechnology hub in India.

645. Ahmedabad: An important pharmaceutical manufacturing centre.

OTHER IMPORTANT INDUSTRIES

646. Petrochemical Industry: Industry producing chemicals and materials from petroleum and natural gas.

647. Fertiliser Industry: Industry producing fertilisers used to supply nutrients to crops.

648. Paper Industry: Industry producing paper and paper-based products mainly from wood, recycled fibre and other plant materials.

649. Electronics Industry: Industry producing electronic devices, components and systems.

650. Semiconductor Industry: Industry involved in manufacturing semiconductor devices and integrated circuits used in modern electronics.

651. Aerospace Industry: Industry involved in aircraft, spacecraft and related technologies.

652. Defence Industry: Industry producing equipment and technology for national defence.

653. Renewable Energy Industry: Industry involved in technologies such as solar panels, wind turbines, batteries and related energy systems.

IMPORTANT INDUSTRIAL TERMS

654. Public Sector: Part of the economy owned or controlled mainly by the government.

655. Private Sector: Part of the economy owned mainly by private individuals or companies.

656. MSME: Micro, Small and Medium Enterprises.

657. Startup: A newly established business, often developed around a new product, service or business model.

658. Industrial Corridor: A planned region designed to support industries through infrastructure (basic physical facilities) such as transport, power and logistics.

659. Special Economic Zone (SEZ): A designated area with special economic and regulatory provisions to promote investment and trade.

660. Export: Goods or services sold to another country.

661. Import: Goods or services purchased from another country.

INDIA — TRANSPORT, COMMUNICATION & INFRASTRUCTURE

662. Infrastructure: Basic physical and organisational facilities required for economic and social activities.

663. Transport: Movement of people and goods from one place to another.

664. Main Modes of Transport in India: Roadways, railways, waterways, airways and pipelines.

ROAD TRANSPORT

665. Roadways: Transport system using roads for movement of people and goods.

666. National Highways: Major roads connecting important cities, states, ports and economic centres.

667. National Highways Authority of India (NHAI): Statutory authority responsible for the development, maintenance and management of many National Highways.

668. Golden Quadrilateral: Major highway network connecting Delhi, Mumbai, Chennai and Kolkata.

669. Golden Quadrilateral Length: About 5,846 km.

670. North-South Corridor: Major highway corridor connecting Srinagar with Kanyakumari.

671. East-West Corridor: Major highway corridor connecting Silchar with Porbandar.

672. Expressway: A high-speed road designed mainly for uninterrupted or controlled-access traffic.

RAILWAYS

673. Indian Railways: One of the world's largest railway networks.

674. Indian Railways: Operates under the Ministry of Railways, Government of India.

675. First Passenger Train in India: Ran on 16 April 1853.

676. First Passenger Train Route: Mumbai to Thane.

677. Distance of First Passenger Train Journey: About 34 km.

678. Number of Coaches in the First Passenger Train: 14 coaches.

679. First Passenger Train: Carried about 400 passengers.

680. Railway Gauge: The distance between the inner sides of the two railway tracks.

681. Broad Gauge: 1,676 mm in India.

682. Railway Electrification: Process of providing electric power to railway trains and infrastructure.

WATER TRANSPORT

683. Inland Water Transport: Transport of people and goods through rivers, canals, lakes and other inland waterways.

684. Inland Waterways Authority of India (IWAI): Government authority responsible for development and regulation of inland waterways.

685. National Waterways: Inland waterways declared by the Government of India for navigation and transport.

686. National Waterway 1: Ganga-Bhagirathi-Hooghly river system.

687. National Waterway 1 Route: Prayagraj to Haldia.

688. National Waterway 2: Brahmaputra River.

689. National Waterway 2 Route: Sadiya to Dhubri in Assam.

PORTS

690. Port: A place on a coast or river where ships load and unload passengers and goods.

691. Major Ports: Ports notified and administered under the relevant central government framework.

692. Mumbai Port: A major port on India's western coast.

693. Jawaharlal Nehru Port: Major container port located at Nhava Sheva near Mumbai.

694. Deendayal Port: Major port located at Kandla, Gujarat.

695. Chennai Port: Major port on the southeastern coast of India.

696. Visakhapatnam Port: Major port on the eastern coast of India.

697. Paradip Port: Major port located in Odisha.

698. Kochi Port: Major port located in Kerala.

AIR TRANSPORT

699. Air Transport: Movement of passengers and goods through aircraft.

700. Airports Authority of India (AAI): Statutory organisation responsible for managing and developing many airports and air navigation services in India.

701. International Airport: Airport handling international flights and associated customs and immigration facilities.

702. Domestic Airport: Airport primarily serving flights within the country.

703. Civil Aviation: Non-military aviation activities, including passenger and cargo air transport.

PIPELINES

704. Pipeline Transport: Transport of liquids, gases or other materials through pipelines.

705. Major Pipeline Products: Crude oil, petroleum products and natural gas.

706. Crude Oil Pipeline: Pipeline used to transport unrefined petroleum.

707. Natural Gas Pipeline: Pipeline used to transport natural gas over long distances.

COMMUNICATION

708. Communication: Exchange of information, messages and ideas between people or systems.

709. Postal Service: System for sending letters, documents and parcels.

710. India Post: Government postal service of India.

711. Telecommunications: Transmission of information over a distance using electronic or digital systems.

712. Mobile Communication: Wireless communication through mobile networks.

713. Internet: Global network connecting computers and digital devices for communication and information exchange.

714. Broadband: High-speed internet access capable of carrying large amounts of data.

DIGITAL INFRASTRUCTURE

715. Digital India: Government programme launched to transform India into a digitally empowered society and knowledge economy.

716. Digital Public Infrastructure (DPI): Digital systems and platforms that enable large-scale public services and economic activities.

717. Aadhaar: A 12-digit unique identification number issued by UIDAI to eligible residents of India.

718. UIDAI: Unique Identification Authority of India.

719. UPI: Unified Payments Interface, a system enabling instant digital payments between participating bank accounts.

720. NPCI: National Payments Corporation of India, the organisation that operates and manages several major retail payment systems in India.

721. FASTag: Electronic toll collection system using Radio Frequency Identification (RFID).

722. BharatNet: Government programme aimed at providing broadband connectivity to rural areas through a nationwide network.

V. INDIA — STATES, UNION TERRITORIES & CAPITALS

723. States of India: India has 28 States and 8 Union Territories.

724. State: A constituent unit (part) of India having its own elected government.

725. Union Territory (UT): An administrative division of India that is governed mainly by the Union Government, with some UTs having legislatures.

726. Capital: The principal administrative city of a State or Union Territory.

STATES AND CAPITALS

727. Andhra Pradesh — Capital: Amaravati.

728. Arunachal Pradesh — Capital: Itanagar.

729. Assam — Capital: Dispur.

730. Bihar — Capital: Patna.

731. Chhattisgarh — Capital: Raipur.

732. Goa — Capital: Panaji.

733. Gujarat — Capital: Gandhinagar.

734. Haryana — Capital: Chandigarh.

735. Himachal Pradesh — Capital: Shimla.

736. Jharkhand — Capital: Ranchi.

737. Karnataka — Capital: Bengaluru.

738. Kerala — Capital: Thiruvananthapuram.

739. Madhya Pradesh — Capital: Bhopal.

740. Maharashtra — Capital: Mumbai.

741. Manipur — Capital: Imphal.

742. Meghalaya — Capital: Shillong.

743. Mizoram — Capital: Aizawl.

744. Nagaland — Capital: Kohima.

745. Odisha — Capital: Bhubaneswar.

746. Punjab — Capital: Chandigarh.

747. Rajasthan — Capital: Jaipur.

748. Sikkim — Capital: Gangtok.

749. Tamil Nadu — Capital: Chennai.

750. Telangana — Capital: Hyderabad.

751. Tripura — Capital: Agartala.

752. Uttar Pradesh — Capital: Lucknow.

753. Uttarakhand — Capital: Dehradun; Gairsain is the summer capital.

754. West Bengal — Capital: Kolkata.

UNION TERRITORIES AND CAPITALS

755. Andaman and Nicobar Islands — Capital: Sri Vijaya Puram.

756. Chandigarh — Capital: Chandigarh.

757. Dadra and Nagar Haveli and Daman and Diu — Capital: Daman.

758. Delhi (National Capital Territory) — Capital: New Delhi.

759. Jammu and Kashmir — Capitals: Srinagar (summer) and Jammu (winter).

760. Ladakh — Capital: Leh.

761. Lakshadweep — Capital: Kavaratti.

762. Puducherry — Capital: Puducherry.

IMPORTANT STATE & UT FACTS

763. Largest State by Area: Rajasthan.

764. Smallest State by Area: Goa.

765. Most Populous State: Uttar Pradesh.

766. Least Populous State: Sikkim.

767. Largest Union Territory by Area: Ladakh.

768. Smallest Union Territory by Area: Lakshadweep.

769. Most Populous Union Territory: Delhi.

770. State with the Longest Coastline: Gujarat.

771. State with the Shortest Coastline among Coastal States: Goa.

772. First State Formed on Linguistic Basis: Andhra State, formed in 1953; Andhra Pradesh was subsequently formed in 1956.

773. State Reorganisation Act: The States Reorganisation Act, 1956, reorganised major parts of India's state boundaries largely on linguistic lines (language-based basis).

774. Sikkim Became a State of India: 1975.

775. Goa Became a State: 30 May 1987.

776. Chhattisgarh Formed: 1 November 2000.

777. Uttarakhand Formed: 9 November 2000.

778. Jharkhand Formed: 15 November 2000.

779. Telangana Formed: 2 June 2014.

780. Jammu and Kashmir Reorganisation: The former State of Jammu and Kashmir was reorganised into the Union Territories of Jammu and Kashmir and Ladakh on 31 October 2019.

781. Dadra and Nagar Haveli and Daman and Diu: The two former Union Territories were merged into one Union Territory on 26 January 2020.

782. Statehood: The constitutional status of being a State within the Indian Union.

783. Union List: A list of subjects on which Parliament has exclusive legislative power under the Constitution.

784. State List: A list of subjects on which State Legislatures generally have legislative power, subject to constitutional provisions.

785. Concurrent List: A list of subjects on which both Parliament and State Legislatures can make laws, subject to the Constitution.

INDIA: BASIC GK

W. INDIA — STATES: IMPORTANT GEOGRAPHICAL & ADMINISTRATIVE FACTS

786. State with the Largest Area: Rajasthan.

787. State with the Smallest Area: Goa.

788. State with the Highest Population: Uttar Pradesh.

789. State with the Lowest Population: Sikkim.

790. State with the Longest Coastline: Gujarat.

791. State with the Highest Forest Cover by Area: Madhya Pradesh.

792. State with the Highest Forest Cover by Percentage of Geographical Area: Mizoram.

793. State Known as the "Land of Five Rivers": Punjab.

794. State Known as the "Land of Rising Sun" in India: Arunachal Pradesh.

795. State Known as the "Spice Garden of India": Kerala.

796. State Known as the "Land of Festivals": Nagaland.

797. State Known as the "Land of Clouds": Meghalaya.

798. State Known as the "Land of Kings": Rajasthan.

799. State Known as the "Land of White Elephants" historically: Assam.

800. State Known for Tea Production: Assam is one of India's leading tea-producing states.

801. State Known for Coffee Production: Karnataka is India's leading coffee-producing state.

802. State Known for Rubber Production: Kerala is India's major natural rubber-producing state.

803. State Known for Jute Production: West Bengal is India's major jute-producing state.

804. State Known for Saffron Production: Jammu and Kashmir.

805. Major Saffron-Producing Region: Kashmir Valley.

806. State Famous for Gir Lions: Gujarat.

807. State Famous for Kaziranga Rhinoceros: Assam.

808. State Famous for Sundarbans: West Bengal.

809. State Famous for Backwaters: Kerala.

810. State Famous for Chilika Lake: Odisha.

811. State Famous for Loktak Lake: Manipur.

812. State Famous for Thar Desert: Rajasthan.

813. State Famous for Rann of Kachchh: Gujarat.

814. Rann of Kachchh: A vast salt-marsh region in Gujarat.

815. State with the Largest River Island: Assam is home to Majuli, one of the world's largest inhabited river islands.

816. Majuli: A river island located in the Brahmaputra River in Assam.

817. State with the Largest Mangrove Forest Area: West Bengal.

818. Sundarbans: The world's largest mangrove forest region, shared by India and Bangladesh.

819. State with the Highest Number of National Parks: Madhya Pradesh and other states have multiple national parks; the exact number can change with official notifications.

820. State with the Highest Number of Tiger Reserves: Madhya Pradesh has among the highest numbers of tiger reserves.

IMPORTANT ADMINISTRATIVE TERMS

821. District: An administrative division within a State or Union Territory.

822. District Magistrate (DM): The senior administrative officer responsible for district administration; the exact designation and duties vary by State.

823. Deputy Commissioner (DC): Administrative title commonly used for the district's senior civil officer in several States and UTs.

824. Tehsil: A sub-district administrative unit.

825. Block: An administrative and development unit below the district level.

826. Village: A basic rural settlement and administrative unit.

827. Gram Panchayat: The elected local self-government body at the village level.

828. Gram Sabha: The body consisting of persons registered in the electoral rolls of a village or group of villages within a Gram Panchayat area.

829. Municipal Corporation: An urban local government body generally established for large cities.

830. Municipality: An urban local government body responsible for civic administration in towns and cities.

831. Panchayati Raj: The system of rural local self-government in India.

832. Three-Tier Panchayati Raj: Gram Panchayat, Panchayat Samiti and Zila Parishad.

833. Zila Parishad: Local self-government body at the district level in the Panchayati Raj system.

834. Panchayat Samiti: Local self-government body generally functioning at the intermediate/block level.

835. 73rd Constitutional Amendment: Gave constitutional status to Panchayati Raj Institutions.

836. 74th Constitutional Amendment: Gave constitutional status to urban local bodies.

837. Local Self-Government: Government institutions that manage local affairs through elected representatives.

838. State Legislature: The law-making body of a State.

839. Legislative Assembly: The elected lower house of a State Legislature.

840. Legislative Council: The upper house of a State Legislature in States that have a bicameral (two-house) legislature.

INDIAN POLITY

A. MAKING OF THE INDIAN CONSTITUTION

BASIC TERMS

1. Constitution: The highest law of a country. It tells how the country will be governed and what powers the government has.

2. Indian Constitution: The highest law of India. It explains the powers of the government and the rights and duties of citizens.

3. Polity: The system of government and political institutions of a country.

4. Constitutional Government: A government that works according to the Constitution.

5. Democracy: A system in which people choose their representatives through elections.

6. Federalism: A system in which powers are divided between the Union Government and State Governments.

7. Unitary System: A system in which most powers are concentrated in the central government.

8. Parliamentary System: A system in which the government is responsible to the elected Parliament.

9. Republic: A country where the head of the State is elected, not a hereditary king or queen.

10. Sovereignty: Complete authority to make decisions without being controlled by another country.

11. Secular: The State does not have an official religion and protects religious freedom.

12. Socialist: The Constitution aims at social and economic equality and reducing inequality.

13. Rule of Law: Everyone, including the government, is subject to the law.

B. CONSTITUENT ASSEMBLY

14. Constituent Assembly: The body that prepared and adopted the Constitution of India.

15. Constituent Assembly First Met: 9 December 1946.

16. Place of First Meeting: Constitution Hall, New Delhi.

17. Temporary Chairman: Dr. Sachchidananda Sinha.

18. Permanent President: Dr. Rajendra Prasad.

19. Vice-President: H. C. Mookherjee.

20. Constitutional Adviser: B. N. Rau.

21. Drafting Committee: The committee that prepared the draft (first written form) of the Constitution.

22. Chairman of Drafting Committee: Dr. B. R. Ambedkar.

23. Dr. B. R. Ambedkar: Commonly called the **Father of the Indian Constitution** because of his major role in drafting the Constitution.

24. Jawaharlal Nehru: Moved the Objectives Resolution in the Constituent Assembly.

25. Objectives Resolution: A document that described the main aims and ideals of the future Constitution.

26. Objectives Resolution Moved: 13 December 1946.

27. Objectives Resolution Adopted: 22 January 1947.

28. Original Strength of Constituent Assembly: 389 members.

29. Strength After Partition: 299 members.

30. Women Members: 15 women were members of the Constituent Assembly.

31. Method of Election: Members from British Indian provinces were indirectly elected by Provincial Legislative Assemblies.

32. Representatives of Princely States: They were nominated by the rulers of the princely states.

C. IMPORTANT DATES

33. First Meeting of Constituent Assembly: 9 December 1946.

34. Objectives Resolution Introduced: 13 December 1946.

35. Objectives Resolution Adopted: 22 January 1947.

36. Draft Constitution Published: February 1948.

37. Constitution Adopted: 26 November 1949.

38. Constitution Signed: 24 January 1950.

39. Constitution Came into Force: 26 January 1950.

40. Republic Day: 26 January.

41. Constitution Day: 26 November.

42. Independence Day: 15 August.

D. HOW LONG DID IT TAKE?

43. Time Taken to Make the Constitution: 2 years, 11 months and 18 days.

44. Total Sessions of Constituent Assembly: 11 sessions.

45. Total Working Days: 165 days.

46. Days Spent Discussing the Draft Constitution: 114 days.

47. Members Who Signed the Constitution: 284 members.

48. Constitution Was Signed: 24 January 1950.

49. Constitution Came Into Force: 26 January 1950.

E. WHY 26 NOVEMBER AND 26 JANUARY?

50. 26 November 1949: The Constitution was adopted on this day.

51. 26 January 1950: The Constitution came into force on this day.

52. Why 26 January Was Chosen: 26 January was associated with the **Purna Swaraj (Complete Independence)** declaration of 1930.

53. Purna Swaraj: Complete independence from British rule.

54. Purna Swaraj Day: 26 January 1930.

F. ORIGINAL CONSTITUTION

55. Original Constitution: At the time it came into force, the Constitution had **395 Articles, 22 Parts and 8 Schedules**.

56. Present Schedules: 12.

57. Present Parts: 25.

58. Constitutional Amendments: 106 Constitutional Amendment Acts have been enacted up to the latest enacted amendment, the **106th Amendment Act, 2023**.

59. Constitutional Amendment: A formal change made to the Constitution.

60. Article 368: The main Article dealing with the constitutional amendment procedure.

61. First Constitutional Amendment: 1951.

62. 42nd Constitutional Amendment: 1976; made many major changes and is often called the **Mini-Constitution**.

63. 44th Constitutional Amendment: 1978; changed several provisions introduced during the Emergency period.

64. 73rd Constitutional Amendment: 1992; gave constitutional status to Panchayati Raj Institutions.

65. 74th Constitutional Amendment: 1992; gave constitutional status to Municipalities.

66. 86th Constitutional Amendment: 2002; introduced Article 21A, relating to the Right to Education.

67. 101st Constitutional Amendment: 2016; provided the constitutional basis for GST.

68. 103rd Constitutional Amendment: 2019; provided for reservation for Economically Weaker Sections (EWS).

69. 106th Constitutional Amendment: 2023; provides for reservation of seats for women in the Lok Sabha and State Legislative Assemblies, subject to the conditions given in the Constitution.

G. PREAMBLE

70. Preamble: The introduction to the Constitution. It explains the main ideals and goals of the Constitution.

71. Preamble Begins With: "We, the People of India".

72. Meaning: The Constitution gets its authority from the people of India.

73. India is described as: Sovereign, Socialist, Secular, Democratic Republic.

74. Justice: Social, economic and political justice.

75. Liberty: Freedom of thought, expression, belief, faith and worship.

76. Equality: Equality of status and opportunity.

77. Fraternity: Feeling of brotherhood among the people.

78. Dignity: Respect and value of every person.

79. Unity and Integrity: Keeping the country united and protecting its integrity.

80. Words Added to Preamble in 1976: Socialist, Secular and Integrity.

81. Amendment That Added These Words: 42nd Constitutional Amendment Act, 1976.

B. SOURCES & FEATURES OF THE INDIAN CONSTITUTION

SOURCES OF THE CONSTITUTION

82. Source of Constitution: The Indian Constitution took ideas and features from several countries, but adapted them to Indian conditions.

83. Government of India Act, 1935: The most important source of many administrative and federal provisions of the Constitution.

84. United Kingdom (UK): Parliamentary system, Rule of Law, Cabinet system, legislative procedure and single citizenship.

85. United States of America (USA): Fundamental Rights, Judicial Review, independence of judiciary, impeachment of President and removal of Supreme Court and High Court judges.

86. Ireland: Directive Principles of State Policy and method of election of the President.

87. Canada: Federal system with a strong Centre, residuary powers of the Union and appointment of Governors by the Centre.

88. Australia: Concurrent List, freedom of trade and commerce and joint sitting of the two Houses of Parliament.

89. Germany (Weimar Constitution): Emergency provisions.

90. USSR (Soviet Union): Fundamental Duties and the idea of social, economic and political justice.

91. France: Ideas of liberty, equality and fraternity.

92. South Africa: Procedure for constitutional amendment and election of members of Rajya Sabha.

93. Japan: Procedure established by law.

94. Important Note: The Indian Constitution is not simply copied from other countries. These ideas were modified according to Indian needs.

SALIENT FEATURES OF THE INDIAN CONSTITUTION

95. Salient Features: Main and important characteristics of the Constitution.

96. Written Constitution: India's Constitution is written in a detailed document.

97. Lengthy Constitution: It contains detailed provisions about government, rights, administration and other matters.

98. Federal System: Powers are divided between the Union and State Governments.

99. Strong Centre: The Union Government has greater powers in several important areas.

100. Parliamentary Government: The Council of Ministers is responsible to the Lok Sabha.

101. Constitutional Supremacy: The Constitution is the highest law of India.

102. Independent Judiciary: Courts can work independently without direct control from the government.

103. Judicial Review: Courts can examine whether laws and government actions follow the Constitution.

104. Fundamental Rights: Basic rights guaranteed to citizens and, in some cases, all persons.

105. Directive Principles: Guidelines for the government to create a just and welfare-oriented society.

106. Fundamental Duties: Basic duties expected from citizens.

107. Universal Adult Franchise: Every citizen who meets the constitutional/legal voting age and other legal requirements can vote without discrimination based on religion, race, caste or sex.

108. Voting Age: 18 years.

109. Single Citizenship: A person has Indian citizenship rather than separate Union and State citizenship.

110. Secular State: India does not have an official State religion.

111. Democratic Republic: People elect their representatives, and the head of the State is elected.

112. Emergency Provisions: The Constitution provides special powers to deal with serious national, state or financial emergencies.

113. Blend of Rigidity and Flexibility: Some constitutional provisions are difficult to amend, while others can be amended more easily.

114. Rigid Constitution: A Constitution that requires a special procedure for amendment.

115. Flexible Constitution: A Constitution that can be changed relatively easily.

116. Independent Constitutional Bodies: The Constitution creates bodies such as the Election Commission, UPSC and CAG to perform important functions independently.

PARTS OF THE CONSTITUTION

117. Part I: The Union and its Territory — Articles 1–4.

118. Part II: Citizenship — Articles 5–11.

119. Part III: Fundamental Rights — Articles 12–35.

120. Part IV: Directive Principles of State Policy — Articles 36–51.

121. Part IVA: Fundamental Duties — Article 51A.

122. Part V: The Union — Articles 52–151.

123. Part VI: The States — Articles 152–237.

124. Part VII: States in Part B of the First Schedule — **Repealed**.

125. Part VIII: Union Territories — Articles 239–242.

126. Part IX: Panchayats — Articles 243–243O.

127. Part IXA: Municipalities — Articles 243P–243ZG.

128. Part IXB: Co-operative Societies — Articles 243ZH–243ZT.

129. Part X: Scheduled and Tribal Areas — Articles 244–244A.

130. Part XI: Relations between the Union and the States — Articles 245–263.

131. Part XII: Finance, Property, Contracts and Suits — Articles 264–300A.

132. Part XIII: Trade, Commerce and Intercourse within India — Articles 301–307.

133. Part XIV: Services under the Union and the States — Articles 308–323.

134. Part XIVA: Tribunals — Articles 323A–323B.

135. Part XV: Elections — Articles 324–329A.

136. Part XVI: Special Provisions Relating to Certain Classes — Articles 330–342A.

137. Part XVII: Official Language — Articles 343–351.

138. Part XVIII: Emergency Provisions — Articles 352–360.

139. Part XIX: Miscellaneous — Articles 361–367.

140. Part XX: Amendment of the Constitution — Article 368.

141. Part XXI: Temporary, Transitional and Special Provisions — Articles 369–392.

142. Part XXII: Short Title, Commencement, Authoritative Text in Hindi and Repeals — Articles 393–395.

143. Important Note: Parts **IVA, IXA, IXB and XIVA** were added later through Constitutional Amendments.

SCHEDULES OF THE CONSTITUTION

144. Schedule: A detailed list or additional information attached to the Constitution.

145. Original Schedules: 8.

146. Present Schedules: 12.

147. First Schedule: Names of States and Union Territories and their territories.

148. Second Schedule: Salaries, allowances and related provisions for certain constitutional offices.

149. Third Schedule: Forms of oaths and affirmations.

150. Fourth Schedule: Allocation of seats in the Rajya Sabha to States and Union Territories.

151. Fifth Schedule: Administration and control of Scheduled Areas and Scheduled Tribes.

152. Sixth Schedule: Administration of tribal areas in Assam, Meghalaya, Tripura and Mizoram.

153. Seventh Schedule: Union List, State List and Concurrent List.

154. Eighth Schedule: Languages recognised by the Constitution.

155. Ninth Schedule: Certain Acts and Regulations protected under Article 31B, subject to judicial review principles.

156. Tenth Schedule: Anti-Defection provisions.

157. Eleventh Schedule: Powers and responsibilities of Panchayats.

158. Twelfth Schedule: Powers and responsibilities of Municipalities.

C. FUNDAMENTAL RIGHTS

159. Fundamental Rights: Basic rights guaranteed by the Constitution to protect the freedom, equality and dignity of people.

160. Part of Constitution: Fundamental Rights are given in **Part III**.

161. Articles: Fundamental Rights are covered mainly under **Articles 12 to 35**.

162. Importance: They protect people from unfair or arbitrary (unreasonable) actions by the State.

163. Fundamental Rights are Justiciable: A person can go to court if a Fundamental Right is violated.

164. Justiciable: A matter that can be taken to a court for legal protection.

165. Number of Fundamental Rights: There are **6 Fundamental Rights** at present.

166. Original Number: The Constitution originally provided **7 Fundamental Rights**.

167. Right to Property: It was originally a Fundamental Right under **Article 31**.

168. Right to Property Removed as Fundamental Right: The **44th Constitutional Amendment Act, 1978** removed it from the list of Fundamental Rights.

169. Present Status of Right to Property: It is a **constitutional legal right** under **Article 300A**.

---

1. RIGHT TO EQUALITY

170. Right to Equality: Ensures equality before law and equal treatment under the law.

171. Articles: Articles 14–18.

172. Article 14: Equality before law and equal protection of laws.

173. Equality Before Law: No person is above the law.

174. Equal Protection of Laws: People in similar situations should be treated equally.

175. Article 15: Prohibits discrimination (unfair treatment) on grounds only of religion, race, caste, sex or place of birth.

176. Article 16: Provides equality of opportunity in matters of public employment (government jobs).

177. Article 17: Abolishes untouchability and forbids its practice in any form.

178. Untouchability: The Constitution does not define the term separately; Article 17 prohibits the practice of untouchability in any form.

179. Article 18: Abolishes titles except military and academic distinctions.

180. Title: A special name or honour officially given to a person.

---

2. RIGHT TO FREEDOM

181. Right to Freedom: Protects important personal and democratic freedoms.

182. Articles: Articles 19–22.

183. Article 19: Gives citizens **six freedoms**.

184. Freedom of Speech and Expression: Freedom to express ideas and opinions, subject to reasonable constitutional restrictions.

185. Freedom of Peaceful Assembly: Right to assemble peacefully and without arms.

186. Freedom of Association: Right to form associations, unions or co-operative societies, subject to constitutional restrictions.

187. Freedom of Movement: Right to move freely throughout India, subject to lawful restrictions.

188. Freedom of Residence: Right to reside and settle in any part of India, subject to lawful restrictions.

189. Freedom of Profession: Right to practise any profession or carry on any occupation, trade or business, subject to law.

190. Article 20: Provides protection in respect of conviction for offences.

191. Ex-post-facto Law: A law that tries to punish an act that was not an offence when it was committed.

192. Double Jeopardy: A person cannot be prosecuted and punished more than once for the same offence, subject to the constitutional provision.

193. Self-Incrimination: A person accused of an offence cannot be compelled to be a witness against himself or herself.

194. Article 21: Protects life and personal liberty according to the procedure established by law.

195. Personal Liberty: Freedom from unlawful interference with one's person and liberty.

196. Article 21A: Provides the Right to Education for children aged **6 to 14 years**, subject to the constitutional provision.

197. Right to Education: Free and compulsory education for children in the 6–14 age group.

198. Article 22: Provides protection against arrest and detention in certain situations.

199. Arrest: Taking a person into legal custody.

200. Detention: Keeping a person in custody, usually under legal authority.

201. Preventive Detention: Detention intended to prevent a person from committing certain possible future acts, under conditions allowed by law.

---

3. RIGHT AGAINST EXPLOITATION

202. Right Against Exploitation: Protects people from forced labour and trafficking.

203. Articles: Articles 23–24.

204. Article 23: Prohibits trafficking in human beings, begar and other similar forms of forced labour.

205. Human Trafficking: Illegal buying, selling or exploitation of people.

206. Begar: Forced labour without payment.

207. Forced Labour: Labour obtained through force, pressure or other prohibited means.

208. Article 24: Prohibits employment of children below **14 years** in factories, mines or other hazardous employment.

209. Hazardous: Dangerous to health or safety.

4. RIGHT TO FREEDOM OF RELIGION

210. Right to Freedom of Religion: Gives people freedom of conscience and the right to practise, profess and propagate religion, subject to constitutional restrictions.

211. Articles: Articles 25–28.

212. Article 25: Freedom of conscience and the right to profess, practise and propagate religion.

213. Conscience: A person's inner belief about what is right or wrong.

214. Profess: To openly declare or follow a religion.

215. Practise: To follow religious beliefs and activities.

216. Propagate: To spread or explain religious beliefs.

217. Article 26: Gives religious denominations the right to manage their religious affairs, subject to the Constitution.

218. Religious Denomination: A group having a common faith, organisation and distinctive name.

219. Article 27: No person can be compelled to pay a tax specifically meant for promoting or maintaining a particular religion.

220. Article 28: Deals with religious instruction in educational institutions.

5. CULTURAL AND EDUCATIONAL RIGHTS

221. Cultural and Educational Rights: Protect the language, script and culture of sections of citizens and provide certain educational rights to minorities.

222. Articles: Articles 29–30.

223. Article 29: Protects the language, script and culture of sections of citizens.

224. Article 30: Gives religious and linguistic minorities the right to establish and administer educational institutions of their choice, subject to constitutional provisions.

225. Minority: A group that is smaller in number than another group in a particular context.

226. Linguistic Minority: A minority identified mainly on the basis of language.

227. Religious Minority: A minority identified mainly on the basis of religion.

---

6. RIGHT TO CONSTITUTIONAL REMEDIES

228. Right to Constitutional Remedies: Gives a person the right to approach the Supreme Court for enforcement of Fundamental Rights.

229. Article: Article 32.

230. Article 32: Dr. B. R. Ambedkar described it as the **"heart and soul" of the Constitution**.

231. Constitutional Remedy: Legal method provided by the Constitution to protect a constitutional right.

232. Writ: A formal written order issued by a court.

233. Supreme Court: Can issue writs under **Article 32** for enforcement of Fundamental Rights.

234. High Court: Can issue writs under **Article 226** for Fundamental Rights and for other legal purposes as provided by law.

FIVE IMPORTANT WRITS

235. Habeas Corpus: Means **"produce the body"**; used to challenge unlawful detention.

236. Mandamus: Means **"we command"**; orders a public authority to perform a legal duty.

237. Prohibition: An order by a higher court stopping a lower court or tribunal from exceeding its jurisdiction.

238. Certiorari: An order by a higher court to review and, where legally appropriate, quash an order of a lower court or tribunal.

239. Quo Warranto: Means **"by what authority"**; challenges a person's legal right to hold a public office.

IMPORTANT FUNDAMENTAL RIGHTS FACTS

240. Fundamental Rights and Citizens: Some Fundamental Rights are available only to citizens, while some are available to all persons.

241. Right to Equality: Articles 14–18.

242. Right to Freedom: Articles 19–22.

243. Right Against Exploitation: Articles 23–24.

244. Right to Freedom of Religion: Articles 25–28.

245. Cultural and Educational Rights: Articles 29–30.

246. Right to Constitutional Remedies: Article 32.

247. Article 12: Defines "State" for the purpose of Part III.

248. Article 13: Provides that laws inconsistent with Fundamental Rights are void to the extent of inconsistency.

249. Void: Having no legal effect to the extent declared invalid.

250. Reasonable Restrictions: Lawful limits placed on certain Fundamental Rights for reasons permitted by the Constitution.

251. Fundamental Rights Are Not Absolute: Some rights have reasonable restrictions and constitutional limitations.

252. Right to Property: No longer a Fundamental Right; protected under **Article 300A**.

D. DIRECTIVE PRINCIPLES OF STATE POLICY (DPSP)

253. DPSP: Directive Principles of State Policy.

254. Simple Meaning: Guidelines (directions) given to the government for making laws and policies for the welfare of the people.

255. Part: Part IV of the Constitution.

256. Articles: Articles 36–51.

257. Main Aim: To establish a **just and welfare-oriented society**.

258. Welfare State: A State that works for the social and economic well-being of its people.

259. Source: The idea of DPSP was mainly borrowed from the **Irish Constitution**.

260. Nature: DPSPs are **non-justiciable**.

261. Non-Justiciable: A person cannot directly go to court to enforce a Directive Principle.

262. Article 37: DPSPs are not enforceable by courts, but they are fundamental in the governance of the country.

263. Importance: Governments are expected to keep these principles in mind while making laws and policies.

CLASSIFICATION OF DPSP

264. Classification: M. Laxmikanth commonly classifies DPSPs into **Socialistic, Gandhian and Liberal-Intellectual** principles.

A. SOCIALISTIC PRINCIPLES

265. Socialistic Principles: Principles aimed at social and economic justice and reducing inequality.

266. Article 38: The State should promote the welfare of the people and work to reduce inequalities.

267. Article 39: The State should work towards adequate livelihood, fair distribution of resources and equal pay for equal work, among other objectives.

268. Article 39(a): Adequate means of livelihood for all citizens, men and women.

269. Article 39(b): Distribution of material resources to serve the common good.

270. Article 39(c): Prevent concentration of wealth and means of production to the common detriment.

271. Article 39(d): Equal pay for equal work for both men and women.

272. Article 39(e): Protection of workers' health and strength and protection of children from abuse.

273. Article 39(f): Children should develop in a healthy manner and be protected against exploitation and abandonment.

274. Article 39A: Equal justice and free legal aid.

275. Free Legal Aid: Providing legal help without charging eligible people who cannot afford it.

276. Article 41: Right to work, education and public assistance in certain cases, within the limits of the State's economic capacity.

277. Article 42: Just and humane conditions of work and maternity relief.

278. Article 43: Living wage and decent conditions of work for workers.

279. Article 43A: Participation of workers in management of industries.

B. GANDHIAN PRINCIPLES

280. Gandhian Principles: Principles influenced by Mahatma Gandhi's ideas about villages, self-reliance and social welfare.

281. Article 40: Organisation of village Panchayats as units of self-government.

282. Article 43: Promotion of cottage industries in rural areas.

283. Article 43B: Promotion of co-operative societies.

284. Article 46: Promotion of educational and economic interests of weaker sections, especially Scheduled Castes and Scheduled Tribes.

285. Article 47: Improvement of nutrition, standard of living and public health.

286. Article 48: Organisation of agriculture and animal husbandry on modern and scientific lines.

287. Article 48: Includes preservation and improvement of breeds and prohibition of slaughter of cows, calves and other milch and draught cattle, as provided by the Constitution.

C. LIBERAL-INTELLECTUAL PRINCIPLES

288. Liberal-Intellectual Principles: Principles promoting modern administration, justice, education and international peace.

289. Article 44: State should try to secure a **Uniform Civil Code (UCC)** for citizens throughout India.

290. Uniform Civil Code: A common set of personal laws for citizens irrespective of religion.

291. Article 45: The State shall endeavour to provide early childhood care and education for all children until they complete six years of age.

292. Article 48A: Protection and improvement of the environment and safeguarding forests and wildlife.

293. Article 49: Protection of monuments and places or objects of national importance.

294. Article 50: Separation of Judiciary from Executive in the public services of the State.

295. Article 51: Promotion of international peace and security.

296. Article 51: The State should promote respect for international law and treaty obligations.

297. Article 51: The State should encourage settlement of international disputes by arbitration (settlement through an independent process).

IMPORTANT DPSP AMENDMENTS

298. 42nd Constitutional Amendment, 1976: Added **Articles 39A, 43A and 48A**.

299. Article 39A: Equal justice and free legal aid.

300. Article 43A: Workers' participation in management.

301. Article 48A: Environment, forests and wildlife protection.

302. 44th Constitutional Amendment, 1978: Added the idea of reducing inequalities in **Article 38**.

303. 86th Constitutional Amendment, 2002: Changed Article 45 to focus on early childhood care and education for children below six years.

304. 97th Constitutional Amendment, 2011: Added **Article 43B** relating to co-operative societies.

DPSP VS FUNDAMENTAL RIGHTS

305. Fundamental Rights: Mainly protect individual freedoms and rights.

306. DPSP: Mainly guide the State in achieving social and economic welfare.

307. Fundamental Rights: Generally enforceable by courts.

308. DPSP: Not directly enforceable by courts.

309. Fundamental Rights: Mainly found in **Part III**.

310. DPSP: Found in **Part IV**.

311. Fundamental Rights: Articles **12–35**.

312. DPSP: Articles **36–51**.

313. Fundamental Rights and DPSP: Both are important parts of the Constitution and should be understood together.

314. Minerva Mills Case: The Supreme Court stressed the importance of harmony and balance between Fundamental Rights and DPSP.

EASY REVISION

315. Fundamental Rights → Part III → Articles 12–35.

316. DPSP → Part IV → Articles 36–51.

317. Fundamental Duties → Part IVA → Article 51A.

318. DPSP Source → Irish Constitution.

319. DPSP Nature → Non-Justiciable.

320. Article 39A → Free Legal Aid.

321. Article 40 → Village Panchayats.

322. Article 44 → Uniform Civil Code.

323. Article 45 → Early Childhood Care and Education below 6 years.

324. Article 48A → Environment, Forests and Wildlife.

325. Article 50 → Separation of Judiciary from Executive.

326. Article 51 → International Peace and Security.

E. FUNDAMENTAL DUTIES

327. Fundamental Duties: Basic duties that the Constitution expects every citizen of India to follow.

328. Part: Part IVA of the Constitution.

329. Article: Article 51A.

330. Number of Fundamental Duties: 11.

331. Original Number: There were originally **10 Fundamental Duties**.

332. Added By: 42nd Constitutional Amendment Act, 1976.

333. Recommendation: The **Swaran Singh Committee** recommended the inclusion of Fundamental Duties.

334. 11th Fundamental Duty: Added by the **86th Constitutional Amendment Act, 2002.**

335. 11th Duty: Parents or guardians should provide opportunities for education to their child or ward between **6 and 14 years**.

336. Fundamental Duties Apply To: Citizens of India.

337. Fundamental Duties and Foreigners: Fundamental Duties are duties of citizens, not general constitutional duties imposed on foreigners.

338. Source: The idea of Fundamental Duties was inspired by the **Constitution of the former Soviet Union (USSR).**

339. Justiciable: Fundamental Duties are **not directly enforceable by courts**.

340. Meaning of Non-Justiciable: A person cannot normally be taken to court simply for not following a Fundamental Duty unless a separate law makes the conduct punishable.

---

11 FUNDAMENTAL DUTIES

1. RESPECT THE CONSTITUTION

341. First Duty: To abide by the Constitution and respect its ideals and institutions, the National Flag and the National Anthem.

Abide: Follow or obey.

2. RESPECT NATIONAL IDEALS

342. Second Duty: To cherish (value and respect) the ideals that inspired the national struggle for freedom.

Cherish: To value something deeply.

3. PROTECT UNITY AND INTEGRITY

343. Third Duty: To uphold and protect the sovereignty, unity and integrity of India.

Uphold: Support and protect.

Integrity: Wholeness and unity.

4. DEFEND THE COUNTRY

344. Fourth Duty: To defend the country and render national service when called upon to do so.

Render: Provide or perform.

5. PROMOTE HARMONY

345. Fifth Duty: To promote harmony and the spirit of common brotherhood among all people of India.

Harmony: Peaceful and friendly relations.

Brotherhood: Feeling of unity and mutual respect.

This duty also asks citizens to renounce practices that are against the dignity of women.

Renounce: Give up or stop following.

6. PRESERVE CULTURAL HERITAGE

346. Sixth Duty: To value and preserve the rich heritage of India's composite culture.

Composite Culture: A culture formed from different traditions and communities.

Heritage: Things, traditions and values passed from one generation to another.

---

7. PROTECT THE ENVIRONMENT

347. Seventh Duty: To protect and improve the natural environment, including forests, lakes, rivers and wildlife, and to have compassion for living creatures.

Compassion: Kindness and concern for others.

---

8. DEVELOP SCIENTIFIC TEMPER

348. Eighth Duty: To develop scientific temper, humanism and the spirit of inquiry and reform.

Scientific Temper: Habit of thinking logically and using evidence.

Humanism: Respect for human values and dignity.

Spirit of Inquiry: Desire to ask questions, investigate and learn.

Reform: Improvement or positive change.

---

9. PROTECT PUBLIC PROPERTY

349. Ninth Duty: To safeguard public property and avoid violence.

Safeguard: Protect from harm.

Public Property: Property belonging to or meant for public use, such as public buildings, roads and government facilities.

---

10. STRIVE FOR EXCELLENCE

350. Tenth Duty: To strive towards excellence in all areas of individual and collective activity so that the nation continuously rises to higher levels of achievement.

Strive: Make a strong effort.

Excellence: Very high quality or achievement.

Collective: Done by a group together.

---

11. EDUCATION OF CHILDREN

351. Eleventh Duty: It is the duty of every parent or guardian to provide opportunities for education to their child or ward between **6 and 14 years**.

Parent: Mother or father.

Guardian: A person legally responsible for a child.

Ward: A child under the legal care of another person.

Added By: 86th Constitutional Amendment Act, 2002.

IMPORTANT FACTS ABOUT FUNDAMENTAL DUTIES

352. 42nd Amendment: Added the first **10 Fundamental Duties**.

353. 86th Amendment: Added the **11th Fundamental Duty**.

354. Swaran Singh Committee: Recommended Fundamental Duties.

355. Fundamental Duties: Listed in **Article 51A**.

356. Fundamental Duties: Located in **Part IVA**.

357. Fundamental Duties: 11 in number.

358. Fundamental Duties: Apply to **citizens**.

359. Fundamental Duties: Are **non-justiciable**.

360. Fundamental Duties: Can help courts interpret constitutional provisions and laws.

361. Fundamental Duties: Are important for responsible citizenship.

362. Fundamental Duties: Unlike Fundamental Rights, they do not generally give a person a direct legal remedy.

FUNDAMENTAL RIGHTS vs DPSP vs FUNDAMENTAL DUTIES

Feature	Fundamental Rights	DPSP	Fundamental Duties
Part	Part III	Part IV	Part IVA
Articles	12–35	36–51	51A
Main Purpose	Protect rights	Guide government	Guide citizens
Enforceable by Court	Yes, subject to Constitution	No	No, by themselves
Applies Mainly To	Citizens/persons depending on right	State	Citizens
Main Focus	Freedom & equality	Social & economic welfare	Responsible citizenship

VERY IMPORTANT ARTICLES

363. Article 12: Definition of "State" for Fundamental Rights.

364. Article 13: Laws inconsistent with Fundamental Rights are void to the extent of inconsistency.

365. Article 14: Equality before law.

366. Article 15: Prohibition of discrimination.

367. Article 16: Equality of opportunity in public employment.

368. Article 17: Abolition of untouchability.

369. Article 18: Abolition of titles.

370. Article 19: Six freedoms.

371. Article 20: Protection in conviction for offences.

372. Article 21: Protection of life and personal liberty.

373. Article 21A: Right to Education for children aged 6–14 years.

374. Article 22: Protection against arrest and detention in certain cases.

375. Articles 23–24: Right Against Exploitation.

376. Articles 25–28: Freedom of Religion.

377. Articles 29–30: Cultural and Educational Rights.

378. Article 32: Constitutional Remedies.

379. Articles 36–51: Directive Principles of State Policy.

380. Article 51A: Fundamental Duties.

F. CITIZENSHIP OF INDIA

381. Citizenship: Legal membership of a person in a country.

382. Citizen: A person who legally belongs to a country and enjoys the rights given to citizens.

383. Citizenship of India: Indian citizenship is mainly governed by the Constitution and the **Citizenship Act, 1955**.

384. Constitutional Part: Part II of the Constitution.

385. Constitutional Articles: Articles 5–11.

386. Article 5: Deals with citizenship at the commencement (beginning) of the Constitution.

387. Article 6: Deals with citizenship of certain persons who migrated to India from Pakistan.

388. Article 7: Deals with certain persons who migrated to Pakistan but later returned to India.

389. Article 8: Deals with persons of Indian origin living outside India.

390. Article 9: A person who voluntarily acquires citizenship of another country cannot continue as an Indian citizen under the constitutional provision.

391. Article 10: Continuance of citizenship, subject to laws made by Parliament.

392. Article 11: Parliament has the power to make laws regarding acquisition and termination of citizenship.

CITIZENSHIP ACT, 1955

393. Citizenship Act: The law made by Parliament to deal with acquisition and termination of Indian citizenship.

394. Year: 1955.

395. Main Ways of Acquiring Citizenship: By **birth, descent, registration, naturalisation and incorporation of territory**.

396. Acquisition: Getting or obtaining something.

397. Descent: Citizenship obtained through one's parents.

398. Registration: Obtaining citizenship through an application under specified legal conditions.

399. Naturalisation: Becoming a citizen after meeting legal conditions set for foreigners.

400. Incorporation of Territory: Citizenship arising when a territory becomes part of India, subject to the terms specified by the Central Government.

---

1. CITIZENSHIP BY BIRTH

401. Citizenship by Birth: A person may become an Indian citizen by birth according to the conditions and dates provided in the Citizenship Act.

402. Important Point: The rules for citizenship by birth have changed through amendments to the Citizenship Act.

403. Citizenship by Birth Today: The Act applies different conditions depending on when the person was born and the citizenship status of the parents.

---

2. CITIZENSHIP BY DESCENT

404. Citizenship by Descent: Citizenship acquired through an Indian parent, subject to the conditions of the Citizenship Act.

405. Descent: Getting citizenship through one's parent or parents.

406. Important: Different rules apply depending on the date of birth and whether the birth occurred inside or outside India.

---

3. CITIZENSHIP BY REGISTRATION

407. Citizenship by Registration: Certain persons can obtain Indian citizenship by registration if they satisfy the conditions of the Citizenship Act.

408. Examples: Certain persons of Indian origin, persons married to Indian citizens and certain minor children may qualify, subject to legal conditions.

409. Important: Registration does not mean that every foreign spouse or person of Indian origin automatically becomes an Indian citizen.

---

4. CITIZENSHIP BY NATURALISATION

410. Naturalisation: A foreigner can become an Indian citizen after fulfilling the conditions prescribed by law.

411. Naturalisation Conditions: The Citizenship Act provides requirements relating to residence, character, knowledge of a language in the Eighth Schedule and other conditions.

412. Naturalisation Certificate: Citizenship may be granted through a certificate of naturalisation when the legal requirements are fulfilled.

---

5. CITIZENSHIP BY INCORPORATION OF TERRITORY

413. Incorporation of Territory: When a territory becomes part of India, the Central Government may specify who will become Indian citizens as provided by law.

LOSS OF INDIAN CITIZENSHIP

414. Loss of Citizenship: Indian citizenship can be lost through **renunciation, termination or deprivation**.

415. Renunciation: Voluntarily giving up Indian citizenship.

416. Termination: Indian citizenship ends when a person voluntarily acquires citizenship of another country, subject to the law.

417. Deprivation: Citizenship can be taken away by the Central Government in specified circumstances under the Citizenship Act.

418. Deprivation: Removal of citizenship by legal action under specified grounds.

SINGLE CITIZENSHIP

419. Single Citizenship: India provides **single citizenship** for the whole country.

420. Meaning: There is no separate citizenship of Maharashtra, Jammu and Kashmir, Kerala, etc.

421. Indian Citizen: A citizen is a citizen of India.

422. Importance: Single citizenship promotes national unity and a common Indian identity.

CITIZENSHIP vs NATIONALITY

423. Citizenship: Legal membership of a person in a country with specific legal rights and duties.

424. Nationality: A broader term referring to a person's connection or belonging to a nation.

425. Exam Point: Citizenship and nationality are related terms but are not always exactly the same in legal usage.

NRI, PIO AND OCI

426. NRI: Non-Resident Indian.

427. NRI Meaning: An Indian citizen who lives outside India according to the applicable legal and tax rules.

428. OCI: Overseas Citizen of India.

429. OCI Meaning: A person registered under the OCI provisions of the Citizenship Act who receives specified immigration and other benefits.

430. Important: OCI is **not dual citizenship**.

431. OCI Cardholder: An OCI cardholder remains a citizen of the country whose citizenship they hold; OCI status does not make the person an Indian citizen.

432. OCI Voting Right: OCI cardholders do not have the voting rights of Indian citizens.

433. OCI Constitutional Offices: OCI cardholders cannot hold constitutional offices reserved for Indian citizens.

434. PIO: Person of Indian Origin.

435. PIO Scheme: The earlier PIO Card Scheme was merged with the OCI scheme in 2015.

DUAL CITIZENSHIP

436. Dual Citizenship: Holding citizenship of two countries at the same time.

437. India and Dual Citizenship: India does **not generally allow dual citizenship** under the Citizenship Act.

438. OCI and Dual Citizenship: OCI should not be confused with dual citizenship.

IMPORTANT CITIZENSHIP FACTS

439. Citizenship is mainly a Union subject: Citizenship is dealt with at the national level.

440. Parliament's Power: Article 11 gives Parliament power to make laws regarding citizenship.

441. Citizenship Act: Passed in **1955**.

442. Citizenship Amendment Act, 2019: Amended the Citizenship Act, 1955 and introduced special provisions for certain persons belonging to specified communities from Afghanistan, Bangladesh and Pakistan, subject to the conditions of the Act.

443. CAA: Citizenship (Amendment) Act.

444. Citizenship Rules, 2024: Rules relating to the 2019 amendment were notified in 2024.

445. Important: Citizenship law is different from Fundamental Rights; not every right available under the Constitution is restricted to citizens.

CITIZENS vs ALL PERSONS

446. Article 14: Equality before law and equal protection of laws — available to **any person**.

447. Article 21: Protection of life and personal liberty — available to **any person**.

448. Article 19: The six freedoms are available specifically to **citizens**.

449. Article 15: Prohibition of discrimination on specified grounds — applies to citizens.

450. Article 16: Equality of opportunity in public employment — applies to citizens.

451. Article 29: Certain cultural and educational protections.

452. Article 30: Rights of religious and linguistic minorities to establish and administer educational institutions.

QUICK REVISION

453. Citizenship → Part II.

454. Citizenship Articles → 5–11.

455. Citizenship Act → 1955.

456. Parliament's Citizenship Power → Article 11.

457. Main Ways of Acquiring Citizenship → Birth, Descent, Registration, Naturalisation, Incorporation of Territory.

458. Main Ways of Losing Citizenship → Renunciation, Termination, Deprivation.

459. India → Single Citizenship.

460. OCI → Not Indian citizenship.

461. OCI → Not dual citizenship.

462. PIO Scheme → Merged with OCI Scheme in 2015.

G. UNION EXECUTIVE — PRESIDENT OF INDIA

BASIC INFORMATION

463. Union Executive: The executive branch (part of government that runs administration) of the Union Government.

464. Union Executive Includes: President, Vice-President, Prime Minister, Council of Ministers and Attorney General of India.

465. President of India: The constitutional head (formal head) of the Union.

466. Article 52: Provides for the office of the President of India.

467. Article 53: The executive power of the Union is vested in the President.

468. Executive Power: Power to implement laws and run the administration.

469. President's Official Residence: Rashtrapati Bhavan, New Delhi.

470. First President of India: Dr. Rajendra Prasad.

471. First President: Dr. Rajendra Prasad was the only person to serve **two complete terms** as President.

ELECTION OF PRESIDENT

472. President is Elected: Indirectly.

473. Indirect Election: People do not directly vote for the President; elected representatives vote.

474. Electoral College: The group of elected representatives that elects the President.

475. Electoral College for President Includes:

- Elected members of Lok Sabha.
- Elected members of Rajya Sabha.
- Elected members of State Legislative Assemblies.
- Elected members of Legislative Assemblies of Delhi and Puducherry.

476. Nominated Members: Nominated members of Parliament or State Legislatures do **not** vote in the Presidential election.

477. Legislative Council Members: Members of State Legislative Councils do not vote in the Presidential election.

478. Election System: Proportional representation by means of the **single transferable vote (STV)**.

479. Single Transferable Vote: Voters rank candidates according to preference, such as 1st, 2nd, 3rd preference.

480. Secret Ballot: Voting is conducted by secret ballot.

QUALIFICATIONS

481. Article 58: Provides the qualifications for becoming President.

482. President Must Be:

- A citizen of India.
- At least **35 years old**.
- Qualified to be elected as a member of Lok Sabha.
- Not hold an **office of profit** under the Government of India, State Government or a local/other authority controlled by them, subject to constitutional exceptions.

483. Office of Profit: A government position that may provide financial benefit or other advantages, subject to the legal rules.

484. President's Age: Minimum **35 years**.

485. Maximum Age: There is **no maximum age limit**.

TERM OF PRESIDENT

486. Article 56: The President's term is **5 years**.

487. Term Begins: From the date the President enters office.

488. Re-election: A President can be re-elected.

489. Maximum Terms: The Constitution does **not set a maximum number of terms**.

490. Resignation: The President resigns by writing to the **Vice-President**.

491. Removal: The President can be removed through **impeachment** for violation of the Constitution.

OATH

492. Article 60: Provides the oath or affirmation of the President.

493. President's Oath: The President swears to preserve, protect and defend the Constitution and the law and to devote himself/herself to the service and well-being of the people of India.

494. President's Oath Administered By: The **Chief Justice of India** or, in their absence, the senior-most available Judge of the Supreme Court.

IMPEACHMENT

495. Impeachment: Constitutional process for removing the President from office.

496. Ground: Violation of the Constitution.

497. Who Can Start Impeachment: Either House of Parliament.

498. Notice: A written notice signed by at least **one-fourth of the total members** of the House is required.

499. Notice Period: At least **14 days** before the resolution is moved.

500. Special Majority: The impeachment resolution must be passed by a majority of **two-thirds of the total membership** of that House.

501. Second House: The other House investigates or causes the charge to be investigated.

502. President's Right: The President has the right to appear and be represented during the investigation.

503. Final Removal: Both Houses must pass the charge with the required **two-thirds of total membership**.

PRESIDENT'S POWERS

1. EXECUTIVE POWERS

504. Executive Power: The President formally exercises the executive power of the Union.

505. Appointments: The President appoints the Prime Minister and, on the Prime Minister's advice, other Union Ministers.

506. Other Important Appointments: The President appoints various constitutional authorities as provided by the Constitution, including the Attorney General, CAG, Governors, UPSC members and others.

507. Diplomatic Powers: The President represents India in international relations and appoints diplomatic representatives.

508. Military Powers: The President is the Supreme Commander of the Defence Forces of India.

---

2. LEGISLATIVE POWERS

509. Parliament: The President is a part of Parliament along with Lok Sabha and Rajya Sabha.

510. Article 79: Parliament consists of the President and two Houses.

511. Summoning Parliament: The President summons and prorogues the Houses of Parliament.

512. Summon: Officially call Parliament to meet.

513. Prorogue: End a session of Parliament.

514. Dissolution: End the term of Lok Sabha before a new Lok Sabha is formed.

515. President's Address: The President addresses both Houses assembled together at the beginning of the first session after each general election and at the beginning of the first session each year.

516. Nomination: The President nominates **12 members to Rajya Sabha** from fields such as literature, science, art and social service.

517. Ordinance Power: The President can promulgate an ordinance when Parliament is not in session, subject to constitutional conditions.

518. Ordinance: A temporary law having the force of an Act of Parliament while it remains in operation.

519. Article 123: Deals with the President's ordinance-making power.

---

3. FINANCIAL POWERS

520. Money Bill: A Bill dealing with matters specified in Article 110.

521. President's Recommendation: A Money Bill can be introduced in Lok Sabha only on the President's recommendation.

522. Annual Financial Statement: The Union Budget is constitutionally called the Annual Financial Statement.

523. Article 112: Deals with the Annual Financial Statement.

524. Finance Commission: The President constitutes the Finance Commission under Article 280 at the required intervals.

---

4. JUDICIAL POWERS

525. Pardoning Power: The President can grant pardon, reprieve, respite, remission or commute sentences in cases covered by Article 72.

526. Pardon: Completely removes the punishment and conviction consequences in the manner provided by law.

527. Reprieve: Temporary suspension of the execution of a sentence, especially a death sentence.

528. Respite: Awarding a lesser sentence because of special circumstances.

529. Remission: Reducing the period or amount of punishment without changing its nature.

530. Commutation: Replacing one form of punishment with a lighter form.

531. Article 72: President's pardoning power.

---

5. EMERGENCY POWERS

532. Emergency Powers: Special constitutional powers available during serious national, State or financial situations.

533. National Emergency: Article **352**.

534. President's Rule: Article **356**.

535. Financial Emergency: Article **360**.

536. National Emergency: Can be proclaimed on grounds of **war, external aggression or armed rebellion**.

537. External Aggression: Attack or hostile action from outside the country.

538. Armed Rebellion: Serious organised armed uprising against the State.

PRESIDENT AND REAL EXECUTIVE

539. Constitutional Head: President is the formal constitutional head.

540. Real Executive: The Prime Minister and Council of Ministers exercise the real executive power in the parliamentary system.

541. Article 74: There shall be a Council of Ministers with the Prime Minister at the head to aid and advise the President.

542. Aid and Advice: The Council of Ministers advises the President in exercising constitutional functions.

543. Article 75: Deals with appointment and other matters relating to Union Ministers.

IMPORTANT PRESIDENTIAL ARTICLES

544. Article 52: President of India.

545. Article 53: Executive power of the Union.

546. Article 54: Election of President.

547. Article 55: Manner of election of President.

548. Article 56: Term of office.

549. Article 57: Eligibility for re-election.

550. Article 58: Qualifications.

551. Article 59: Conditions of President's office.

552. Article 60: Oath or affirmation.

553. Article 61: Impeachment.

554. Article 62: Election to fill vacancy.

555. Article 72: Pardoning power.

556. Article 74: Council of Ministers to aid and advise President.

557. Article 75: Other provisions relating to Ministers.

558. Article 78: Duties of Prime Minister towards President.

559. Article 123: Ordinance-making power.

QUICK FACTS

560. First President: Dr. Rajendra Prasad.

561. First Woman President: Pratibha Patil.

562. President's Term: 5 years.

563. Minimum Age: 35 years.

564. Maximum Age: No maximum age.

565. President's Resignation: To Vice-President.

566. Removal: Impeachment by Parliament.

567. Electoral College: Elected MPs + elected MLAs of States + elected MLAs of Delhi and Puducherry.

568. Nominated MPs: Cannot vote in Presidential election.

569. Legislative Council Members: Cannot vote in Presidential election.

570. Election Method: Proportional representation + single transferable vote + secret ballot.

571. President's Ordinance Article: 123.

572. President's Pardon Article: 72.

573. President's Impeachment Article: 61.

H. VICE-PRESIDENT OF INDIA

BASIC INFORMATION

573. Vice-President of India: The second-highest constitutional office (important constitutional position) in India.

574. Article 63: Provides for the office of the Vice-President.

575. Main Role: The Vice-President is the **ex-officio Chairman (chairman by virtue of office) of the Rajya Sabha**.

576. Article 64: The Vice-President is the ex-officio Chairman of the Council of States (Rajya Sabha).

577. First Vice-President of India: Dr. S. Radhakrishnan.

578. Vice-President's Official Role: Mainly connected with the Rajya Sabha and acting as President when required.

ELECTION OF VICE-PRESIDENT

579. Vice-President is Elected: Indirectly.

580. Electoral College: All members of both Houses of Parliament — **elected and nominated members**.

581. State Legislatures: Members of State Legislative Assemblies do **not** participate in the election of the Vice-President.

582. Election Method: Proportional representation by means of the **single transferable vote**.

583. Voting: Secret ballot.

584. Proportional Representation: Seats or votes are distributed according to the proportion of support received.

585. Single Transferable Vote: Voters can mark preferences such as 1st, 2nd and 3rd choice.

QUALIFICATIONS

586. Article 66: Deals with the election of the Vice-President.

587. Article 67: Deals with the term of office.

588. Article 68: Deals with election to fill a vacancy.

589. Vice-President Must Be:

- A citizen of India.
- At least **35 years old**.
- Qualified to be elected as a member of the Rajya Sabha.
- Not hold an **office of profit** under the Government of India, State Government or a local/other authority controlled by them, subject to constitutional exceptions.

590. Minimum Age: 35 years.

591. Maximum Age: No maximum age limit.

TERM OF OFFICE

592. Term: 5 years.

593. Term Begins: From the date the Vice-President enters office.

594. Re-election: A Vice-President can be re-elected.

595. Resignation: Vice-President resigns by writing to the **President**.

596. Removal: The Vice-President is removed by a resolution of the Rajya Sabha passed by a majority of all the then members of the Rajya Sabha and agreed to by the Lok Sabha.

597. Notice for Removal: At least **14 days' notice** must be given before the resolution is moved.

598. Impeachment: The Vice-President is **not impeached** like the President.

OATH

599. Article 69: Deals with the oath or affirmation of the Vice-President.

600. Oath Administered By: The President or a person appointed by the President.

601. Oath: The Vice-President promises to bear true faith and allegiance to the Constitution and faithfully discharge the duties of the office.

602. Allegiance: Loyalty and commitment.

603. Discharge Duties: Perform the responsibilities of the office.

VICE-PRESIDENT AS RAJYA SABHA CHAIRMAN

604. Ex-officio Chairman: The Vice-President automatically becomes the Chairman of Rajya Sabha because of holding the office of Vice-President.

605. Article 64: Vice-President is Chairman of Rajya Sabha.

606. Presiding Officer: The Chairman presides over meetings of Rajya Sabha.

607. Preside: To conduct and control a meeting.

608. Voting Power: The Chairman normally does **not vote in the first instance**.

609. Casting Vote: The Chairman can use a casting vote when there is an equality of votes.

610. Casting Vote: A deciding vote used when both sides have equal votes.

611. Important: The Vice-President is **not a member of Rajya Sabha** merely because he/she is its Chairman.

VICE-PRESIDENT ACTING AS PRESIDENT

612. Article 65: The Vice-President acts as President when:

- The office of President becomes vacant.
- The President is unable to perform the functions of the office.

613. Vacancy: An office is vacant when there is no person holding it.

614. Acting President: The Vice-President performs the President's functions temporarily.

615. Maximum Period: When the Vice-President acts as President because of a vacancy, a new President must be elected within **six months**.

616. Important: While acting as President, the Vice-President does **not perform the duties of Chairman of Rajya Sabha**.

617. Chairman's Duties During This Period: The Deputy Chairman of Rajya Sabha performs the Chairman's functions.

VACANCY OF VICE-PRESIDENT

618. Article 68: Provides for election to fill a vacancy in the office of Vice-President.

619. Death/Resignation/Removal: If the office becomes vacant, an election is held to fill the vacancy.

620. Important: The Constitution does not prescribe a six-month limit for a Vice-President vacancy in the same way as it does for a President vacancy; the election is to be held as soon as possible according to Article 68.

PRESIDENT vs VICE-PRESIDENT

Feature	President	Vice-President
Article	52	63
Main Role	Constitutional Head	Rajya Sabha Chairman + acts as President when required
Election	Elected MPs + elected MLAs of States, Delhi & Puducherry	All MPs of both Houses
Minimum Age	35 years	35 years
Term	5 years	5 years
Resignation	To Vice-President	To President
Removal	Impeachment	Rajya Sabha resolution + Lok Sabha agreement
Oath	Article 60	Article 69
Pardon	Article 72	No such power
Ordinance	Article 123	No such power
Rajya Sabha	Not Chairman	Ex-officio Chairman

IMPORTANT ARTICLES

621. Article 63: Office of Vice-President.

622. Article 64: Vice-President as Chairman of Rajya Sabha.

623. Article 65: Vice-President acts as President.

624. Article 66: Election of Vice-President.

625. Article 67: Term of office.

626. Article 68: Election to fill vacancy.

627. Article 69: Oath or affirmation.

628. Article 70: Discharge of President's functions in other contingencies.

629. Article 71: Matters relating to election of President and Vice-President.

QUICK REVISION

630. First Vice-President: Dr. S. Radhakrishnan.

631. Vice-President's Term: 5 years.

632. Minimum Age: 35 years.

633. Election: Indirect.

634. Electoral College: Members of both Houses of Parliament — elected + nominated.

635. State MLAs: Do not vote.

636. Main Constitutional Role: Chairman of Rajya Sabha.

637. Removal: Rajya Sabha resolution + Lok Sabha agreement.

638. Impeachment: Not used for Vice-President.

639. Resignation: To President.

640. Oath: President or person appointed by President.

641. Acts as President: Article 65.

642. Chairman of Rajya Sabha: Article 64.

I. PRIME MINISTER OF INDIA

BASIC INFORMATION

643. Prime Minister: The head of the government (real executive) of India.

644. Article 74: Provides for the Council of Ministers with the Prime Minister at the head to aid and advise the President.

645. Article 75: Deals with the appointment and other provisions relating to the Prime Minister and Union Ministers.

646. Article 78: Describes the duties of the Prime Minister in relation to the President.

647. Real Executive: The Prime Minister and Council of Ministers exercise the real executive power in India's parliamentary system.

648. Constitutional Head: The President is the constitutional head of the Union.

649. First Prime Minister of India: Jawaharlal Nehru.

650. Longest-Serving Prime Minister: Jawaharlal Nehru.

651. Prime Minister's Office (PMO): The main administrative office that assists the Prime Minister in carrying out official functions.

652. PMO: Prime Minister's Office.

APPOINTMENT OF PRIME MINISTER

653. Appointment: The President appoints the Prime Minister.

654. Usually: The leader of the party or coalition that has majority support in the Lok Sabha is appointed Prime Minister.

655. Coalition: A government formed by two or more political parties working together.

656. Majority: More than half of the total strength of the House.

657. Hung House: A House in which no party or coalition has a clear majority.

658. Hung Parliament: A Lok Sabha in which no party or pre-poll alliance has a clear majority.

659. In a Hung House: The President appoints the person who is most likely to command the confidence (support) of the Lok Sabha.

QUALIFICATIONS

660. Prime Minister: The Constitution does not prescribe a separate set of qualifications specifically for the Prime Minister.

661. Parliamentary Membership: The Prime Minister must be a member of either House of Parliament or become a member within **6 months** of appointment.

662. Rajya Sabha Member: A person can become Prime Minister even if they are a member of Rajya Sabha.

663. Minimum Age for Lok Sabha: 25 years.

664. Minimum Age for Rajya Sabha: 30 years.

665. Citizenship: The Prime Minister must be an Indian citizen to be a member of Parliament.

TERM OF PRIME MINISTER

666. Fixed Term: The Constitution does not give the Prime Minister a fixed five-year term.

667. Actual Term: The Prime Minister remains in office as long as they have the confidence of the Lok Sabha and continue to hold office under the Constitution.

668. Loss of Majority: If the Prime Minister loses the confidence of the Lok Sabha, the government normally must resign or seek a fresh mandate according to constitutional practice.

669. Confidence: Support of the majority of members of the Lok Sabha.

670. No-Confidence Motion: A parliamentary motion showing that the Lok Sabha no longer has confidence in the Council of Ministers.

PRIME MINISTER AND COUNCIL OF MINISTERS

671. Council of Ministers: The body headed by the Prime Minister that aids and advises the President.

672. Article 74: Council of Ministers with the Prime Minister at the head.

673. Collective Responsibility: The Council of Ministers is collectively responsible to the Lok Sabha.

674. Article 75(3): Provides for collective responsibility to the House of the People.

675. Collective Responsibility: Ministers stand together as a team and must support government decisions or resign.

676. Individual Responsibility: Ministers are also individually accountable for their departments and may be removed by the President on the Prime Minister's advice.

CABINET

677. Cabinet: The smaller group of senior ministers that takes the most important policy decisions.

678. Council of Ministers: A larger body consisting of ministers of different ranks.

679. Cabinet vs Council of Ministers: The Cabinet is part of the Council of Ministers.

680. 91st Constitutional Amendment Act, 2003: Limited the total number of Union Ministers, including the Prime Minister, to **15% of the total strength of the Lok Sabha**.

681. Minister: A person appointed to the Council of Ministers.

682. Cabinet Minister: Senior minister responsible for an important government department and usually part of the Cabinet.

683. Minister of State: A minister who may have independent charge of a department or may assist a Cabinet Minister.

684. Deputy Minister: A junior ministerial rank used in earlier arrangements; currently there are generally Ministers of State rather than Deputy Ministers at the Union level.

POWERS AND FUNCTIONS OF PRIME MINISTER

1. LINK BETWEEN PRESIDENT AND COUNCIL

685. Prime Minister: Acts as the main link between the President and the Council of Ministers.

686. Article 78: The Prime Minister must communicate to the President decisions of the Council of Ministers relating to administration and legislative proposals.

687. PM Advises President: The Prime Minister advises the President regarding the appointment of other ministers.

---

2. LEADERSHIP OF COUNCIL OF MINISTERS

688. Prime Minister: Heads the Council of Ministers.

689. Allocation of Portfolios: The Prime Minister allocates and reshuffles (changes) ministerial departments among ministers.

690. Portfolio: A government department or area of responsibility given to a minister.

691. Reshuffle: Changing ministers or their departments.

692. Removal of Minister: The Prime Minister can ask a minister to resign; the President formally removes the minister on the Prime Minister's advice.

---

3. LEADERSHIP OF PARLIAMENT

693. Prime Minister: Usually leads the government in Parliament.

694. Government Business: The Prime Minister plays a major role in deciding the government's legislative and policy priorities.

695. Leader of the House: The Prime Minister may be the Leader of the House in Lok Sabha if a member of Lok Sabha; if the Prime Minister is a Rajya Sabha member, another minister may serve as Leader of Lok Sabha.

---

4. CHAIRMANSHIP OF CABINET

696. Cabinet Meetings: The Prime Minister chairs meetings of the Cabinet.

697. Cabinet Agenda: The Prime Minister plays a major role in deciding the agenda and coordination of Cabinet work.

---

5. APPOINTMENT ROLE

698. President: Appoints the Prime Minister.

699. Other Ministers: Appointed by the President on the advice of the Prime Minister.

700. Important Appointments: The Prime Minister also plays a major role in advising the President on several important constitutional appointments.

PRIME MINISTER AND PRESIDENT

701. President: Constitutional head.

702. Prime Minister: Real executive head.

703. President Acts On: Aid and advice of the Council of Ministers headed by the Prime Minister, subject to constitutional provisions.

704. Prime Minister's Duty: Keep the President informed about important government decisions.

705. Article 78: Important Article regarding the Prime Minister's duties towards the President.

PRIME MINISTER AND PARLIAMENT

706. Lok Sabha: Council of Ministers is collectively responsible to Lok Sabha.

707. Rajya Sabha: The Prime Minister may be a member of either House.

708. Accountability: The government must answer questions and face parliamentary scrutiny.

709. Parliamentary Scrutiny: Examination and questioning of government actions by Parliament.

PRIME MINISTER AND FEDERALISM

710. Federalism: Division of powers between Union and State Governments.

711. Prime Minister's Role: Provides leadership to the Union Government and plays an important role in Centre-State relations.

712. Inter-State Coordination: The Union Government works with States on matters involving national policies and shared responsibilities.

IMPORTANT TERMS

713. Majority Government: Government formed by a party or coalition having majority support in Lok Sabha.

714. Minority Government: Government that does not have its own majority but remains in office with outside support.

715. Coalition Government: Government formed by two or more parties.

716. Caretaker Government: A government that continues temporarily, usually during a transition until a new government takes office.

717. Confidence Motion: Motion used to test whether the government has majority support.

718. No-Confidence Motion: Motion to test whether the Lok Sabha still supports the Council of Ministers.

719. Floor Test: Vote in the legislature used to determine whether the government has majority support.

720. Cabinet Secretariat: Institution that provides administrative support and coordination for Cabinet work.

IMPORTANT ARTICLES

721. Article 74: Council of Ministers to aid and advise President.

722. Article 75: Appointment, tenure, responsibility and other matters relating to Union Ministers.

723. Article 76: Attorney General of India.

724. Article 77: Conduct of business of the Government of India.

725. Article 78: Duties of Prime Minister regarding communication with President.

QUICK REVISION

726. Head of Government: Prime Minister.

727. Head of State: President.

728. First Prime Minister: Jawaharlal Nehru.

729. Appointment: President appoints Prime Minister.

730. Normal Basis: Majority support in Lok Sabha.

731. Prime Minister Can Be: Member of Lok Sabha or Rajya Sabha.

732. If Not a Parliament Member: Must become a member of either House within 6 months.

733. Council of Ministers: Headed by Prime Minister.

734. Collective Responsibility: Council of Ministers is responsible to Lok Sabha.

735. Cabinet: Smaller and most important decision-making group within Council of Ministers.

736. Maximum Union Ministers: 15% of Lok Sabha strength, including Prime Minister.

737. Main Articles: 74, 75 and 78.

J. COUNCIL OF MINISTERS AND UNION CABINET

BASIC INFORMATION

738. Council of Ministers: The constitutional body headed by the Prime Minister that aids and advises the President.

739. Article 74: Provides for the Council of Ministers with the Prime Minister at the head.

740. Article 75: Deals with appointment, responsibility, tenure and other matters concerning Union Ministers.

741. Council of Ministers: Collectively responsible to the **Lok Sabha**.

742. Cabinet: The smaller, core group of senior ministers that takes major government decisions.

743. Important: Cabinet and Council of Ministers are not the same thing.

744. Cabinet: A part of the Council of Ministers.

745. Council of Ministers: A wider body containing ministers of different ranks.

TYPES OF UNION MINISTERS

746. Three traditional categories of Ministers:

1. **Cabinet Ministers**
2. **Ministers of State**
3. **Deputy Ministers**

747. Cabinet Minister: Senior minister heading an important department and normally a member of the Cabinet.

748. Minister of State: May have independent charge of a department or assist a Cabinet Minister.

749. Independent Charge: A Minister of State independently manages a department without a Cabinet Minister above them for that department.

750. Deputy Minister: A junior minister assisting a Cabinet Minister; this category is not commonly used in the present Union Council of Ministers.

CABINET vs COUNCIL OF MINISTERS

751. Council of Ministers: Larger body.

752. Cabinet: Smaller body.

753. Cabinet: Includes only senior ministers.

754. Council of Ministers: Includes ministers of different ranks.

755. Cabinet: Takes major policy decisions.

756. Council of Ministers: Provides the wider constitutional framework for aid and advice to the President.

757. Constitutional Recognition: The Constitution specifically uses the term **"Council of Ministers"**; the Cabinet is defined in **Article 352**.

758. Article 352: Defines Cabinet as the body consisting of the Prime Minister and other ministers of Cabinet rank.

759. Cabinet's Importance: The Cabinet is the central decision-making body of the parliamentary executive.

APPOINTMENT OF MINISTERS

760. Appointment: The President appoints Union Ministers on the advice of the Prime Minister.

761. Prime Minister: Chooses the persons who will become ministers.

762. President: Formally appoints them.

763. Oath: Ministers take the oath of office and secrecy before the President.

764. Article 75(4): Provides for oath of office and secrecy.

765. Oath: Based on the **Third Schedule** of the Constitution.

MEMBERSHIP OF PARLIAMENT

766. Minister: A person who is not a member of Parliament can become a minister.

767. Six-Month Rule: Such a minister must become a member of either House of Parliament within **6 months**.

768. Failure: If the person does not become a member within six months, they cease to be a minister.

769. Rajya Sabha Minister: A minister can belong to Rajya Sabha and can hold a Union ministerial position.

TENURE OF MINISTERS

770. Pleasure of President: Ministers hold office during the pleasure of the President.

771. Practical Meaning: The President normally acts on the advice of the Prime Minister.

772. Prime Minister's Role: The Prime Minister can require a minister to resign.

773. Removal: If a minister refuses to resign, the Prime Minister can advise the President to remove the minister.

COLLECTIVE RESPONSIBILITY

774. Article 75(3): The Council of Ministers is collectively responsible to the Lok Sabha.

775. Collective Responsibility: Ministers act as one team and share responsibility for government decisions.

776. Main Principle: If the government loses the confidence of the Lok Sabha, the entire Council of Ministers normally has to resign.

777. Cabinet Solidarity: Ministers are expected to publicly support Cabinet decisions.

778. Cabinet Solidarity: A minister who cannot support an important Cabinet decision is expected to resign.

INDIVIDUAL RESPONSIBILITY

779. Individual Responsibility: Each minister is responsible for the work of their department.

780. Ministerial Accountability: Ministers must answer to Parliament for the functioning of their departments.

781. Important: Individual responsibility works alongside collective responsibility.

SIZE OF COUNCIL OF MINISTERS

782. 91st Constitutional Amendment Act, 2003: Introduced a constitutional limit on the size of the Council of Ministers.

783. Union Limit: Total number of Union Ministers, including the Prime Minister, cannot exceed **15% of the total strength of the Lok Sabha**.

784. Minimum Number: The Constitution provides that the Council of Ministers at the Union level shall include the Prime Minister and other ministers; the 15% provision is a maximum limit.

785. Anti-Defection Connection: The 91st Amendment also strengthened provisions related to disqualification on grounds of defection.

786. Defection: Changing political allegiance in a way covered by the anti-defection law.

CABINET MEETINGS

787. Cabinet Meeting: Meeting of Cabinet Ministers to discuss and decide major government matters.

788. Chairperson: Prime Minister.

789. Cabinet Decisions: Major decisions regarding government policy, administration, legislation and national issues.

790. Cabinet Secretariat: Provides secretarial support and coordination for Cabinet and its committees.

791. Cabinet Secretariat: Works under the Prime Minister.

CABINET COMMITTEES

792. Cabinet Committees: Smaller groups of ministers created to examine specific areas and assist Cabinet decision-making.

793. Nature: Some Cabinet Committees are standing (continuing) while others may be created for specific purposes.

794. Standing Committee: A committee that continues for an extended period.

795. Ad Hoc Committee: A temporary committee created for a particular purpose.

796. Important: Cabinet Committees are **not constitutional bodies**.

797. Creation: They are generally created according to the **Transaction of Business Rules** of the Government of India.

IMPORTANT CABINET COMMITTEES

798. Cabinet Committee on Security (CCS): Deals with important matters relating to national security and defence.

799. Cabinet Committee on Economic Affairs (CCEA): Deals with major economic policy and related matters.

800. Cabinet Committee on Political Affairs: Deals with important political and policy matters.

801. Cabinet Committee on Investment and Growth: Deals with matters concerning investment and growth, as constituted by the government.

802. Important: The number and composition of Cabinet Committees can change according to the decisions of the government.

CABINET SECRETARIAT

803. Cabinet Secretariat: Provides administrative support to the Cabinet and coordinates among ministries.

804. Cabinet Secretary: The administrative head of the Cabinet Secretariat.

805. Cabinet Secretary: Usually the senior-most civil servant of the Government of India.

806. Cabinet Secretary: Serves as Secretary to the Cabinet and helps coordinate government administration.

807. Coordination: Bringing different departments together so that government work functions smoothly.

PRIME MINISTER AND CABINET

808. Prime Minister: Head of the Council of Ministers.

809. Prime Minister: Chairperson of the Cabinet.

810. Prime Minister: Decides the allocation and reshuffling of portfolios.

811. Portfolio: Department or area of government responsibility given to a minister.

812. Prime Minister: Coordinates the work of different ministries.

813. Prime Minister: Acts as the main link between the President and Council of Ministers.

PRESIDENT AND COUNCIL OF MINISTERS

814. Article 74: President acts with the aid and advice of the Council of Ministers headed by the Prime Minister.

815. Reconsideration: The President may require the Council of Ministers to reconsider its advice once.

816. Binding Advice: After reconsideration, the President must act according to the advice tendered by the Council of Ministers.

817. Tendered: Formally given or presented.

IMPORTANT ARTICLES

818. Article 74: Council of Ministers to aid and advise President.

819. Article 75: Other provisions regarding Union Ministers.

820. Article 77: Conduct of business of Government of India.

821. Article 78: Duties of Prime Minister towards President.

822. Article 88: Rights of Ministers and Attorney General in Parliament.

823. Article 352: Constitutional definition of Cabinet in relation to National Emergency.

IMPORTANT TERMS

824. Cabinet: Core group of senior ministers.

825. Council of Ministers: Wider body of ministers.

826. Collective Responsibility: Joint responsibility to Lok Sabha.

827. Individual Responsibility: Responsibility of an individual minister for their department.

828. Portfolio: Department assigned to a minister.

829. Cabinet Solidarity: Ministers collectively support Cabinet decisions.

830. Cabinet Committee: Smaller ministerial group dealing with specific subjects.

831. Cabinet Secretariat: Administrative coordination body supporting Cabinet work.

832. Cabinet Secretary: Head of Cabinet Secretariat.

833. Minister of State: Minister who may have independent charge or assist a Cabinet Minister.

834. Independent Charge: Direct responsibility for a department without a Cabinet Minister above that department.

QUICK REVISION

835. Head of Council of Ministers → Prime Minister.

836. Constitutional Head → President.

837. Council of Ministers → Article 74.

838. Ministers → Article 75.

839. Collective Responsibility → Lok Sabha.

840. Maximum Union Ministers → 15% of Lok Sabha strength.

841. 15% Limit → 91st Amendment, 2003.

842. Cabinet → Smaller core group within Council of Ministers.

843. Cabinet Chairperson → Prime Minister.

844. Cabinet Committees → Not constitutional bodies.

845. Cabinet Secretariat → Coordinates Cabinet work and inter-ministerial coordination.

846. Six-Month Rule → Non-member minister must become a member of Parliament within 6 months.

847. Oath of Ministers → Third Schedule.

K. ATTORNEY GENERAL OF INDIA

BASIC INFORMATION

848. Attorney General of India (AGI): The highest law officer (top legal adviser) of the Government of India.

849. Article: Article 76 deals with the Attorney General of India.

850. Constitutional Position: The Attorney General is a **constitutional office**.

851. Appointed By: The **President of India**.

852. Qualification: Must be qualified to be appointed as a **Judge of the Supreme Court**.

853. Qualification for Supreme Court Judge: A person must be an Indian citizen and satisfy the constitutional requirements relating to judicial experience, legal practice or distinguished legal ability.

854. Term: The Constitution does **not fix a specific term**.

855. Removal: The Attorney General holds office during the **pleasure of the President**.

856. Resignation: May resign by submitting resignation to the President.

DUTIES OF ATTORNEY GENERAL

857. Legal Advice: Gives legal advice to the Government of India on matters referred by the President.

858. Legal Matters: Performs other legal duties assigned by the President.

859. Constitution and Law: Performs functions conferred by the Constitution or other law.

860. Representation: Represents the Government of India in important cases before the Supreme Court and other courts when required.

861. Advocate: A lawyer who represents a person or organisation before a court.

RIGHTS IN PARLIAMENT

862. Article 88: Attorney General has the right to speak and participate in the proceedings of both Houses of Parliament and their committees of which they are named a member.

863. Voting Right: Attorney General **cannot vote** in Parliament because the office does not make the person a member of Parliament.

864. Parliamentary Participation: Can take part in debates and proceedings without being a member of either House.

IMPORTANT FACTS

865. First Attorney General of India: M. C. Setalvad.

866. Highest Law Officer of India: Attorney General.

867. Constitutional Article: Article 76.

868. Appointing Authority: President.

869. Fixed Term: No fixed constitutional term.

870. Removal: Pleasure of President.

871. Parliament: Can speak and participate but cannot vote.

872. Government Lawyer: Main legal adviser and representative of the Union Government.

SOLICITOR GENERAL OF INDIA

873. Solicitor General of India: The second-highest law officer of India.

874. Important Difference: The Solicitor General is **not a constitutional office**.

875. Additional Solicitors General: Assist the Attorney General and Solicitor General in representing the Union Government.

876. Law Officers: Attorney General, Solicitor General and Additional Solicitors General are important law officers of the Union Government.

ATTORNEY GENERAL vs SOLICITOR GENERAL

Feature	Attorney General	Solicitor General
Position	Highest Law Officer	Second-highest Law Officer
Constitutional Office	Yes	No
Article	76	No specific constitutional Article
Appointed By	President	Central Government
Parliament	Can participate, no vote	No constitutional right under Article 88
Main Role	Chief legal adviser to Union	Assists in legal representation of Union

---

PART 2 — INDIAN POLITY

L. COMPTROLLER AND AUDITOR GENERAL OF INDIA (CAG)

BASIC INFORMATION

877. CAG: Comptroller and Auditor General of India.

878. Simple Meaning: The constitutional authority that audits (checks) government accounts and public money.

879. Constitutional Articles: Articles 148–151.

880. Article 148: Deals with the CAG of India.

881. CAG: An important institution for financial accountability (checking how public money is used).

882. Appointed By: President of India.

883. Oath: Takes oath before the President or a person appointed by the President.

QUALIFICATION AND TERM

884. Qualification: The Constitution does not prescribe a specific educational or professional qualification for becoming CAG.

885. Term: 6 years or until attaining the age of **65 years**, whichever is earlier.

886. Resignation: Resigns by writing to the President.

887. Removal: Removed in a manner similar to a **Supreme Court Judge**.

888. Independence: Strong constitutional safeguards are provided to protect the independence of the CAG.

MAIN FUNCTIONS

889. Audit: Examines government accounts and expenditure.

890. Audit of Union Government: Audits the accounts of the Union Government.

891. Audit of State Governments: Audits the accounts of State Governments.

892. Public Money: Checks whether public money has been spent according to law and rules.

893. Public Sector: Audits bodies and authorities where the law provides for CAG audit.

894. Government Companies: CAG has audit responsibilities relating to government companies according to applicable law.

895. Grants: Audits expenditure from grants and loans in accordance with legal provisions.

REPORTS OF CAG

896. CAG Reports: The CAG submits audit reports to the **President** for Union matters.

897. State Reports: CAG submits reports relating to State accounts to the **Governor**.

898. Parliament: President lays CAG reports before Parliament.

899. State Legislature: Governor lays State-related CAG reports before the State Legislature.

900. Public Accounts Committee (PAC): Examines CAG reports relating to public expenditure.

901. PAC: Parliamentary committee that examines whether government money was spent properly and according to Parliament's authorisation.

CAG AND FINANCIAL ACCOUNTABILITY

902. Financial Accountability: Government must be answerable for how public money is collected and spent.

903. CAG's Role: Provides independent audit information to legislatures.

904. Important: CAG does not itself punish officials for financial irregularities; its reports can lead to legislative examination and further action by competent authorities.

905. Irregularity: Something not done according to rules or law.

IMPORTANT ARTICLES

906. Article 148: CAG of India.

907. Article 149: Duties and powers of CAG.

908. Article 150: Form of accounts of Union and States.

909. Article 151: Audit reports of CAG.

CAG vs ATTORNEY GENERAL

Feature	Attorney General	CAG
Main Role	Legal adviser	Government auditor
Article	76	148–151
Appointed By	President	President
Constitutional Office	Yes	Yes
Main Area	Law	Public finance
Parliament	Can participate, no vote	Reports are laid before Parliament
Independence	Constitutional position	Strong constitutional safeguards

---

QUICK REVISION

910. Highest Law Officer → Attorney General.

911. Attorney General → Article 76.

912. First Attorney General → M. C. Setalvad.

913. CAG → Comptroller and Auditor General.

914. CAG Articles → 148–151.

915. CAG Appointed By → President.

916. CAG Term → 6 years or age 65, whichever earlier.

917. CAG Removal → Same manner and grounds as Supreme Court Judge.

918. CAG Reports → President/Governor → Parliament/State Legislature.

919. PAC → Examines CAG reports.

920. CAG's Main Purpose → Financial accountability and audit of public money.

M. PARLIAMENT OF INDIA

BASIC INFORMATION

921. Parliament of India: The supreme law-making body of the Union Government.

922. Constitutional Provision: Article 79 provides for Parliament.

923. Parliament Consists Of:

- **President of India**
- **Rajya Sabha (Council of States)**
- **Lok Sabha (House of the People)**

924. Bicameral Legislature: A legislature having **two Houses**.

925. Bicameral: Two-House system.

926. Upper House: Rajya Sabha.

927. Lower House: Lok Sabha.

928. Important: The President is a part of Parliament but is **not a member of either House**.

RAJYA SABHA

929. Rajya Sabha: The **Council of States** and the Upper House of Parliament.

930. Article 80: Deals with the composition of Rajya Sabha.

931. Maximum Constitutional Strength: 250 members — 12 nominated by the President and not more than 238 representatives of States and Union Territories.

932. Nominated Members: The President nominates **12 members** with special knowledge or practical experience in **literature, science, art and social service**.

933. Elected Members: Representatives of States are elected by the **elected members of State Legislative Assemblies**.

934. Election Method: Proportional representation by means of the Single Transferable Vote (STV).

935. Permanent House: Rajya Sabha is **not subject to dissolution**.

936. Retirement: Approximately **one-third of its members retire every two years**.

937. Term of Member: 6 years.

938. Dissolution: Rajya Sabha cannot be dissolved.

939. Chairman: The **Vice-President of India** is the ex-officio Chairman.

940. Deputy Chairman: Elected by the members of Rajya Sabha.

LOK SABHA

941. Lok Sabha: The **House of the People** and the Lower House of Parliament.

942. Article 81: Deals with the composition of Lok Sabha.

943. Election: Members are directly elected by the people from territorial constituencies.

944. Direct Election: People directly vote for their representatives.

945. Territorial Constituency: A defined geographical area from which a representative is elected.

946. Normal Term: 5 years, unless dissolved earlier.

947. Dissolution: Lok Sabha can be dissolved before completion of its normal term.

948. Minimum Age: 25 years for Lok Sabha membership.

949. Presiding Officer: Speaker of Lok Sabha.

950. Deputy Speaker: Elected by Lok Sabha.

QUALIFICATIONS FOR MEMBERS OF PARLIAMENT

951. Article 84: Provides qualifications for membership of Parliament.

952. Basic Qualifications: A person must:

- Be a **citizen of India**.
- Take the required oath or affirmation.
- Be at least **25 years** for Lok Sabha.
- Be at least **30 years** for Rajya Sabha.
- Possess other qualifications prescribed by Parliament by law.

953. Representation of the People Act, 1951: Provides important statutory provisions regarding qualifications and disqualifications for Parliament and State Legislatures.

SESSIONS OF PARLIAMENT

954. Article 85: Deals with sessions of Parliament, prorogation and dissolution.

955. Session: A period during which Parliament meets and conducts its business.

956. Summoning: Calling Parliament to meet.

957. Prorogation: Ending a session of Parliament.

958. Dissolution: Ending the life of Lok Sabha.

959. Maximum Gap: The Constitution provides that **six months must not intervene between two sessions** of Parliament.

960. Important: Rajya Sabha is not dissolved, but its sessions can be prorogued.

PRESIDENT AND PARLIAMENT

961. Article 85: President summons and prorogues Parliament and can dissolve Lok Sabha.

962. Article 86: President can address either House or both Houses together and send messages to Houses.

963. Article 87: Provides for the President's special address.

964. President's Special Address: At the beginning of the first session after each general election to Lok Sabha and at the beginning of the first session of each year.

SPEAKER OF LOK SABHA

965. Speaker: Presiding officer (person who conducts proceedings) of Lok Sabha.

966. Article 93: Provides for Speaker and Deputy Speaker of Lok Sabha.

967. Election: Speaker is elected by Lok Sabha from among its members.

968. Main Function: Conducts and regulates proceedings of Lok Sabha.

969. Maintains Order: Ensures parliamentary rules are followed.

970. Money Bill: Speaker's decision on whether a Bill is a **Money Bill** is constitutionally significant.

971. Casting Vote: Speaker normally does not vote in the first instance but can exercise a **casting vote** in case of equality of votes.

972. Casting Vote: Deciding vote used when votes are equally divided.

973. Removal: Speaker can be removed by a resolution of Lok Sabha passed by a majority of all the then members of the House, subject to the constitutional procedure.

974. Notice: A **14-day notice** is required for such a resolution.

CHAIRMAN OF RAJYA SABHA

975. Chairman: Vice-President of India.

976. Article 89: Provides for the Chairman and Deputy Chairman of Rajya Sabha.

977. Main Function: Presides over Rajya Sabha proceedings.

978. Casting Vote: The Chairman has a casting vote in case of equality of votes.

979. Removal of Vice-President: When a resolution for removal of the Vice-President is under consideration, the Chairman does not preside over that sitting.

POWERS OF PARLIAMENT

980. Legislative Power: Parliament makes laws on subjects within its constitutional jurisdiction.

981. Financial Power: Parliament controls taxation and government expenditure through constitutional procedures.

982. Deliberative Power: Members discuss national issues and government policies.

983. Accountability: Parliament holds the Council of Ministers accountable.

984. Constitutional Amendment: Parliament can amend the Constitution according to **Article 368**, subject to constitutional limitations laid down by the Supreme Court.

985. Electoral Functions: Parliament participates in certain constitutional elections, such as the election of the President and Vice-President through the prescribed electoral mechanisms.

TYPES OF BILLS

986. Bill: A proposed law introduced in Parliament.

987. Ordinary Bill: A Bill dealing with matters other than those specially classified as Money Bills or other special categories.

988. Money Bill: A Bill dealing exclusively with matters specified in **Article 110**.

989. Financial Bill: A Bill dealing with financial matters but not necessarily satisfying all the requirements of a Money Bill.

990. Constitutional Amendment Bill: A Bill introduced to amend the Constitution under **Article 368**.

MONEY BILL

991. Article 110: Defines a Money Bill.

992. Introduction: A Money Bill can be introduced **only in Lok Sabha**.

993. Recommendation: Prior recommendation of the **President** is required.

994. Rajya Sabha: Cannot reject or amend a Money Bill.

995. Rajya Sabha's Role: Can make recommendations and must return the Bill to Lok Sabha within **14 days**.

996. Lok Sabha: May accept or reject the recommendations of Rajya Sabha.

997. Speaker: Certifies whether a Bill is a Money Bill.

998. Money Bill: There is no provision for a joint sitting to resolve disagreement on a Money Bill.

JOINT SITTING

999. Joint Sitting: A meeting of both Houses together to resolve certain disagreements over an ordinary Bill.

1000. Article 108: Provides for joint sitting of Parliament.

1001. Joint Sitting Called By: President.

1002. Presiding Officer: Speaker of Lok Sabha normally presides.

1003. When Used: In certain cases of disagreement between Lok Sabha and Rajya Sabha over an ordinary Bill.

1004. Joint Sitting Not Used For: Money Bills and Constitutional Amendment Bills.

IMPORTANT PARLIAMENTARY TERMS

1005. Quorum: Minimum number of members required to conduct the business of a House.

1006. Quorum of Each House: One-tenth of the total number of members of that House.

1007. Adjournment: Suspending a sitting of the House for a specified period.

1008. Adjournment Sine Die: Ending a sitting without fixing a date for the next sitting.

1009. Prorogation: Ending a session by the President.

1010. Dissolution: Ending the existence of Lok Sabha.

1011. Question Hour: Period during which members ask questions to ministers.

1012. Zero Hour: Period after Question Hour when members raise matters of public importance; it is a parliamentary practice and is **not specifically mentioned in the Constitution**.

1013. Parliamentary Question: A question asked by a member to obtain information or hold the government accountable.

IMPORTANT ARTICLES — PARLIAMENT

1014. Article 79: Constitution of Parliament.

1015. Article 80: Composition of Rajya Sabha.

1016. Article 81: Composition of Lok Sabha.

1017. Article 82: Readjustment after census.

1018. Article 83: Duration of Houses of Parliament.

1019. Article 84: Qualifications for membership.

1020. Article 85: Sessions, prorogation and dissolution.

1021. Article 86: President's right to address and send messages.

1022. Article 87: Special address by President.

1023. Article 88: Rights of Ministers and Attorney General in Houses.

1024. Article 89: Chairman and Deputy Chairman of Rajya Sabha.

1025. Article 93: Speaker and Deputy Speaker of Lok Sabha.

1026. Article 100: Voting and quorum.

1027. Article 105: Parliamentary privileges.

1028. Article 108: Joint sitting.

1029. Article 109: Special procedure for Money Bills.

1030. Article 110: Definition of Money Bill.

1031. Article 111: President's assent to Bills.

1032. Article 112: Annual Financial Statement (Union Budget).

1033. Article 123: President's ordinance-making power.

1034. Article 368: Constitutional amendment.

QUICK REVISION

1035. Parliament → President + Rajya Sabha + Lok Sabha.

1036. Parliament Article → 79.

1037. Upper House → Rajya Sabha.

1038. Lower House → Lok Sabha.

1039. Rajya Sabha → Permanent House.

1040. Rajya Sabha Member Term → 6 years.

1041. One-third Rajya Sabha Members → Retire every 2 years.

1042. Lok Sabha Normal Term → 5 years.

1043. Lok Sabha Minimum Age → 25 years.

1044. Rajya Sabha Minimum Age → 30 years.

1045. Lok Sabha Presiding Officer → Speaker.

1046. Rajya Sabha Presiding Officer → Vice-President as Chairman.

1047. Money Bill → Article 110.

1048. Money Bill Introduced → Only Lok Sabha.

1049. Money Bill Return by Rajya Sabha → 14 days.

1050. Joint Sitting → Article 108.

1051. Constitutional Amendment → Article 368.

1052. Parliamentary Privileges → Article 105.

N. PARLIAMENTARY FINANCIAL PROCEDURE — UNION BUDGET

UNION BUDGET

1053. Union Budget: The government's estimated **receipts (income)** and **expenditure (spending)** for a financial year.

1054. Constitutional Name: Annual Financial Statement (AFS).

1055. Article 112: Provides for the Annual Financial Statement.

1056. Financial Year: The financial year of the Government of India runs from **1 April to 31 March**.

1057. Annual Financial Statement: Shows the estimated receipts and expenditure of the Government of India for the financial year.

1058. Budget Presentation: The Union Budget is presented in Parliament by the **Finance Minister** on behalf of the Union Government.

THREE IMPORTANT FUNDS

1059. Consolidated Fund of India: The main account of the Government of India into which most government revenues, loans raised and loan recoveries are credited.

1060. Consolidated: Combined into one main fund.

1061. Article 266: Deals with the Consolidated Fund of India and Public Account of India.

1062. No Money Withdrawal: Money cannot normally be withdrawn from the Consolidated Fund except under **appropriation made by law**.

1063. Appropriation: Legal authority to withdraw money from a government fund for specified purposes.

1064. Public Account of India: Money held by the Government of India that belongs to or is payable to others, such as certain provident funds and deposits.

1065. Contingency Fund of India: Fund used for urgent and unforeseen expenditure.

1066. Contingency: An unexpected situation.

1067. Article 267: Provides for the Contingency Fund of India.

1068. Contingency Fund: Placed at the disposal of the **President** to meet unforeseen expenditure, subject to constitutional and legal procedures.

RECEIPTS

1069. Revenue Receipts: Government receipts that do not create a liability or reduce government assets.

1070. Tax Revenue: Money received through taxes.

1071. Non-Tax Revenue: Income from sources other than taxes, such as fees, dividends, interest and certain receipts.

1072. Capital Receipts: Receipts that create liabilities or reduce assets.

1073. Borrowings: Money borrowed by the government.

1074. Expenditure: Money spent by the government.

1075. Revenue Expenditure: Regular expenditure that generally does not create a physical asset or reduce a liability.

1076. Capital Expenditure: Expenditure that generally creates assets or reduces liabilities.

CHARGED AND VOTED EXPENDITURE

1077. Charged Expenditure: Expenditure charged on the Consolidated Fund of India and **not submitted to the vote of Parliament**.

1078. Important: Charged expenditure can still be **discussed in Parliament**.

1079. Voted Expenditure: Expenditure that requires approval through voting in the Lok Sabha.

1080. Article 113: Deals with the procedure regarding estimates and demands for grants.

1081. Charged Expenditure Examples: Salaries and allowances of the President, certain constitutional authorities and other expenditure specified by the Constitution.

DEMANDS FOR GRANTS

1082. Demand for Grant: A proposal seeking Lok Sabha's approval for expenditure from the Consolidated Fund.

1083. Article 113: Deals with Demands for Grants.

1084. Important: Demands for Grants are presented to **Lok Sabha**.

1085. Rajya Sabha: Does not vote on Demands for Grants.

1086. President's Recommendation: No Demand for Grant can be made except on the recommendation of the President.

1087. Lok Sabha: Can approve, reject or reduce a Demand for Grant.

CUT MOTIONS

1088. Cut Motion: A parliamentary device through which a member proposes reduction in a Demand for Grant.

1089. Cut: Proposed reduction in the amount requested by the government.

1090. Policy Cut: Demand is reduced to **Re. 1** to express disapproval of the government's policy.

1091. Economy Cut: Demand is reduced by a specified amount to suggest that expenditure should be reduced.

1092. Token Cut: Demand is reduced by **₹100** to highlight a specific grievance or problem.

1093. Grievance: Complaint or problem that a member wants the government to address.

APPROPRIATION BILL

1094. Appropriation Bill: Bill authorising withdrawal of money from the Consolidated Fund of India.

1095. Article 114: Deals with Appropriation Bills.

1096. Timing: It is introduced after the Lok Sabha has voted on the relevant Demands for Grants.

1097. Purpose: Gives legal authority for government expenditure.

1098. Important: Money cannot normally be withdrawn from the Consolidated Fund without appropriation authorised by law.

FINANCE BILL

1099. Finance Bill: A Bill containing proposals relating to taxation and other financial matters, generally to implement the government's financial proposals.

1100. Finance Bill vs Money Bill: A Finance Bill may be a Money Bill or another type of financial Bill depending on its contents and constitutional classification.

1101. Important: Every Money Bill is a financial Bill in the broad sense, but every financial Bill is not a Money Bill.

SUPPLEMENTARY, ADDITIONAL AND EXCESS GRANTS

1102. Supplementary Grant: Required when the amount already authorised for a service is insufficient.

1103. Additional Grant: Required for a new service not included in the original Annual Financial Statement.

1104. Excess Grant: Arises when expenditure has already exceeded the amount granted for a particular service.

1105. Article 115: Deals with supplementary, additional and excess grants.

VOTE ON ACCOUNT

1106. Vote on Account: Permission given by Lok Sabha to the government to withdraw money for part of the financial year before the full budget process is completed.

1107. Article 116: Provides for Vote on Account.

1108. Main Purpose: Allows the government to continue essential expenditure until the regular appropriation process is completed.

VOTE OF CREDIT

1109. Vote of Credit: A grant for an unexpected demand on India's resources when the details cannot ordinarily be given in the Annual Financial Statement.

1110. Article 116: Provides for Vote of Credit.

1111. Example: A major emergency requiring expenditure that cannot be estimated in normal detail.

EXCEPTIONAL GRANT

1112. Exceptional Grant: A grant that forms **no part of the current service of any financial year**.

1113. Article 116: Provides for Exceptional Grants.

PRESIDENT'S ASSENT TO BILLS

1114. Article 111: Deals with the President's assent to Bills.

1115. Assent: Formal approval.

1116. After Parliament Passes a Bill: It is presented to the President.

1117. President's Options: The President may give assent or withhold assent.

1118. Ordinary Bill: The President may return an ordinary Bill for reconsideration.

1119. Reconsideration: Parliament considers the Bill again.

1120. If Parliament Passes It Again: If the Bill is passed again, with or without amendments, the President cannot withhold assent.

1121. Money Bill: The President cannot return a Money Bill for reconsideration under Article 111.

IMPORTANT ARTICLES — FINANCIAL MATTERS

1122. Article 112: Annual Financial Statement.

1123. Article 113: Demands for Grants.

1124. Article 114: Appropriation Bills.

1125. Article 115: Supplementary, additional and excess grants.

1126. Article 116: Vote on Account, Vote of Credit and Exceptional Grants.

1127. Article 117: Special provisions relating to Financial Bills.

1128. Article 266: Consolidated Fund and Public Account.

1129. Article 267: Contingency Fund.

QUICK REVISION

1130. Constitutional Name of Budget → Annual Financial Statement.

1131. Budget Article → 112.

1132. Demands for Grants → Article 113.

1133. Appropriation Bill → Article 114.

1134. Supplementary/Additional/Excess Grants → Article 115.

1135. Vote on Account → Article 116.

1136. Vote of Credit → Article 116.

1137. Exceptional Grant → Article 116.

1138. Financial Bills → Article 117.

1139. Consolidated Fund → Article 266.

1140. Contingency Fund → Article 267.

1141. Demands for Grants → Lok Sabha.

1142. Charged Expenditure → Not voted by Parliament, but can be discussed.

1143. Appropriation → Legal authority to withdraw money from Consolidated Fund.

1144. Vote on Account → Temporary spending authority before completion of full budget procedure.

O. PARLIAMENTARY COMMITTEES

BASIC INFORMATION

1145. Parliamentary Committee: A committee (small group of Members of Parliament) created to examine specific matters in greater detail.

1146. Why Committees Are Needed: Parliament has a large amount of legislative, financial and administrative work. Committees examine matters in detail and help Parliament perform its functions effectively.

1147. Parliamentary Committees: Can be broadly divided into **Standing Committees** and **Ad Hoc Committees**.

1148. Standing Committee: A permanent or regularly continuing committee.

1149. Ad Hoc Committee: A temporary committee created for a specific purpose and dissolved after completing its work.

1150. Constitutional Status: Parliamentary committees are mainly established under the Constitution, laws, rules of procedure or resolutions of Parliament, depending on the committee.

FINANCIAL COMMITTEES

1151. Financial Committees: Committees that examine government finances, expenditure and use of public money.

1152. Three Important Financial Committees:

1. Public Accounts Committee
2. Estimates Committee
3. Committee on Public Undertakings

1. PUBLIC ACCOUNTS COMMITTEE

1153. Public Accounts Committee (PAC): Examines government expenditure and financial accounts, especially with reference to the reports of the **Comptroller and Auditor General (CAG)**.

1154. Main Purpose: To check whether money granted by Parliament was spent properly and for the authorised purpose.

1155. PAC: Is a **Parliamentary Committee**.

1156. Members: Maximum **22 members** — 15 from Lok Sabha and 7 from Rajya Sabha.

1157. Election: Members are elected by Parliament every year through **proportional representation by means of the single transferable vote**.

1158. Minister: A Minister cannot be a member of PAC.

1159. Term: One year.

1160. Chairperson: Appointed by the Speaker of Lok Sabha.

1161. Important Convention: Since 1967, the chairperson has conventionally been from the **Opposition**, though this is not a constitutional requirement.

1162. CAG: CAG reports are an important basis for the examination conducted by PAC.

FUNCTIONS OF PAC

1163. PAC Examines: Appropriation Accounts and Finance Accounts of the Union Government.

1164. Appropriation Accounts: Show how money authorised by Parliament was actually spent.

1165. Finance Accounts: Present the government's financial transactions and position.

1166. PAC Checks: Whether expenditure was:

- Legally authorised.
- Within the sanctioned limits.
- Used for the intended purpose.

1167. Financial Irregularity: Spending or handling public money in a way that does not follow rules or legal requirements.

1168. PAC: Helps ensure **financial accountability (responsibility for proper use of public money)**.

---

2. ESTIMATES COMMITTEE

1169. Estimates Committee: Examines estimates of government expenditure.

1170. Members: 30 members.

1171. House: Members are elected **only from Lok Sabha**.

1172. Rajya Sabha: Has no representation in the Estimates Committee.

1173. Election: Elected every year through proportional representation by means of the single transferable vote.

1174. Minister: A Minister cannot be a member.

1175. Term: One year.

1176. Chairperson: Appointed by the Speaker of Lok Sabha.

FUNCTIONS OF ESTIMATES COMMITTEE

1177. Examines: Whether money is being spent economically and efficiently.

1178. Economy: Avoiding unnecessary expenditure.

1179. Efficiency: Achieving maximum useful results with available resources.

1180. Suggestions: Suggests alternative policies to bring about economy and efficiency in administration.

1181. Organisation: Examines whether money is well laid out within the limits of policy implied in the estimates.

1182. Important: It deals mainly with **estimated expenditure**, while PAC mainly examines **expenditure already incurred**.

3. COMMITTEE ON PUBLIC UNDERTAKINGS

1183. Committee on Public Undertakings (COPU): Examines the working and financial performance of selected public sector undertakings.

1184. Public Undertaking: Government-owned or government-controlled enterprise.

1185. Members: Maximum **22 members** — 15 from Lok Sabha and 7 from Rajya Sabha.

1186. Term: One year.

1187. Minister: A Minister cannot be a member.

1188. Chairperson: Appointed by the Speaker of Lok Sabha.

1189. Functions: Examines:

- Reports and accounts of public undertakings.
- CAG reports relating to public undertakings.
- Whether public undertakings are managed efficiently and according to sound business principles.

1190. Important: COPU generally does not examine matters of major government policy or matters for which a special statutory procedure exists.

COMPARISON OF THREE FINANCIAL COMMITTEES

Committee	Members	House	Main Work
PAC	22	Both Houses	Examines expenditure already incurred and CAG reports
Estimates Committee	30	Lok Sabha only	Examines estimates and economy in expenditure
COPU	22	Both Houses	Examines public sector undertakings

1191. PAC: Looks mainly at **past expenditure**.

1192. Estimates Committee: Looks mainly at **future/estimated expenditure**.

1193. COPU: Looks mainly at **public undertakings**.

DEPARTMENT-RELATED STANDING COMMITTEES

1194. Department-Related Standing Committees (DRSCs): Parliamentary committees that examine the work of different Union Government ministries and departments.

1195. Number: There are **24 Department-Related Standing Committees**.

1196. Members: Each committee generally has **31 members** — 21 from Lok Sabha and 10 from Rajya Sabha.

1197. Ministers: Ministers are not eligible to be members of these committees.

1198. Term: Generally **one year**.

1199. Main Functions:

- Examine Demands for Grants of ministries.
- Examine Bills referred to them.
- Examine annual reports of ministries.
- Consider national policy documents referred to them.

1200. Important: These committees help Parliament examine government departments in detail.

COMMITTEE ON PRIVILEGES

1201. Privileges Committee: Examines cases involving breach of parliamentary privileges.

1202. Parliamentary Privilege: Special rights and protections given to Parliament and its members so that they can perform their functions effectively.

1203. Breach of Privilege: Violation of a parliamentary privilege.

1204. Committee: Exists separately in Lok Sabha and Rajya Sabha.

1205. Main Function: Investigates alleged violations of parliamentary privileges.

ETHICS COMMITTEE

1206. Ethics Committee: Examines matters relating to ethical conduct of Members of Parliament.

1207. Ethics: Principles of proper and responsible behaviour.

1208. Main Purpose: To examine complaints and matters concerning the ethical conduct of members according to the rules and procedures of the respective House.

1209. Important: Lok Sabha and Rajya Sabha have their respective Ethics Committees.

BUSINESS ADVISORY COMMITTEE

1210. Business Advisory Committee (BAC): Recommends allocation of time for government and other parliamentary business.

1211. Main Purpose: Helps organise the business of the House.

1212. Chairperson: In Lok Sabha, the Speaker is the ex-officio Chairperson.

1213. Rajya Sabha: The Chairman is the ex-officio Chairperson of its Business Advisory Committee.

RULES COMMITTEE

1214. Rules Committee: Considers matters relating to the rules of procedure and conduct of business of the House.

1215. Main Purpose: Recommends changes or additions to parliamentary rules when required.

COMMITTEE ON GOVERNMENT ASSURANCES

1216. Committee on Government Assurances: Examines assurances, promises and undertakings given by ministers on the floor of the House.

1217. Government Assurance: A commitment made by a minister in Parliament to take a particular action.

1218. Main Purpose: Checks whether the government has fulfilled such assurances.

COMMITTEE ON SUBORDINATE LEGISLATION

1219. Subordinate Legislation: Rules, regulations, orders and bye-laws made by authorities under powers delegated by Parliament.

1220. Committee on Subordinate Legislation: Examines whether such delegated legislation is properly made and within the powers granted by Parliament.

1221. Delegated Legislation: Law-making power given by Parliament to the executive or another authority within defined limits.

COMMITTEE ON ABSENCE OF MEMBERS

1222. Committee on Absence of Members: Examines applications for leave of absence of members from sittings of the House.

1223. Leave of Absence: Official permission to remain absent from parliamentary sittings.

JOINT PARLIAMENTARY COMMITTEE

1224. Joint Parliamentary Committee (JPC): A temporary committee consisting of members from both Houses of Parliament.

1225. Purpose: Created to examine a specific matter in detail.

1226. Creation: May be constituted by a motion adopted by both Houses or under provisions of law, depending on the matter.

1227. Ad Hoc: A JPC is generally an ad hoc committee because it is created for a particular purpose.

1228. Dissolution: Normally ceases to exist after submitting its report or completing its assigned task.

COMMITTEE ON PETITIONS

1229. Petition: A formal request or complaint submitted to Parliament.

1230. Committee on Petitions: Examines petitions submitted to the House.

1231. Main Purpose: Provides a parliamentary mechanism for considering public grievances and matters raised through petitions.

IMPORTANT TERMS

1232. Committee: Small group of MPs examining a specific matter.

1233. Standing Committee: Continuing committee.

1234. Ad Hoc Committee: Temporary committee for a specific purpose.

1235. Financial Committee: Committee dealing with government finances.

1236. CAG: Constitutional auditor of public accounts.

1237. Public Undertaking: Government-owned or government-controlled enterprise.

1238. Accountability: Being responsible and answerable for actions.

1239. Audit: Examination of accounts and financial transactions.

1240. Delegated Legislation: Rules made by authorities under powers given by Parliament.

1241. Parliamentary Privilege: Special rights and protections of Parliament and its members.

MOST IMPORTANT EXAM FACTS

1242. Largest Financial Committee: Estimates Committee — **30 members**.

1243. PAC Strength: 22 members.

1244. COPU Strength: 22 members.

1245. PAC Composition: 15 Lok Sabha + 7 Rajya Sabha.

1246. COPU Composition: 15 Lok Sabha + 7 Rajya Sabha.

1247. Estimates Committee: Only Lok Sabha members.

1248. Ministers: Cannot be members of the three major financial committees.

1249. Normal Committee Term: One year for the major financial committees.

1250. PAC Main Source: CAG reports.

1251. Estimates Committee: Government expenditure estimates.

1252. COPU: Public sector undertakings.

1253. DRSCs: 24 committees.

1254. DRSC Membership: 31 members each.

1255. Parliamentary Committees: Important instruments of **legislative scrutiny (detailed examination by Parliament)**.

P. PARLIAMENTARY DEVICES, MOTIONS AND PROCEDURES

BASIC CONCEPT

1256. Parliamentary Procedure: The rules and methods through which Parliament conducts its business.

1257. Parliamentary Device: A method used by Members of Parliament to ask questions, raise issues, discuss government actions or seek decisions.

1258. Motion: A formal proposal made by a member for discussion or decision by the House.

1259. Parliamentary Debate: Discussion among members on a matter of public importance.

QUESTION HOUR

1260. Question Hour: The first hour of a parliamentary sitting normally allotted for questions by members to ministers.

1261. Main Purpose: To obtain information from the government and hold ministers accountable.

1262. Parliamentary Question: A question asked by a member to a minister regarding government policies, administration or public matters.

1263. Question Hour: An important instrument of **parliamentary control (checking the government through Parliament)**.

TYPES OF QUESTIONS

1264. Starred Question: A question for which the member desires an **oral answer**.

1265. Supplementary Question: A further question asked after the minister gives an answer to a starred question.

1266. Unstarred Question: A question answered **in writing**.

1267. Supplementary Question: Not allowed after an unstarred question because the answer is given in written form.

1268. Short Notice Question: A question relating to a matter of urgent public importance asked with notice shorter than the normal period.

ZERO HOUR

1269. Zero Hour: The period after Question Hour when members may raise matters of urgent public importance.

1270. Constitutional Status: Zero Hour is **not mentioned in the Constitution**.

1271. Rules: It developed as a parliamentary practice.

1272. Important: It is different from Question Hour.

MOTION

1273. Motion: A formal proposal placed before the House for discussion or decision.

1274. Substantive Motion: An independent motion dealing with an important matter.

1275. Substitute Motion: A motion proposed in place of the original motion.

1276. Subsidiary Motion: A motion dependent on another motion or parliamentary proceeding.

ADJOURNMENT MOTION

1277. Adjournment Motion: A motion to discuss a **definite matter of urgent public importance** by interrupting normal business.

1278. Adjournment: Suspension of the business of the House for a period.

1279. Main Purpose: To draw attention to an urgent matter and directly criticise or hold the government accountable.

1280. Important: It involves an element of **censure (strong criticism)** of the government.

1281. Permission: Requires the Speaker's consent in Lok Sabha.

1282. Rajya Sabha: The Adjournment Motion is **not available** in Rajya Sabha.

1283. Definite Matter: The issue must be specific and clearly identifiable.

NO-CONFIDENCE MOTION

1284. No-Confidence Motion: A motion expressing that the Lok Sabha no longer has confidence in the Council of Ministers.

1285. Main Target: The **entire Council of Ministers**.

1286. Constitutional Basis: The principle comes from **Article 75(3)** — collective responsibility to Lok Sabha.

1287. House: Can be moved only in **Lok Sabha**.

1288. Reason: The government must maintain the confidence of the Lok Sabha.

1289. If Passed: The Council of Ministers normally has to resign.

1290. Important: A No-Confidence Motion does **not require the member to state specific grounds**.

CONFIDENCE MOTION

1291. Confidence Motion: A motion through which the government seeks to demonstrate that it has the support of the Lok Sabha.

1292. Purpose: To prove majority support.

1293. Floor Test: Vote in the House used to determine whether the government has majority support.

1294. Floor: The legislative chamber where the strength of a government is tested.

CENSURE MOTION

1295. Censure Motion: A motion expressing strong disapproval of a specific government policy, action or failure.

1296. Target: Can be directed against the Council of Ministers, a particular minister or a specific policy/action.

1297. Grounds: Must state the reasons for the criticism.

1298. House: It is a parliamentary device of the Lok Sabha.

1299. Difference from No-Confidence: A Censure Motion focuses on a **specific policy or action**, while a No-Confidence Motion concerns the **confidence of the House in the entire Council of Ministers**.

DIFFERENCE — NO-CONFIDENCE vs CENSURE

No-Confidence Motion	Censure Motion
Tests confidence in entire Council	Criticises a specific policy/action
No specific grounds necessary	Specific grounds required
Lok Sabha	Lok Sabha
If passed, government normally resigns	Passing it does not automatically require resignation
Linked with collective responsibility	Expresses parliamentary disapproval

---

CALLING ATTENTION MOTION

1300. Calling Attention: A parliamentary device through which a member draws the attention of a minister to an urgent matter of public importance.

1301. Minister: Gives a statement on the matter.

1302. Supplementary Questions: Members may seek clarification according to parliamentary rules.

1303. Important: It is an Indian parliamentary innovation.

1304. Difference: It is not the same as an Adjournment Motion.

SHORT DURATION DISCUSSION

1305. Short Duration Discussion: Discussion on an urgent matter of public importance for which no formal motion is moved.

1306. Main Purpose: Allows members to discuss an important issue without requiring a formal vote.

1307. Voting: Normally, there is **no voting** at the end.

1308. Also Called: Two-Hour Discussion under parliamentary practice.

HALF-AN-HOUR DISCUSSION

1309. Half-an-Hour Discussion: Discussion on a matter arising from an answer already given to a question.

1310. Purpose: To obtain further information or clarification.

1311. Matter: Must generally be of sufficient public importance.

1312. Duration: Normally limited to about **30 minutes**.

MOTION OF THANKS

1313. Motion of Thanks: Motion moved in Parliament after the President's special address.

1314. Article 87: Provides for the President's special address.

1315. Purpose: Parliament discusses the policies and programme of the government presented in the President's Address.

1316. Amendment: Members can move amendments to the Motion of Thanks.

1317. Importance: Defeat of the Motion of Thanks can have serious political consequences for the government.

CUT MOTIONS

1318. Cut Motion: A parliamentary device used by Lok Sabha members to propose reduction in a Demand for Grant.

1319. Policy Cut: Demand reduced to **₹1** to express disapproval of government policy.

1320. Economy Cut: Demand reduced by a specified amount to suggest economy in expenditure.

1321. Token Cut: Demand reduced by **₹100** to ventilate a specific grievance.

1322. Ventilate: To raise or bring an issue publicly to the attention of the government.

PRIVILEGE MOTION

1323. Privilege Motion: A motion raised when a member believes that a parliamentary privilege has been breached.

1324. Parliamentary Privilege: Special rights and protections necessary for Parliament and its members to perform their functions.

1325. Breach of Privilege: Violation of such a privilege.

POINT OF ORDER

1326. Point of Order: A member may raise a point when they believe parliamentary rules or constitutional procedure are being violated.

1327. Decision: The presiding officer decides whether the point is valid.

1328. Main Purpose: Ensures that parliamentary proceedings follow the established rules.

MOTION FOR SUSPENSION OF RULES

1329. Suspension of Rules: A proposal to temporarily suspend a particular parliamentary rule to allow specified business to be conducted.

1330. Purpose: To facilitate special or urgent parliamentary business when permitted by the rules.

MOTION FOR ELECTION

1331. Election Motion: Parliamentary motion used where the House is required to make an election according to its rules.

IMPORTANT TERMS

1332. Majority: More than half of the relevant membership or votes, depending on the context.

1333. Simple Majority: More than half of the members present and voting.

1334. Absolute Majority: More than 50% of the total membership of the House.

1335. Effective Majority: More than 50% of the effective strength (total membership minus vacancies).

1336. Special Majority: A constitutionally specified higher majority; the exact requirement varies according to the matter.

1337. Censure: Strong criticism or disapproval.

1338. Adjournment: Suspension of a sitting.

1339. Prorogation: Ending of a session by the President.

1340. Dissolution: Ending the life of Lok Sabha.

1341. Quorum: Minimum number of members required to conduct business.

1342. Division: Formal process of recording votes for and against a proposal.

IMPORTANT DIFFERENCES

ADJOURNMENT vs PROROGATION vs DISSOLUTION

1343. Adjournment: Ends a sitting temporarily.

1344. Prorogation: Ends a session.

1345. Dissolution: Ends the Lok Sabha itself.

QUESTION HOUR vs ZERO HOUR

1346. Question Hour: Formal parliamentary procedure for asking questions.

1347. Zero Hour: Parliamentary practice for raising urgent matters; not mentioned in the Constitution.

NO-CONFIDENCE vs CENSURE

1348. No-Confidence: Tests whether the government has the confidence of Lok Sabha.

1349. Censure: Criticises a particular policy, action or failure.

MOTION vs RESOLUTION

1350. Motion: Formal proposal placed before the House.

1351. Resolution: A substantive proposal adopted by the House after following the required procedure.

QUICK REVISION

1352. Question Hour → Questions to Ministers.

1353. Starred Question → Oral Answer.

1354. Unstarred Question → Written Answer.

1355. Supplementary Question → Follow-up question after an oral answer.

1356. Zero Hour → Urgent matters; parliamentary practice.

1357. Adjournment Motion → Definite urgent public matter; Lok Sabha.

1358. No-Confidence Motion → Tests confidence in entire Council of Ministers.

1359. Censure Motion → Criticism of specific policy/action.

1360. Confidence Motion → Government demonstrates majority support.

1361. Calling Attention → Draws minister's attention to urgent public matter.

1362. Short Duration Discussion → Discussion without formal motion/vote.

1363. Half-an-Hour Discussion → Further discussion on an answer already given.

1364. Motion of Thanks → Follows President's Special Address.

1365. Policy Cut → ₹1.

1366. Economy Cut → Specified reduction.

1367. Token Cut → ₹100.

1368. Point of Order → Parliamentary rules/procedure.

Q. SUPREME COURT OF INDIA

BASIC INFORMATION

1369. Supreme Court of India: The highest court (top judicial authority) of India.

1370. Part of Constitution: Part V, Chapter IV deals with the Union Judiciary.

1371. Article 124: Provides for the establishment and constitution of the Supreme Court.

1372. Establishment: The Supreme Court came into existence on **28 January 1950**.

1373. Important: It replaced the **Federal Court of India**, which existed during British rule.

1374. Inauguration: The Supreme Court was inaugurated in the **Chamber of Princes in the Parliament House**.

1375. First Chief Justice of India: Justice H. J. Kania.

1376. Present Seat: New Delhi.

1377. Seat of Supreme Court: Article 130 provides that the Supreme Court shall sit in Delhi or at another place/place(s) appointed by the Chief Justice of India with the approval of the President.

COMPOSITION

1378. Constitutional Provision: Article 124 originally provided for a Chief Justice and not more than **7 other judges**.

1379. Present Sanctioned Strength: The Supreme Court has a sanctioned strength of **34 judges, including the Chief Justice of India**.

1380. Important: The number of judges can be increased by Parliament through legislation.

1381. Chief Justice of India (CJI): Head of the Supreme Court.

1382. Other Judges: Appointed as Supreme Court judges according to the constitutional procedure.

APPOINTMENT OF JUDGES

1383. Constitutional Authority: Judges of the Supreme Court are formally appointed by the **President of India**.

1384. Present Appointment System: The **collegium system** plays the central role in recommending Supreme Court judges.

1385. Collegium: A group of senior judges that recommends appointments and transfers of higher judiciary judges.

1386. Supreme Court Collegium: Consists of the **Chief Justice of India and four senior-most judges of the Supreme Court**.

1387. Important: The Constitution itself does not use the word **"collegium"**.

1388. 99th Constitutional Amendment Act, 2014: Sought to establish the **National Judicial Appointments Commission (NJAC)**.

1389. NJAC: National Judicial Appointments Commission.

1390. Supreme Court Judgment, 2015: The Supreme Court struck down the NJAC constitutional amendment and related law as unconstitutional.

1391. Present Position: The collegium system continues to operate for appointments to the higher judiciary.

QUALIFICATIONS OF SUPREME COURT JUDGE

1392. Article 124(3): Provides qualifications.

1393. Judge Must Be:

- A citizen of India.
- A High Court Judge for at least **5 years**, or
- An advocate of a High Court for at least **10 years**, or
- A distinguished jurist (highly respected legal expert), in the opinion of the President.

1394. Distinguished Jurist: A person recognised for exceptional knowledge and expertise in law.

AGE LIMIT

1395. Retirement Age: 65 years.

1396. High Court Judge Retirement Age: 62 years.

1397. Important Difference: Supreme Court judges retire at 65, while High Court judges retire at 62.

OATH

1398. Oath: A Supreme Court judge takes oath or affirmation before the **President** or a person appointed by the President.

1399. Oath: The judge promises to uphold the Constitution and faithfully perform the duties of office.

TENURE

1400. Tenure: A Supreme Court judge holds office until the age of **65 years**, unless they resign or are removed earlier.

1401. Resignation: A judge resigns by writing to the **President**.

1402. Removal: A Supreme Court judge can be removed only through the constitutional process involving Parliament and the President.

REMOVAL OF SUPREME COURT JUDGE

1403. Grounds: Proved misbehaviour or incapacity.

1404. Misbehaviour: Serious improper conduct.

1405. Incapacity: Inability to perform the duties of office.

1406. Removal Authority: President formally removes the judge after Parliament passes the required address.

1407. Parliamentary Requirement: Both Houses must pass the address by:

- A majority of the total membership of that House, and
- A majority of at least **two-thirds of members present and voting**.

1408. Special Majority: The above two conditions together constitute the required special majority for removal.

1409. Judicial Impeachment: The removal process is commonly called impeachment, although the Constitution uses the term **removal** rather than prescribing an impeachment procedure identical to that for the President.

INDEPENDENCE OF JUDICIARY

1410. Judicial Independence: Judges must be able to decide cases without improper pressure or interference.

1411. Why Important: Independent courts protect the Constitution, fundamental rights and rule of law.

1412. Security of Tenure: Judges cannot be removed easily.

1413. Fixed Retirement Age: Provides stability and independence.

1414. Salaries: Salaries and allowances are protected by constitutional provisions and charged on the Consolidated Fund of India.

1415. Conduct of Judges: Discussion of the conduct of Supreme Court and High Court judges in Parliament is restricted except during a removal motion.

1416. Contempt Power: Supreme Court is a **Court of Record** and has power to punish for contempt of itself.

COURT OF RECORD

1417. Article 129: Supreme Court is a **Court of Record**.

1418. Court of Record: A court whose records and judicial proceedings are authoritative and have evidentiary value.

1419. Contempt of Court: Disobedience or conduct that undermines the authority of the court.

JURISDICTION OF SUPREME COURT

1420. Jurisdiction: The legal authority of a court to hear and decide a case.

1421. Main Jurisdictions:

- Original jurisdiction
- Writ jurisdiction
- Appellate jurisdiction
- Advisory jurisdiction
- Review jurisdiction
- Special Leave jurisdiction

---

1. ORIGINAL JURISDICTION

1422. Original Jurisdiction: Cases that can be directly brought before the Supreme Court.

1423. Article 131: Deals with original jurisdiction in certain disputes between:

- Union and one or more States.
- Union and one or more States on one side and other States on the other.
- Two or more States.

1424. Federal Dispute: Dispute involving constitutional/legal rights between the Union and States or between States.

1425. Important: Article 131 does not cover every possible dispute between governments; the dispute must fall within the constitutional conditions.

---

2. WRIT JURISDICTION

1426. Article 32: Gives the Supreme Court power to issue writs for enforcement of **Fundamental Rights**.

1427. Writ: A formal written order issued by a court.

FIVE WRITS

1428. Habeas Corpus: "Produce the body."

1429. Habeas Corpus: Used to protect a person against unlawful detention.

1430. Meaning: The court orders the authority holding a person to produce them before the court.

1431. Mandamus: "We command."

1432. Mandamus: Court order directing a public authority to perform a legal duty.

1433. Prohibition: Order stopping a lower court or tribunal from continuing proceedings beyond its jurisdiction.

1434. Certiorari: Order by a higher court to review and, in appropriate cases, quash an order of a lower court or tribunal.

1435. Quo Warranto: "By what authority?"

1436. Quo Warranto: Questions the legal authority of a person occupying a public office.

ARTICLE 32

1437. Article 32: Right to move the Supreme Court for enforcement of Fundamental Rights.

1438. Dr. B. R. Ambedkar: Described Article 32 as the **"heart and soul" of the Constitution**.

1439. Important: Article 32 itself is a **Fundamental Right**.

1440. Supreme Court: Can issue writs under Article 32 for enforcement of Fundamental Rights.

SUPREME COURT vs HIGH COURT — WRITS

1441. Supreme Court: Article 32 — mainly for enforcement of Fundamental Rights.

1442. High Courts: Article 226 — Fundamental Rights **and other legal rights**.

1443. Article 226: Gives High Courts wider writ jurisdiction in terms of the types of rights that can be enforced.

1444. Important: Therefore, Article 226 is wider in scope than Article 32.

---

3. APPELLATE JURISDICTION

1445. Appellate Jurisdiction: Power to hear appeals against decisions of lower courts and tribunals.

1446. Appeals: Can arise in constitutional, civil and criminal matters according to constitutional and statutory provisions.

1447. Article 132: Constitutional appeals.

1448. Article 133: Civil appeals.

1449. Article 134: Criminal appeals.

1450. Article 136: Special Leave to Appeal.

SPECIAL LEAVE PETITION

1451. Article 136: Gives Supreme Court discretionary power to grant **Special Leave to Appeal (SLP)** from judgments, decrees, determinations, sentences or orders of courts and tribunals in India, subject to constitutional exceptions.

1452. Discretionary: The Supreme Court has the choice whether to grant leave.

1453. SLP: Special Leave Petition.

1454. Important: SLP is not an ordinary appeal; it is a special constitutional power.

---

4. ADVISORY JURISDICTION

1455. Article 143: President may refer questions of law or fact of public importance to the Supreme Court for its opinion.

1456. Advisory: Giving an opinion or advice.

1457. Important: The Supreme Court's advisory opinion under Article 143 is not the same as an ordinary binding judgment between litigating parties.

---

5. REVIEW JURISDICTION

1458. Article 137: Supreme Court has power to review its own judgments or orders, subject to law and rules.

1459. Review: Re-examination of a judgment by the same court on limited legal grounds.

CURATIVE PETITION

1460. Curative Petition: A very limited remedy available after dismissal of a review petition in exceptional circumstances.

1461. Purpose: To prevent a serious miscarriage of justice in exceptional cases.

1462. Constitutional Article: Curative petition is **not specifically mentioned as a separate power in the Constitution**; it developed through Supreme Court judicial precedent.

JUDICIAL REVIEW

1463. Judicial Review: Power of courts to examine whether laws and government actions conform to the Constitution.

1464. Main Purpose: Protects the supremacy of the Constitution.

1465. Judicial Review: An important feature of India's constitutional system.

1466. Supreme Court: Can strike down laws or government actions that violate the Constitution.

JUDICIAL ACTIVISM

1467. Judicial Activism: A judicial approach in which courts take an active role in interpreting and enforcing constitutional and legal rights.

1468. Important: Judicial activism is not a separate constitutional power; it describes a judicial approach.

PUBLIC INTEREST LITIGATION

1469. PIL: Public Interest Litigation.

1470. PIL: A case filed to protect a public interest or the rights of people who may find it difficult to approach the court themselves.

1471. Public Interest: Matter affecting the wider community.

1472. Important: PIL has helped courts address issues involving disadvantaged groups and public rights.

REVIEW vs CURATIVE

1473. Review Petition: Seeks reconsideration of a judgment by the same court on recognised grounds.

1474. Curative Petition: Exceptional remedy after review has been exhausted.

1475. Curative Petition: Used only in very limited circumstances.

IMPORTANT POWERS

1476. Supreme Court: Guardian of the Constitution.

1477. Supreme Court: Protector of Fundamental Rights.

1478. Supreme Court: Final court of appeal in India.

1479. Supreme Court: Court of Record.

1480. Supreme Court: Can review its own judgments.

1481. Supreme Court: Can issue writs for enforcement of Fundamental Rights.

1482. Supreme Court: Can settle certain disputes between Union and States.

IMPORTANT ARTICLES

1483. Article 124: Establishment and constitution of Supreme Court.

1484. Article 125: Salaries, etc., of Supreme Court judges.

1485. Article 126: Appointment of Acting Chief Justice.

1486. Article 127: Appointment of ad hoc judges.

1487. Article 128: Attendance of retired judges at sittings of Supreme Court.

1488. Article 129: Supreme Court as Court of Record.

1489. Article 130: Seat of Supreme Court.

1490. Article 131: Original jurisdiction.

1491. Article 132: Constitutional appeals.

1492. Article 133: Civil appeals.

1493. Article 134: Criminal appeals.

1494. Article 134A: Certificate for appeal to Supreme Court.

1495. Article 135: Federal Court jurisdiction continued in certain matters.

1496. Article 136: Special Leave to Appeal.

1497. Article 137: Review of judgments.

1498. Article 138: Enlargement of Supreme Court jurisdiction.

1499. Article 139: Power to issue certain writs.

1500. Article 139A: Transfer of certain cases.

1501. Article 140: Ancillary powers.

1502. Article 141: Law declared by Supreme Court binding on all courts.

1503. Article 142: Enforcement of decrees and orders; complete justice.

1504. Article 143: Advisory jurisdiction.

1505. Article 144: Authorities to act in aid of Supreme Court.

1506. Article 145: Rules of Court.

1507. Article 146: Officers and servants of Supreme Court.

1508. Article 147: Interpretation.

VERY IMPORTANT ARTICLES

1509. Article 32: Constitutional remedies and writs for Fundamental Rights.

1510. Article 50: Separation of judiciary from executive.

1511. Article 141: Law declared by Supreme Court is binding on all courts in India.

1512. Article 142: Supreme Court can pass orders necessary for doing **complete justice**.

1513. Complete Justice: Giving a remedy that fully addresses the circumstances of a case within the Supreme Court's constitutional powers.

1514. Article 144: All authorities, civil and judicial, shall act in aid of the Supreme Court.

IMPORTANT TERMS

1515. Judiciary: Branch of government that interprets law and delivers justice.

1516. Jurisdiction: Legal authority to hear and decide cases.

1517. Original Jurisdiction: Case comes directly to the court.

1518. Appellate Jurisdiction: Court hears an appeal against another court's decision.

1519. Advisory Jurisdiction: Court gives an opinion on a matter referred to it.

1520. Judicial Review: Constitutional examination of laws and government actions.

1521. Judicial Activism: Active judicial approach in protecting rights and constitutional principles.

1522. PIL: Litigation filed in public interest.

1523. Writ: Formal judicial order.

1524. Precedent: Earlier judicial decision used as guidance or authority in later cases.

1525. Binding: Legally required to be followed.

1526. Contempt: Conduct that disobeys or undermines the authority of a court.

R. HIGH COURTS OF INDIA

BASIC INFORMATION

1548. High Court: The highest court at the **State level**.

1549. Constitutional Basis: High Courts are provided for in **Part VI, Chapter V** of the Constitution.

1550. Article 214: Provides that there shall be a High Court for each State.

1551. Common High Court: Parliament can establish a common High Court for two or more States or for two or more States and a Union Territory.

1552. Article 231: Provides for establishment of a common High Court for two or more States or States and a Union Territory.

1553. Important: Not every State has a separate High Court.

1554. Present Number of High Courts: 25 High Courts in India.

1555. High Courts: Exercise jurisdiction over States and, in some cases, Union Territories.

FIRST HIGH COURTS

1556. First High Courts in India: The High Courts of **Calcutta, Bombay and Madras** were established in **1862** under the Indian High Courts Act, 1861.

1557. Allahabad High Court: Established in **1866**.

1558. Important: These courts were created during British rule, before the Constitution of India came into force.

CONSTITUTIONAL ARTICLES

1559. Article 214: High Court for each State.

1560. Article 215: High Court as a Court of Record.

1561. Article 216: Constitution of High Courts.

1562. Article 217: Appointment and conditions of office of High Court judges.

1563. Article 218: Certain provisions relating to Supreme Court judges apply to High Court judges.

1564. Article 219: Oath or affirmation by High Court judges.

1565. Article 220: Restriction on practice after being a permanent judge.

1566. Article 221: Salaries, etc., of High Court judges.

1567. Article 222: Transfer of a High Court judge.

1568. Article 223: Appointment of Acting Chief Justice.

1569. Article 224: Appointment of additional and acting judges.

1570. Article 224A: Appointment of retired judges at sittings of High Courts.

1571. Article 225: Jurisdiction of existing High Courts.

1572. Article 226: Power of High Courts to issue writs.

1573. Article 227: High Court's power of superintendence.

1574. Article 228: Transfer of certain cases to High Court.

1575. Article 229: Officers and servants of High Courts.

1576. Article 230: Extension of jurisdiction of High Courts to Union Territories.

1577. Article 231: Establishment of a common High Court.

COMPOSITION

1578. Article 216: Every High Court consists of a **Chief Justice and such other judges as the President may consider necessary**.

1579. Number of Judges: There is no fixed constitutional number for every High Court.

1580. Strength: The sanctioned strength varies from one High Court to another.

1581. Chief Justice: Head of the High Court.

1582. Other Judges: Appointed according to the constitutional procedure.

APPOINTMENT OF HIGH COURT JUDGES

1583. Article 217: High Court judges are appointed by the **President of India**.

1584. Consultation: The President consults:

- Chief Justice of India.
- Governor of the concerned State.

- Chief Justice of the concerned High Court, for appointment of a judge other than the Chief Justice.

1585. Present System: The **collegium system** plays the central role in recommending appointments.

1586. High Court Collegium: Generally consists of the **Chief Justice of the High Court and two senior-most judges** of that High Court.

1587. Final Constitutional Appointment: The formal appointment is made by the President.

QUALIFICATIONS

1588. Article 217: A person must be a citizen of India.

1589. Judicial Experience: The person must have held a judicial office for at least **10 years** in the territory of India, or

1590. Advocate Experience: Must have been an advocate of a High Court or of two or more such courts in succession for at least **10 years**.

1591. Important: There is no separate constitutional requirement of a particular age for appointment as a High Court judge.

RETIREMENT AGE

1592. Retirement Age: 62 years.

1593. Supreme Court Judge: Retirement at **65 years**.

1594. Difference: High Court judges retire three years earlier than Supreme Court judges.

OATH

1595. Article 219: A High Court judge takes oath or affirmation before the **Governor of the State** or a person appointed by the Governor.

1596. Oath: Judge promises to uphold the Constitution and faithfully perform duties.

RESIGNATION

1597. Resignation: A High Court judge resigns by writing to the **President of India**.

1598. Important: Although the judge works in a State High Court, resignation is addressed to the President.

REMOVAL

1599. Removal: High Court judges are removed by the **President**.

1600. Grounds: Proved misbehaviour or incapacity.

1601. Parliamentary Process: Same constitutional removal process as a Supreme Court judge.

1602. Required Majority: Each House of Parliament must pass the address by:

- Majority of total membership of that House, and
- At least two-thirds of members present and voting.

1603. Important: The President cannot remove a High Court judge simply on the advice of the State Government.

TRANSFER OF HIGH COURT JUDGES

1604. Article 222: A High Court judge may be transferred from one High Court to another by the President.

1605. Consultation: The Chief Justice of India must be consulted.

1606. Transfer: Is not done by the State Government.

ACTING CHIEF JUSTICE

1607. Article 223: When the office of Chief Justice is vacant or the Chief Justice is unable to perform duties, the President may appoint another judge of the High Court as Acting Chief Justice.

ADDITIONAL JUDGE

1608. Article 224: Additional judges may be appointed when there is a temporary increase in the business of a High Court or there are arrears of work.

1609. Additional Judge: Normally appointed for a period not exceeding **two years**.

1610. Age: An additional judge cannot continue after reaching the age of **62 years**.

RETIRED JUDGES

1611. Article 224A: The Chief Justice of a High Court, with the previous consent of the President, may request a retired High Court judge to sit and act as a judge of that High Court.

1612. Purpose: Helps deal with shortage of judges or pending cases.

HIGH COURT AS COURT OF RECORD

1613. Article 215: Every High Court is a **Court of Record**.

1614. Power: High Courts can punish for contempt of themselves.

1615. Court of Record: Court whose records have authoritative legal value.

WRIT JURISDICTION

1616. Article 226: High Courts can issue writs.

1617. Five Writs:

- Habeas Corpus
- Mandamus
- Prohibition
- Certiorari
- Quo Warranto

1618. Important: High Court writ jurisdiction is **wider than Supreme Court writ jurisdiction**.

1619. Supreme Court Article 32: Mainly for enforcement of Fundamental Rights.

1620. High Court Article 226: For enforcement of **Fundamental Rights and other legal rights**.

FIVE WRITS — QUICK REVISION

1621. Habeas Corpus: Protects against unlawful detention.

1622. Mandamus: Commands a public authority to perform a legal duty.

1623. Prohibition: Prevents a lower court or tribunal from exceeding its jurisdiction.

1624. Certiorari: Higher court reviews and, where appropriate, quashes an order of a lower court or tribunal.

1625. Quo Warranto: Questions the legal authority of a person occupying a public office.

POWER OF SUPERINTENDENCE

1626. Article 227: Every High Court has superintendence over courts and tribunals within its territorial jurisdiction, subject to constitutional limitations.

1627. Superintendence: General power of supervision and oversight.

1628. High Court: Can call for returns, make rules and issue directions for ensuring proper functioning of subordinate courts and tribunals within its jurisdiction.

JUDICIAL REVIEW

1629. High Court: Has power of judicial review.

1630. Judicial Review: Examination of laws and government actions to determine whether they comply with the Constitution.

1631. High Court: Can declare a law unconstitutional if it violates the Constitution, subject to appeal to the Supreme Court.

CONTROL OVER SUBORDINATE COURTS

1632. High Court: Has important administrative and judicial control over subordinate courts in the State.

1633. Article 235: Gives the High Court control over district courts and courts subordinate to it in matters specified by the Constitution.

1634. Control Includes: Posting, promotion and leave of judicial officers belonging to the State judicial service, subject to constitutional provisions.

APPELLATE JURISDICTION

1635. High Court: Hears appeals from subordinate courts.

1636. Civil Appeals: High Courts hear appeals in civil matters according to applicable laws.

1637. Criminal Appeals: High Courts hear appeals in criminal matters according to applicable laws.

1638. Constitutional Matters: High Courts can decide constitutional questions arising within their jurisdiction.

ORIGINAL JURISDICTION

1639. Original Jurisdiction: Cases that can begin directly in a High Court.

1640. Extent: Original jurisdiction varies from High Court to High Court and depends on constitutional and statutory provisions.

1641. Important: Some High Courts have original civil jurisdiction in specified matters because of historical and statutory provisions.

HIGH COURT vs SUPREME COURT

High Court	**Supreme Court**
Highest court at State level	Highest court of India
Article 214	Article 124
Judges retire at 62	Judges retire at 65
Writ jurisdiction — Article 226	Writ jurisdiction — Article 32
Writs for Fundamental + legal rights	Article 32 mainly for Fundamental Rights
Supervises subordinate courts	No general power of superintendence over all subordinate courts
Court of Record — Article 215	Court of Record — Article 129

Can hear appeals from subordinate courts	Final appellate court

HIGH COURT AND UNION TERRITORIES

1642. Article 230: Parliament may extend or exclude the jurisdiction of a High Court to or from a Union Territory.

1643. Common High Court: One High Court can serve more than one State or State(s) and a Union Territory.

1644. Example: Punjab and Haryana High Court serves Punjab, Haryana and the Union Territory of Chandigarh.

IMPORTANT TERMS

1645. High Court: Highest judicial authority in a State.

1646. Chief Justice: Head of a High Court.

1647. Collegium: Group of senior judges involved in recommending higher judiciary appointments.

1648. Writ: Formal order issued by a court.

1649. Superintendence: Power of supervision.

1650. Subordinate Court: Court functioning below the High Court.

1651. Appellate: Relating to hearing appeals.

1652. Original Jurisdiction: Authority to hear a case at the first instance.

1653. Court of Record: Court whose records have authoritative legal status.

1654. Contempt: Act that disobeys or undermines the authority of a court.

1655. Arrears: Pending work or cases that remain undecided.

QUICK REVISION

1656. High Court for each State → Article 214.

1657. High Court as Court of Record → Article 215.

1658. Constitution of High Court → Article 216.

1659. Appointment and conditions of judges → Article 217.

1660. Oath → Article 219.

1661. Transfer of judges → Article 222.

1662. Acting Chief Justice → Article 223.

1663. Additional Judges → Article 224.

1664. Retired Judges → Article 224A.

1665. High Court Writs → Article 226.

1666. Superintendence → Article 227.

1667. Officers and servants → Article 229.

1668. Extension to Union Territories → Article 230.

1669. Common High Court → Article 231.

1670. Retirement Age → 62 years.

1671. Resignation → President.

1672. Removal → President after required parliamentary process.

1673. Writs → 5.

1674. High Court Writ Jurisdiction → Wider than Article 32 jurisdiction of Supreme Court.

1675. High Court Control over Subordinate Courts → Article 235.

S. SUBORDINATE COURTS AND INDIAN JUDICIAL HIERARCHY

BASIC IDEA

1676. Subordinate Courts: Courts that function below the High Court in the judicial system of a State.

1677. Subordinate Judiciary: Lower level of the judicial system working under the supervision and control of the High Court.

1678. Main Constitutional Provisions: Articles 233–237 deal with subordinate courts.

1679. Article 233: Appointment of district judges.

1680. Article 234: Recruitment of persons other than district judges to the judicial service.

1681. Article 235: Control over subordinate courts.

1682. Article 236: Definitions related to this chapter.

1683. Article 237: Application of provisions to certain classes of magistrates.

BASIC JUDICIAL HIERARCHY

1684. Supreme Court of India: Highest court in the country.

1685. High Court: Highest court at the State level.

1686. District and Sessions Court: Principal court at the district level for both civil and criminal matters.

1687. Lower/Subordinate Courts: Courts below the district level, depending on the State's judicial structure.

1688. Important: The exact names and organisation of subordinate courts can vary between States.

DISTRICT JUDGE

1689. District Judge: Judicial officer who heads the district judiciary on the civil side and also functions as **Sessions Judge** on the criminal side.

1690. District Court: Main court at district level.

1691. Sessions Court: District-level court dealing with serious criminal cases.

1692. District and Sessions Judge: The same judicial officer may exercise both civil and criminal jurisdiction under the respective designations.

APPOINTMENT OF DISTRICT JUDGES

1693. Article 233: Appointment, posting and promotion of district judges in a State are made by the **Governor of the State** in consultation with the **High Court** exercising jurisdiction over that State.

1694. Direct Appointment: A person who is not already in the service of the Union or the State must have been an advocate or pleader for at least **7 years** and must be recommended by the High Court.

1695. Important: High Court consultation is constitutionally required.

RECRUITMENT TO OTHER JUDICIAL SERVICE

1696. Article 234: Recruitment of persons other than district judges to the judicial service of a State is made by the **Governor** according to rules made after consultation with:

- State Public Service Commission.
- High Court.

1697. Judicial Service: Service consisting of judicial officers below the level of district judge.

CONTROL OF HIGH COURT

1698. Article 235: Control over district courts and courts subordinate to them is vested in the **High Court**.

1699. Control Includes: Matters such as posting, promotion and leave of judicial officers belonging to the State judicial service, subject to constitutional provisions.

1700. Main Purpose: To maintain the independence and proper functioning of the subordinate judiciary.

CIVIL COURTS

1701. Civil Court: Court dealing mainly with disputes involving civil rights, property, contracts, money, family matters and other civil issues.

1702. Civil Dispute: Dispute involving private rights or obligations.

1703. Examples:

- Property disputes.
- Contract disputes.
- Recovery of money.
- Certain family and inheritance disputes.

1704. Civil Judge: Judicial officer who hears civil cases at the subordinate level.

CRIMINAL COURTS

1705. Criminal Court: Court dealing with offences against law.

1706. Criminal Offence: An act or omission punishable under criminal law.

1707. Sessions Court: Deals with serious criminal cases according to law.

1708. Magistrate Courts: Deal with criminal cases within their statutory jurisdiction.

DISTRICT COURT vs SESSIONS COURT

1709. District Court: Civil jurisdiction at the district level.

1710. Sessions Court: Criminal jurisdiction at the district level.

1711. Important: Often the **same officer** serves as District Judge on the civil side and Sessions Judge on the criminal side.

SESSIONS JUDGE

1712. Sessions Judge: Judge who presides over a Sessions Court.

1713. Additional Sessions Judge: Additional judicial officer who exercises Sessions Court powers as provided by law.

1714. Serious Offences: Sessions Courts deal with serious criminal offences, subject to the criminal procedure law.

MAGISTRATES

1715. Magistrate: Judicial officer dealing with criminal matters within the powers given by law.

1716. Judicial Magistrate: Magistrate exercising judicial functions in criminal cases.

1717. Chief Judicial Magistrate (CJM): Senior judicial magistrate in a district exercising powers specified by criminal procedure law.

1718. Additional Chief Judicial Magistrate: Judicial magistrate appointed to exercise additional powers as provided by law.

METROPOLITAN MAGISTRATES

1719. Metropolitan Magistrate: A magistrate appointed for a metropolitan area under the applicable criminal procedure law.

1720. Metropolitan Area: Area legally designated as a metropolitan area.

1721. Important Current Note: The criminal procedure framework has changed with the implementation of the **Bharatiya Nagarik Suraksha Sanhita, 2023 (BNSS)** from **1 July 2024**, replacing the Code of Criminal Procedure, 1973.

1722. BNSS: Bharatiya Nagarik Suraksha Sanhita, 2023.

1723. Purpose: It is India's principal criminal procedure law.

GRAM NYAYALAYAS

1724. Gram Nyayalaya: Village-level court established under the **Gram Nyayalayas Act, 2008**.

1725. Gram: Village.

1726. Nyayalaya: Court.

1727. Main Purpose: To provide accessible and affordable justice to people in rural areas.

1728. Establishment: The Gram Nyayalayas Act, 2008 came into force on **2 October 2009**.

1729. Nyayadhikari: Judicial officer appointed to preside over a Gram Nyayalaya.

1730. Important: Gram Nyayalayas are established by State Governments in consultation with the respective High Court.

1731. Objective: Reduce distance, cost and delay in accessing justice.

FAMILY COURTS

1732. Family Court: Court dealing with specified family-related disputes.

1733. Family Courts Act: 1984.

1734. Main Matters: Marriage, divorce, maintenance, custody and certain family disputes.

1735. Main Objective: Promote conciliation and speedy settlement of family disputes.

1736. Conciliation: Attempt to help opposing parties reach an agreement without prolonged litigation.

CONSUMER COMMISSIONS

1737. Consumer Commission: Quasi-judicial body dealing with consumer disputes.

1738. Quasi-Judicial: Body that performs functions similar to a court but is not a regular court.

1739. Consumer Protection Act: 2019.

1740. Three Levels:

- District Consumer Disputes Redressal Commission.
- State Consumer Disputes Redressal Commission.
- National Consumer Disputes Redressal Commission (NCDRC).

1741. NCDRC: National-level consumer dispute redressal body.

TRIBUNALS

1742. Tribunal: Specialised body created to adjudicate particular types of disputes.

1743. Adjudicate: To officially decide a dispute.

1744. Specialisation: Tribunals deal with particular areas such as taxation, service matters or company law.

1745. Constitutional Basis: Articles **323A and 323B** provide for tribunals in specified fields.

1746. Article 323A: Administrative tribunals.

1747. Article 323B: Tribunals for other specified matters.

ADMINISTRATIVE TRIBUNALS

1748. Administrative Tribunal: Tribunal dealing mainly with disputes relating to recruitment and service conditions of public servants.

1749. Central Administrative Tribunal (CAT): Major central administrative tribunal.

1750. CAT: Established under the **Administrative Tribunals Act, 1985**.

1751. Main Function: Deals with specified service matters of central government employees and other covered categories.

LOK ADALAT

1752. Lok Adalat: People's court mechanism for settlement of disputes through compromise or settlement.

1753. Lok: People.

1754. Adalat: Court.

1755. Legal Services Authorities Act: 1987.

1756. Main Purpose: Provide speedy and inexpensive settlement of disputes.

1757. Settlement: Agreement between parties to resolve a dispute.

1758. Award: Decision/settlement made by Lok Adalat.

1759. Status: An award of Lok Adalat is treated as a decree of a civil court and is final and binding according to law.

1760. Court Fee: Generally no court fee is payable for cases brought before Lok Adalat, and fees already paid may be refunded in settled cases according to law.

PERMANENT LOK ADALAT

1761. Permanent Lok Adalat: Forum established for settlement of disputes relating to specified **public utility services**.

1762. Public Utility Service: Essential public service such as certain transport, postal, telephone, power and water-related services as defined by law.

1763. Important Difference: Permanent Lok Adalats can also decide the dispute on merits in specified circumstances when conciliation fails, subject to statutory conditions.

ALTERNATIVE DISPUTE RESOLUTION

1764. ADR: Alternative Dispute Resolution.

1765. ADR: Methods of resolving disputes outside the traditional lengthy court process.

1766. Main Methods:

- Arbitration.
- Mediation.
- Conciliation.
- Negotiation.
- Lok Adalat.

1767. Arbitration: Dispute is decided by an arbitrator chosen according to the agreement and law.

1768. Mediation: Neutral person helps parties reach a voluntary settlement.

1769. Conciliation: Neutral person helps parties resolve a dispute and may play a more active role in suggesting solutions.

1770. Negotiation: Parties directly discuss and attempt to reach an agreement.

NATIONAL LEGAL SERVICES AUTHORITY

1771. NALSA: National Legal Services Authority.

1772. Constitutional Basis: Article 39A promotes equal justice and free legal aid.

1773. NALSA Act: Legal Services Authorities Act, 1987 provides the statutory framework for legal services authorities.

1774. Main Purpose: Provide legal services to eligible persons and organise Lok Adalats.

1775. Free Legal Aid: Legal assistance provided to eligible persons according to law.

SEPARATION OF JUDICIARY FROM EXECUTIVE

1776. Article 50: Directs the State to take steps to separate the judiciary from the executive in the public services of the State.

1777. Separation: Keeping judicial functions independent from executive control.

1778. Main Purpose: Protect judicial independence.

JUDICIAL INDEPENDENCE

1779. Judicial Independence: Freedom of judges to decide cases without improper political or administrative pressure.

1780. High Court: Exercises important control over subordinate judiciary.

1781. Article 235: Important constitutional protection for judicial control by High Courts.

COMPLETE JUDICIAL STRUCTURE — EASY VIEW

1782. Level 1 → Supreme Court of India

1783. Level 2 → High Courts

1784. Level 3 → District and Sessions Courts

1785. Level 4 → Civil Courts and Criminal/Magistrate Courts

1786. Specialised Forums → Family Courts, Consumer Commissions, Tribunals, Gram Nyayalayas, etc.

1787. Alternative Justice Mechanisms → Lok Adalats, Mediation, Arbitration and other ADR mechanisms

---

IMPORTANT ARTICLES

1788. Article 233 → Appointment of District Judges.

1789. Article 234 → Recruitment to judicial service other than District Judges.

1790. Article 235 → Control over subordinate courts.

1791. Article 236 → Interpretation/definitions.

1792. Article 237 → Application of provisions to certain magistrates.

1793. Article 50 → Separation of judiciary from executive.

1794. Article 39A → Equal justice and free legal aid.

1795. Articles 323A–323B → Tribunals.

IMPORTANT TERMS

1796. Subordinate: Lower in official or judicial hierarchy.

1797. District Judiciary: Judicial system functioning mainly at district and subordinate levels.

1798. Civil: Related to private rights, property, contracts and similar matters.

1799. Criminal: Related to offences against law.

1800. Magistrate: Judicial officer dealing with criminal matters within statutory powers.

1801. Tribunal: Specialised adjudicating body.

1802. Quasi-Judicial: Having some functions similar to a court.

1803. Adjudication: Formal decision of a dispute.

1804. Conciliation: Helping parties reach a settlement.

1805. Mediation: Neutral assistance to help parties reach their own settlement.

1806. Arbitration: Private dispute resolution by an arbitrator.

1807. Legal Aid: Legal assistance provided to eligible persons.

1808. Public Utility: Essential service of public importance.

QUICK REVISION

1809. Subordinate Courts → Articles 233–237.

1810. District Judges → Article 233.

1811. Other Judicial Service → Article 234.

1812. High Court Control → Article 235.

1813. Separation of Judiciary → Article 50.

1814. Free Legal Aid → Article 39A.

1815. Gram Nyayalayas Act → 2008.

1816. Gram Nyayalayas Act came into force → 2 October 2009.

1817. Family Courts Act → 1984.

1818. Legal Services Authorities Act → 1987.

1819. Consumer Protection Act → 2019.

1820. CAT → Administrative Tribunals Act, 1985.

1821. Tribunals → Articles 323A and 323B.

1822. Lok Adalat → Settlement-oriented justice mechanism.

1823. Permanent Lok Adalat → Specified public utility services.

1824. District Judge Appointment → Governor + consultation with High Court.

1825. District Judge Direct Recruitment → At least 7 years as advocate/pleader + High Court recommendation.

T. ELECTION SYSTEM OF INDIA

BASIC INFORMATION

1826. Election: The process through which people choose their representatives.

1827. Electoral System: The rules and procedures used to conduct elections and determine winners.

1828. Universal Adult Suffrage: Every Indian citizen who meets the legal age and other eligibility conditions has the right to vote.

1829. Voting Age: 18 years.

1830. Voting Age: Originally **21 years**; reduced to 18 by the **61st Constitutional Amendment Act, 1988**.

1831. Election Commission of India (ECI): Constitutional body responsible for conducting and supervising elections within its constitutional jurisdiction.

1832. Constitutional Article: Article 324.

ELECTION COMMISSION OF INDIA

1833. Election Commission of India: Commonly called **ECI**.

1834. Established: 25 January 1950.

1835. National Voters' Day: Celebrated every year on **25 January**.

1836. Main Purpose: To promote voter awareness and participation.

1837. Constitutional Basis: Article 324.

1838. Elections Conducted/Supervised: Elections to:

- Lok Sabha.
- Rajya Sabha.
- State Legislative Assemblies.
- State Legislative Councils, where applicable.
- President.
- Vice-President.

1839. Important: The ECI does **not** conduct elections to Panchayats and Municipalities.

1840. Local Body Elections: Conducted by **State Election Commissions**.

COMPOSITION OF ELECTION COMMISSION

1841. Election Commission: Consists of the **Chief Election Commissioner (CEC)** and such number of other Election Commissioners as the President may fix.

1842. Regional Commissioners: The President may appoint Regional Commissioners after consultation with the Election Commission.

1843. Chief Election Commissioner: Head of the Election Commission.

1844. Election Commissioners: Assist the CEC in performing the Commission's functions.

APPOINTMENT

1845. Constitutional Authority: Election Commissioners are appointed by the **President of India**, subject to the law made by Parliament.

1846. Current Legal Framework: The **Chief Election Commissioner and Other Election Commissioners Act, 2023** provides the statutory framework for appointments.

1847. Selection Committee under the 2023 Act: Consists of:

- Prime Minister — Chairperson.
- Union Cabinet Minister nominated by the Prime Minister.
- Leader of Opposition in Lok Sabha, or leader of the largest opposition party where there is no recognised Leader of Opposition.

1848. Search Committee: Headed by the **Minister of Law and Justice** and prepares a panel for consideration.

TENURE

1849. Term: Under the 2023 law, the CEC and Election Commissioners hold office for **6 years or until the age of 65 years**, whichever is earlier.

1850. Reappointment: They are not eligible for reappointment.

1851. Important: A person who has served as an Election Commissioner cannot be appointed again as Election Commissioner.

REMOVAL OF ELECTION COMMISSIONERS

1852. Chief Election Commissioner: Can be removed from office in the same manner and on the same grounds as a **Judge of the Supreme Court**.

1853. Other Election Commissioners: Can be removed by the President **on the recommendation of the Chief Election Commissioner**.

1854. Protection: This arrangement provides greater security of tenure and independence.

INDEPENDENCE OF ELECTION COMMISSION

1855. Independence: Essential for conducting free and fair elections.

1856. CEC Removal Protection: CEC has stronger constitutional protection against removal.

1857. Conditions of Service: Determined according to constitutional/statutory provisions.

1858. Expenses: Expenses of the Election Commission are charged on the **Consolidated Fund of India** as provided by law/constitutional arrangements.

ELECTORAL ROLL

1859. Electoral Roll: Official list of people registered as voters in a constituency.

1860. Voter: Eligible citizen whose name is included in the electoral roll.

1861. Electoral Registration Officer: Officer responsible for preparing and revising electoral rolls in a constituency.

1862. EPIC: Electors Photo Identity Card.

1863. EPIC: Commonly known as the **Voter ID card**.

RIGHT TO VOTE

1864. Article 326: Elections to Lok Sabha and State Legislative Assemblies are based on **adult suffrage**.

1865. Adult Suffrage: Citizens aged 18 years or above, subject to legal disqualifications and registration requirements, can vote.

1866. Important: The Constitution does not make voting itself a Fundamental Right.

1867. Voting: It is generally treated as a **constitutional/statutory right**, governed by election laws.

QUALIFICATIONS FOR VOTER

1868. Basic Requirements:

- Citizen of India.
- At least 18 years old.
- Not disqualified under law.
- Registered in the electoral roll of the relevant constituency.

1869. Ordinary Residence: Voter registration is linked to ordinary residence in a constituency, subject to election law.

CONSTITUENCY

1870. Constituency: Geographical area represented by an elected member.

1871. Parliamentary Constituency: Area from which a Member of Parliament is elected.

1872. Assembly Constituency: Area from which a Member of Legislative Assembly is elected.

1873. Electoral Constituency: Area represented for electoral purposes.

DELIMITATION

1874. Delimitation: Process of fixing or redrawing the boundaries of electoral constituencies.

1875. Delimitation Commission: Independent body established under law to carry out delimitation.

1876. Main Purpose: To ensure fair and appropriate representation based on population and constitutional/legal principles.

1877. Important: Delimitation is different from an ordinary administrative boundary change.

1878. Delimitation Commission: Its orders have legal force according to the governing law.

RESERVED CONSTITUENCIES

1879. Reserved Constituency: Constituency reserved for candidates belonging to specified categories.

1880. SC: Scheduled Castes.

1881. ST: Scheduled Tribes.

1882. Important: In a reserved constituency, **all eligible voters can vote**, but only candidates belonging to the specified reserved category can contest.

1883. Reservation: Based on constitutional provisions and population-related criteria.

TYPES OF ELECTIONS

1884. Direct Election: People directly vote for their representatives.

1885. Example: Lok Sabha and State Legislative Assembly elections.

1886. Indirect Election: Representatives are elected by an electoral college or other elected representatives rather than directly by the general public.

1887. Example: President of India.

1888. Rajya Sabha: Members representing States are elected by elected members of State Legislative Assemblies through proportional representation by means of the **single transferable vote**.

FIRST-PAST-THE-POST SYSTEM

1889. First-Past-the-Post (FPTP): Candidate receiving the **highest number of votes** in a constituency wins.

1890. Used In: Lok Sabha and State Legislative Assembly elections.

1891. Important: A candidate does not necessarily need more than 50% of all votes to win.

1892. Example: If Candidate A gets 40%, B gets 35% and C gets 25%, Candidate A wins.

PROPORTIONAL REPRESENTATION

1893. Proportional Representation (PR): System designed to provide representation broadly according to votes or electoral strength.

1894. Single Transferable Vote (STV): Voters rank candidates according to preference.

1895. Used For: Elections such as President, Vice-President, Rajya Sabha and Legislative Councils, as provided by the Constitution.

PRESIDENTIAL ELECTION

1896. President: Elected indirectly.

1897. Electoral College Includes:

- Elected members of both Houses of Parliament.
- Elected members of State Legislative Assemblies.

1898. Important: Nominated members do **not** participate.

1899. Delhi and Puducherry: Elected members of the Legislative Assemblies of Delhi and Puducherry are also part of the electoral college following constitutional amendments.

1900. Method: Proportional representation by means of single transferable vote.

1901. Voting: Secret ballot.

1902. Article 54: Electoral College for President.

1903. Article 55: Manner of election of President.

VICE-PRESIDENTIAL ELECTION

1904. Vice-President: Elected indirectly.

1905. Electoral College: Members of both Houses of Parliament.

1906. Important: Both elected and nominated members of Parliament participate.

1907. State Legislatures: Do not participate.

1908. Method: Proportional representation by single transferable vote.

1909. Article 66: Election of Vice-President.

RAJYA SABHA ELECTION

1910. Rajya Sabha: Permanent House; it is not dissolved.

1911. Members Representing States: Elected by elected members of State Legislative Assemblies.

1912. Method: Proportional representation by single transferable vote.

1913. Voting: Open ballot system is used, subject to election law.

LOK SABHA ELECTION

1914. Lok Sabha: House of the People.

1915. Election: Members are directly elected by voters.

1916. Method: First-Past-the-Post.

1917. Term: Normally **5 years**, unless sooner dissolved.

1918. Article 83: Duration of Houses of Parliament.

STATE ASSEMBLY ELECTION

1919. Legislative Assembly: Lower House of a State Legislature where a bicameral legislature exists.

1920. Election: Members are directly elected by voters.

1921. Method: First-Past-the-Post.

1922. Normal Term: 5 years, unless sooner dissolved.

EVM

1923. EVM: Electronic Voting Machine.

1924. Purpose: Records votes electronically.

1925. Main Components: Control Unit and Balloting Unit.

1926. Control Unit: Operated by polling officials.

1927. Balloting Unit: Used by voters to cast their vote.

VVPAT

1928. VVPAT: Voter Verifiable Paper Audit Trail.

1929. Purpose: Allows the voter to verify that the vote was recorded for the chosen candidate.

1930. Process: A paper slip is generated and briefly visible to the voter before it is automatically stored in the sealed VVPAT compartment.

1931. Importance: Provides an additional paper trail for verification and auditing.

NOTA

1932. NOTA: None of the Above.

1933. Purpose: Allows voters to indicate that they do not wish to vote for any of the listed candidates.

1934. Introduced in EVMs: Following the Supreme Court judgment of **2013**.

1935. Important: NOTA does not by itself cancel the election or automatically defeat all candidates.

MODEL CODE OF CONDUCT

1936. MCC: Model Code of Conduct.

1937. Meaning: Guidelines governing the conduct of political parties and candidates during elections.

1938. Main Purpose: Maintain a level playing field and prevent misuse of official machinery.

1939. Enforced: Election Commission implements the MCC during the election period.

1940. Important: The MCC is primarily a set of guidelines and is not itself a single Act of Parliament.

ELECTION EXPENDITURE

1941. Election Expenditure: Money spent by candidates or political parties for election-related activities subject to applicable law and rules.

1942. Expenditure Limit: Candidate expenditure limits are prescribed under election law and notified by the competent authority.

1943. Election Accounts: Candidates are required to maintain and submit election expenditure accounts according to law.

POLITICAL PARTY

1944. Political Party: Association of citizens formed to participate in political activities and contest elections.

1945. Registration: Political parties are registered with the Election Commission under **Section 29A of the Representation of the People Act, 1951**.

1946. National Party: Political party recognised by the Election Commission as a national party according to prescribed criteria.

1947. State Party: Political party recognised by the Election Commission as a State party according to prescribed criteria.

REPRESENTATION OF THE PEOPLE ACTS

1948. Representation of the People Act, 1950: Deals mainly with allocation of seats, delimitation and electoral rolls and related matters.

1949. Representation of the People Act, 1951: Deals mainly with conduct of elections, qualifications/disqualifications, corrupt practices, election offences and election disputes.

1950. RPA: Representation of the People Act.

ANTI-DEFECTION AND ELECTIONS

1951. Anti-Defection Law: Constitutional mechanism dealing with disqualification of legislators on grounds of defection.

1952. Tenth Schedule: Contains anti-defection provisions.

1953. 52nd Constitutional Amendment Act, 1985: Added the Tenth Schedule.

1954. Main Purpose: Prevent political defections that undermine government stability.

ELECTION PETITION

1955. Election Petition: Legal challenge to an election, filed before the competent High Court according to election law.

1956. Representation of the People Act, 1951: Provides the statutory framework for election disputes.

1957. Election Tribunal: Modern election disputes are generally tried by High Courts under the statutory framework.

STATE ELECTION COMMISSION

1958. State Election Commission (SEC): Constitutional authority responsible for elections to local bodies.

1959. Article 243K: Panchayat elections.

1960. Article 243ZA: Municipality elections.

1961. State Election Commissioner: Appointed by the Governor.

1962. Important: State Election Commission is separate from the Election Commission of India.

ECI vs STATE ELECTION COMMISSION

Election Commission of India	State Election Commission
Article 324	Articles 243K & 243ZA
Parliament & State Legislature elections	Panchayat & Municipality elections
President & Vice-President elections	Local body elections
Constitutional body	Constitutional body
Appointed by President	State Election Commissioner appointed by Governor

---

IMPORTANT ELECTION ARTICLES

1963. Article 324: Election Commission.

1964. Article 325: One general electoral roll; no exclusion on grounds only of religion, race, caste or sex.

1965. Article 326: Elections to Lok Sabha and State Assemblies based on adult suffrage.

1966. Article 327: Parliament's power to make election laws.

1967. Article 328: State Legislature's power to make election laws for State Legislature elections, subject to Parliament's laws.

1968. Article 329: Bar on interference by courts in electoral matters except through election petitions according to law.

1969. Article 330: Reservation of seats for SCs and STs in Lok Sabha.

1970. Article 332: Reservation of seats for SCs and STs in State Legislative Assemblies.

1971. Article 243K: State Election Commission for Panchayats.

1972. Article 243ZA: State Election Commission for Municipalities.

IMPORTANT TERMS

1973. Elector: Person entitled to vote.

1974. Electoral Roll: Official list of voters.

1975. Constituency: Area represented by an elected member.

1976. Delimitation: Fixing or redrawing constituency boundaries.

1977. Suffrage: Right to vote.

1978. Universal Adult Suffrage: Voting rights for adult citizens subject to legal conditions.

1979. FPTP: Highest-vote candidate wins.

1980. Proportional Representation: Representation broadly according to electoral strength.

1981. STV: Single Transferable Vote.

1982. EVM: Electronic Voting Machine.

1983. VVPAT: Voter Verifiable Paper Audit Trail.

1984. NOTA: None of the Above.

1985. MCC: Model Code of Conduct.

1986. Election Petition: Legal challenge to an election.

QUICK REVISION

1987. ECI Established → 25 January 1950.

1988. ECI Article → 324.

1989. National Voters' Day → 25 January.

1990. Voting Age → 18 years.

1991. Voting Age Reduced → 61st Constitutional Amendment Act, 1988.

1992. Electoral Roll → Official list of voters.

1993. Lok Sabha Election System → First-Past-the-Post.

1994. State Assembly Election System → First-Past-the-Post.

1995. Rajya Sabha Election → Proportional Representation + STV.

1996. President Election → Proportional Representation + STV.

1997. Vice-President Election → Proportional Representation + STV.

1998. NOTA → None of the Above.

1999. VVPAT → Voter Verifiable Paper Audit Trail.

2000. MCC → Model Code of Conduct.

2001. Political Party Registration → Section 29A, RPA 1951.

2002. Panchayat Elections → State Election Commission.

2003. Municipality Elections → State Election Commission.

2004. Panchayat Election Article → 243K.

2005. Municipality Election Article → 243ZA.

2006. Election Laws → Representation of the People Acts, 1950 and 1951.

2007. Anti-Defection → Tenth Schedule.

2008. Anti-Defection Amendment → 52nd Constitutional Amendment Act, 1985.

U. PRESIDENT OF INDIA

BASIC INFORMATION

2009. President of India: The constitutional head (formal head) of the Union Executive.

2010. Article 52: There shall be a President of India.

2011. Head of State: The President is the **Head of the State**.

2012. Executive Power: The executive power of the Union is vested in the President under **Article 53**.

2013. Important: India follows a **parliamentary system**, so the President normally acts on the **aid and advice (official advice)** of the Council of Ministers headed by the Prime Minister.

2014. Article 74: There shall be a Council of Ministers with the Prime Minister at the head to aid and advise the President.

2015. Real Executive: The **Prime Minister and Council of Ministers** exercise the real executive authority.

2016. Nominal/Constitutional Executive: The President is the constitutional executive.

PRESIDENTIAL ELECTION

2017. President: Elected indirectly, not directly by the people.

2018. Article 54: Provides the electoral college for election of the President.

2019. Electoral College Includes:

- Elected members of Lok Sabha.
- Elected members of Rajya Sabha.
- Elected members of State Legislative Assemblies.
- Elected members of Legislative Assemblies of Delhi and Puducherry.

2020. Important: Nominated members do **not** participate in the Presidential election.

2021. State: For this purpose, constitutional provisions include the relevant Union Territories of Delhi and Puducherry through the constitutional amendments governing the electoral college.

METHOD OF ELECTION

2022. Article 55: Provides the manner of election of the President.

2023. System: Proportional representation by means of the **single transferable vote (STV)**.

2024. Voting: Secret ballot.

2025. Main Principle: The election seeks to maintain balance between representation of the Union and the States.

VALUE OF VOTES

2026. Vote Value: Votes of elected MPs and MLAs do not have identical numerical value.

2027. MLA Vote: The value of an MLA's vote is linked to the population of the State and the number of elected members of its Legislative Assembly, according to the constitutional formula.

2028. MP Vote: The value of each elected MP's vote is calculated by dividing the total value of votes of all elected MLAs by the total number of elected MPs of both Houses.

2029. Purpose: To provide balance between the representation of States and the Union.

2030. Important Current Constitutional Position: The population reference for calculating the value of votes is linked to the **1971 Census**, subject to the constitutional provisions governing the Presidential election.

QUALIFICATIONS

2031. Article 58: A person must:

- Be a **citizen of India**.
- Have completed **35 years of age**.
- Be qualified for election as a member of the **Lok Sabha**.
- Not hold any **office of profit** under the Government of India, a State Government, or a local/other authority subject to the constitutional exceptions.

2032. Office of Profit: A government-linked office that may provide financial benefit or other advantage, subject to constitutional and statutory rules.

OATH

2033. Article 60: The President takes oath or affirmation before the **Chief Justice of India**.

2034. If CJI is unavailable: The oath is administered by the senior-most available judge of the Supreme Court.

2035. Main Promise: To preserve, protect and defend the Constitution and the law and devote oneself to the service and well-being of the people of India.

TERM OF OFFICE

2036. Article 56: President holds office for **5 years**.

2037. Term Begins: From the date on which the President enters office.

2038. Re-election: A President can be re-elected.

2039. Article 57: No constitutional limit on the number of terms.

2040. Maximum Terms: There is no fixed constitutional maximum.

2041. Important: Dr. Rajendra Prasad is the only President so far to have served two complete terms.

RESIGNATION

2042. Resignation: President resigns by writing to the **Vice-President**.

2043. Vice-President: Communicates the resignation to the Speaker of Lok Sabha.

REMOVAL — IMPEACHMENT

2044. Impeachment: Constitutional process for removing the President for **violation of the Constitution**.

2045. Article 61: Deals with impeachment.

2046. Important: The Constitution does not define "violation of the Constitution" in detail.

2047. Impeachment: Can be initiated by either House of Parliament.

2048. Notice: At least **14 days' written notice** is required.

2049. Required Signature: Notice must be signed by at least **one-fourth of the total number of members** of the initiating House.

2050. First Stage: The initiating House investigates the charge and passes the impeachment resolution by a **two-thirds majority of the total membership** of that House.

2051. Second Stage: The other House investigates or causes the charge to be investigated.

2052. Final Requirement: The other House must also sustain the charge and pass the resolution by a **two-thirds majority of its total membership**.

2053. Result: President is removed from office from the date the second House passes the resolution.

VACANCY OF PRESIDENT

2054. Article 62: Election to fill a vacancy caused by expiration of the term must be completed before the term ends.

2055. Casual Vacancy: If vacancy occurs because of death, resignation, removal or otherwise, election must be held **within six months**.

2056. Acting President: The **Vice-President** acts as President until the new President enters office.

2057. If Vice-President is unavailable: The Chief Justice of India, or in his absence the senior-most available Supreme Court judge, performs the functions of President as provided by law.

PRESIDENTIAL POWERS

2058. President's Powers: Constitutional powers are generally exercised on the aid and advice of the Council of Ministers.

2059. Main Categories:

- Executive powers.
- Legislative powers.
- Financial powers.
- Judicial powers.
- Diplomatic powers.
- Military powers.
- Emergency powers.

EXECUTIVE POWERS

2060. Article 53: Union executive power is vested in the President.

2061. President: Appoints the Prime Minister.

2062. Prime Minister: Usually the leader of the majority party or coalition in Lok Sabha.

2063. Other Ministers: Appointed by the President on the advice of the Prime Minister.

2064. Attorney General of India: Appointed by the President.

2065. CAG: Comptroller and Auditor General of India is appointed by the President.

2066. Governors: Governors of States are appointed by the President.

2067. Other Constitutional Appointments: President makes various appointments under the Constitution and laws.

PRIME MINISTER APPOINTMENT

2068. Article 75: Prime Minister is appointed by the President.

2069. Majority Leader: In normal circumstances, the President appoints the person who commands majority support in Lok Sabha.

2070. Hung House: If no party has a clear majority, the President has limited discretion in choosing a person who can demonstrate majority support.

2071. Hung House: House in which no party or coalition has a clear majority.

LEGISLATIVE POWERS

2072. Parliament: President is an integral part of Parliament under **Article 79**.

2073. Summon Parliament: President summons and prorogues Parliament.

2074. Dissolve Lok Sabha: President can dissolve Lok Sabha according to constitutional practice.

2075. Address Parliament: President addresses both Houses together at the beginning of the first session after each general election and the first session of each year.

2076. Article 87: Special Address of the President.

PRESIDENTIAL ASSENT

2077. Bill: A proposed law passed by Parliament.

2078. President's Assent: After Parliament passes a Bill, it is presented to the President.

2079. Article 111: President may:

- Give assent.
- Withhold assent.

- Return a Bill for reconsideration, except a Money Bill.

2080. Ordinary Bill: President may return it once for reconsideration.

2081. If Parliament Passes Again: If an ordinary Bill is passed again, with or without amendments, the President cannot withhold assent.

MONEY BILL

2082. Money Bill: Bill dealing only with matters specified in **Article 110**.

2083. President: A Money Bill cannot be introduced in Lok Sabha without the President's recommendation.

2084. Important: President cannot return a Money Bill for reconsideration under Article 111.

VETO POWERS

2085. Veto: Power to refuse or delay approval of a Bill.

TYPES

2086. Absolute Veto: President withholds assent.

2087. Suspensive Veto: President returns an ordinary Bill for reconsideration.

2088. Pocket Veto: President keeps a Bill pending without taking a final decision.

2089. Important: The Constitution does not prescribe a specific time limit within Article 111 for the President to act on a Bill.

2090. Constitutional Limitation: A Money Bill cannot be returned for reconsideration.

ORDINANCE POWER

2091. Article 123: President can promulgate an **Ordinance** when:

- Both Houses of Parliament are not simultaneously in session, and
- Immediate action is necessary.

2092. Ordinance: Temporary law made by the President when Parliament is not in session.

2093. Force: An Ordinance has the same force and effect as an Act of Parliament, subject to constitutional limitations.

2094. Parliamentary Approval: Must be placed before both Houses.

2095. Six Weeks: It ceases to operate **six weeks after the reassembly of Parliament**, unless approved earlier or otherwise ceases under the Constitution.

2096. Important: Ordinance power is not an alternative to normal law-making; it is meant for situations requiring immediate action.

FINANCIAL POWERS

2097. Money Bill: Introduced in Lok Sabha only on the President's recommendation.

2098. Annual Financial Statement: The Union Budget is constitutionally called the **Annual Financial Statement** under Article 112.

2099. Budget: President causes the Annual Financial Statement to be laid before Parliament.

2100. Demands for Grants: Presented to Lok Sabha on behalf of the government.

2101. Contingency Fund of India: Placed at the disposal of the President under **Article 267**.

JUDICIAL POWERS

2102. Article 72: President has power to grant pardons, reprieves, respites, remissions or commute sentences in specified cases.

2103. Pardon: Completely removes the punishment and its legal consequences, subject to constitutional limits.

2104. Reprieve: Temporary suspension of execution of a sentence, especially a death sentence.

2105. Respite: Awarding a lesser sentence because of special circumstances.

2106. Remission: Reduction of the period or nature of punishment without changing its basic character.

2107. Commutation: Substitution of one form of punishment with a lighter form.

PRESIDENT'S PARDONING POWER

2108. Article 72: President can exercise pardoning power in cases involving:

- Court Martial.
- Offences against laws relating to matters within Union executive power.
- Death sentences.

2109. Court Martial: Military court.

2110. Important: President can pardon a death sentence.

2111. Governor: Governor also has pardoning powers under Article 161, but the scope is different.

DIPLOMATIC POWERS

2112. President: Represents India in international affairs in the constitutional sense.

2113. Ambassadors: President appoints Indian diplomatic representatives.

2114. Foreign Representatives: Foreign diplomatic representatives are formally accredited to the President.

2115. Treaties: International treaties and agreements are concluded in the name of the Union, subject to constitutional and parliamentary requirements.

MILITARY POWERS

2116. Article 53: Supreme command of the Defence Forces is vested in the President.

2117. Important: The President exercises this power according to the Constitution and laws.

2118. Practical Control: The elected government exercises actual political control over defence policy.

EMERGENCY POWERS

2119. Emergency Provisions: Found in **Part XVIII, Articles 352–360**.

2120. National Emergency: Article 352.

2121. President's Rule: Article 356.

2122. Financial Emergency: Article 360.

NATIONAL EMERGENCY

2123. Article 352: President can proclaim National Emergency when the security of India or any part is threatened by:

- War.
- External aggression.
- Armed rebellion.

2124. Armed Rebellion: Violent uprising or organised armed challenge to the constitutional order.

2125. Important: The ground **"internal disturbance"** was replaced by **"armed rebellion"** by the 44th Constitutional Amendment Act, 1978.

2126. Written Advice: President can proclaim National Emergency only on the **written advice of the Union Cabinet**.

PRESIDENT'S RULE

2127. Article 356: President's Rule may be imposed when the government of a State cannot be carried on according to the Constitution.

2128. Constitutional Breakdown: Failure of constitutional machinery in a State.

2129. Basis: President may act on the Governor's report or otherwise.

2130. Parliamentary Approval: Proclamation must be approved by both Houses within **two months**.

2131. Duration: Initially six months and can continue subject to constitutional conditions and parliamentary approval, up to a maximum of **three years**.

FINANCIAL EMERGENCY

2132. Article 360: Financial Emergency can be proclaimed if the financial stability or credit of India or any part is threatened.

2133. Important: No Financial Emergency has ever been proclaimed in India.

PRESIDENT vs PRIME MINISTER

President	Prime Minister
Constitutional Head	Real Executive Head
Head of State	Head of Government
Elected indirectly	Appointed by President
Term: 5 years	No fixed constitutional term
Supreme constitutional office	Leader of Council of Ministers
Normally acts on aid and advice	Leads Council of Ministers

PRESIDENT vs GOVERNOR

2134. President: Constitutional head of Union.

2135. Governor: Constitutional head of State.

2136. President: Elected indirectly through electoral college.

2137. Governor: Appointed by President.

2138. President: Normal term is 5 years.

2139. Governor: Normally 5 years but holds office during the pleasure of the President.

IMPORTANT ARTICLES

2140. Article 52 → President of India.

2141. Article 53 → Executive power of Union.

2142. Article 54 → Election of President.

2143. Article 55 → Manner of election.

2144. Article 56 → Term of office.

2145. Article 57 → Eligibility for re-election.

2146. Article 58 → Qualifications.

2147. Article 59 → Conditions of office.

2148. Article 60 → Oath.

2149. Article 61 → Impeachment.

2150. Article 62 → Vacancy and election.

2151. Article 72 → Pardoning power.

2152. Article 74 → Council of Ministers to aid and advise President.

2153. Article 75 → Ministers and Prime Minister.

2154. Article 77 → Conduct of Union Government business.

2155. Article 78 → Duties of Prime Minister towards President.

2156. Article 79 → Parliament consists of President + two Houses.

2157. Article 85 → Sessions, prorogation and dissolution.

2158. Article 87 → Special Address.

2159. Article 111 → Assent to Bills.

2160. Article 112 → Annual Financial Statement.

2161. Article 123 → Ordinance power.

2162. Article 143 → Advisory jurisdiction of Supreme Court.

2163. Article 352 → National Emergency.

2164. Article 356 → President's Rule.

2165. Article 360 → Financial Emergency.

IMPORTANT TERMS

2166. Constitutional Head: Formal head whose powers are exercised within the constitutional framework.

2167. Real Executive: Authority that exercises actual day-to-day executive power.

2168. Electoral College: Group of persons entitled to participate in a particular indirect election.

2169. Proportional Representation: Electoral system intended to reflect voting strength proportionately.

2170. STV: Single Transferable Vote.

2171. Impeachment: Constitutional process for removing the President for violation of the Constitution.

2172. Veto: Power to refuse or delay approval of legislation.

2173. Ordinance: Temporary law promulgated by the President when Parliament is not in session.

2174. Pardon: Complete forgiveness of punishment in the constitutional sense.

2175. Reprieve: Temporary postponement of punishment.

2176. Respite: Lesser punishment because of special circumstances.

2177. Remission: Reduction of punishment without changing its character.

2178. Commutation: Replacement of punishment with a lighter punishment.

2179. Proclamation: Formal constitutional declaration issued by the President.

2180. Constitutional Breakdown: Situation in which a State government cannot be carried on according to the Constitution.

QUICK REVISION

2181. Constitutional Head of India → President.

2182. Article → 52.

2183. Executive Power → Article 53.

2184. Minimum Age → 35 years.

2185. President's Term → 5 years.

2186. Re-election → Allowed.

2187. Oath → Article 60.

2188. Impeachment → Article 61.

2189. Resignation → Vice-President.

2190. Presidential Election → Indirect.

2191. Election Method → Proportional Representation + STV.

2192. Voting → Secret Ballot.

2193. Pardoning Power → Article 72.

2194. Ordinance → Article 123.

2195. National Emergency → Article 352.

2196. President's Rule → Article 356.

2197. Financial Emergency → Article 360.

2198. Financial Emergency in India → Never proclaimed.

2199. First President → Dr. Rajendra Prasad.

2200. Only President to complete two full terms → Dr. Rajendra Prasad.

V. VICE-PRESIDENT OF INDIA

BASIC INFORMATION

2201. Vice-President of India: The second-highest constitutional office in India.

2202. Article 63: There shall be a Vice-President of India.

2203. Main Functions: The Vice-President:

- Acts as the **ex-officio Chairman (by virtue of office)** of Rajya Sabha.

- Acts as President when a vacancy occurs in the office of President or when the President is unable to perform functions.

2204. Important: The Vice-President is **not a member of Parliament**, but as Chairman of Rajya Sabha, presides over its proceedings.

ELECTION OF VICE-PRESIDENT

2205. Article 66: Vice-President is elected indirectly.

2206. Electoral College: Consists of **members of both Houses of Parliament**.

2207. Important: Both **elected and nominated members** of Lok Sabha and Rajya Sabha participate.

2208. State Legislatures: Members of State Legislative Assemblies do **not** participate.

2209. Election Method: Proportional representation by means of **Single Transferable Vote (STV)**.

2210. Voting: Secret ballot.

QUALIFICATIONS

2211. Article 66: Candidate must:

- Be a citizen of India.
- Have completed **35 years** of age.
- Be qualified for election as a member of the **Rajya Sabha**.
- Not hold an office of profit under the Government of India, State Government, local authority or other authority subject to constitutional exceptions.

2212. Important Difference: President must be qualified for Lok Sabha; Vice-President must be qualified for Rajya Sabha.

TERM OF OFFICE

2213. Article 67: Vice-President holds office for **5 years**.

2214. Re-election: Allowed.

2215. Maximum Terms: No constitutional limit.

2216. Resignation: Vice-President resigns by writing to the **President**.

REMOVAL

2217. Removal: Vice-President can be removed by a resolution of **Rajya Sabha** passed by a majority of all the then members of Rajya Sabha and agreed to by Lok Sabha.

2218. Notice: At least **14 days' notice** must be given before moving the resolution.

2219. Important: Impeachment procedure used for the President does **not** apply to the Vice-President.

OATH

2220. Article 69: Vice-President takes oath or affirmation before the **President**, or a person appointed by the President.

CHAIRMAN OF RAJYA SABHA

2221. Article 64: Vice-President is the **ex-officio Chairman of Rajya Sabha**.

2222. Ex-officio: Holding an office because of another office already held.

2223. Chairman: Presides over Rajya Sabha proceedings.

2224. Casting Vote: Chairman normally does not vote in the first instance but exercises a **casting vote** in case of equality of votes.

2225. Casting Vote: Vote used to break a tie.

2226. Chairman: Maintains order and interprets procedural rules within the House.

ACTING PRESIDENT

2227. Article 65: Vice-President acts as President when:

- A vacancy occurs in the office of President.
- President is unable to discharge functions due to absence, illness or other reason.

2228. Important: When acting as President, the Vice-President does not perform the duties of Chairman of Rajya Sabha.

2229. During Acting Presidency: The Deputy Chairman performs the duties of Chairman of Rajya Sabha.

IMPORTANT ARTICLES

2230. Article 63 → Vice-President.

2231. Article 64 → Ex-officio Chairman of Rajya Sabha.

2232. Article 65 → Acting President.

2233. Article 66 → Election.

2234. Article 67 → Term and removal.

2235. Article 68 → Election to fill vacancy.

2236. Article 69 → Oath.

2237. Article 70 → Discharge of President's functions in other contingencies.

2238. Article 71 → Matters relating to election of President and Vice-President.

IMPORTANT TERMS

2239. Ex-officio: Holding a position because of another office.

2240. Casting Vote: Deciding vote used when votes are equally divided.

2241. Electoral College: Persons authorised to participate in an indirect election.

2242. Vacancy: Situation in which an office is empty.

2243. Contingency: Possible situation requiring special action.

QUICK REVISION

2244. Second-highest constitutional office → Vice-President.

2245. Article → 63.

2246. Election → Indirect.

2247. Electoral College → Members of both Houses of Parliament.

2248. State Legislatures → Do not participate.

2249. Election Method → Proportional Representation + STV.

2250. Minimum Age → 35 years.

2251. Term → 5 years.

2252. Resignation → President.

2253. Removal → Rajya Sabha + Lok Sabha agreement.

2254. Ex-officio Chairman → Rajya Sabha.

2255. Acting President → Article 65.

PART 2 — INDIAN POLITY

W. PRIME MINISTER OF INDIA

BASIC INFORMATION

2256. Prime Minister: Head of the **Council of Ministers** and the real executive head of the Union Government in India's parliamentary system.

2257. Article 74: Council of Ministers with the Prime Minister at the head aids and advises the President.

2258. Article 75: Deals mainly with appointment and other provisions relating to Ministers.

2259. Prime Minister: Leader of the Union Council of Ministers.

2260. Prime Minister: Usually leader of the majority party or coalition in Lok Sabha.

2261. Head of Government: Prime Minister is the principal head of the Union Government.

APPOINTMENT

2262. Article 75: Prime Minister is appointed by the **President**.

2263. Majority: Normally, the leader who commands majority support in Lok Sabha is appointed Prime Minister.

2264. Hung Lok Sabha: If no party has a clear majority, the President appoints the person most likely to command the confidence of Lok Sabha.

2265. Hung House: House where no party or coalition has a clear majority.

PRIME MINISTER FROM RAJYA SABHA

2266. Important: Prime Minister does **not** have to be a member of Lok Sabha.

2267. Rajya Sabha Member: A member of Rajya Sabha can become Prime Minister.

2268. Six-Month Rule: A person who is not a member of either House of Parliament can remain a minister, including Prime Minister, for a maximum of **six consecutive months**, after which they must become a member of Parliament.

TERM

2269. Prime Minister: No fixed constitutional term.

2270. Main Requirement: Must retain the confidence of Lok Sabha.

2271. Loss of Majority: If the Prime Minister loses majority support, the government normally has to resign or prove its majority according to constitutional practice.

POWERS AND FUNCTIONS

2272. Prime Minister: Head of the Council of Ministers.

2273. Forms Council: Advises the President on appointment of other ministers.

2274. Allocates Portfolios: Distributes government departments among ministers.

2275. Reshuffle: Can recommend changes in ministerial portfolios.

2276. Coordinates: Coordinates the work of different ministries.

2277. Leader: Provides overall leadership to the Union Government.

2278. President: Prime Minister communicates important decisions of the Council of Ministers to the President.

ARTICLE 78

2279. Article 78: Specifies duties of the Prime Minister regarding communication with the President.

2280. Prime Minister: Must communicate to the President:

- Decisions of the Council of Ministers relating to administration and legislative proposals.
- Information concerning administration and legislative proposals when the President asks.
- Any matter decided by a Minister but not considered by the Council, if the President requires it to be placed before the Council.

PRIME MINISTER AND PARLIAMENT

2281. Prime Minister: Usually leader of the majority in Lok Sabha.

2282. Parliament: Prime Minister plays a central role in legislative and policy leadership.

2283. Lok Sabha: Government must retain its confidence.

2284. Rajya Sabha: Government must also work with the Upper House to pass legislation, especially where its support is necessary.

PRIME MINISTER AND PRESIDENT

2285. President: Constitutional head.

2286. Prime Minister: Real executive head in the parliamentary system.

2287. Relationship: President normally acts on the aid and advice of the Council of Ministers headed by the Prime Minister.

2288. Article 74: Central to this relationship.

PRIME MINISTER AND COUNCIL OF MINISTERS

2289. Prime Minister: Head of Council of Ministers.

2290. Council: Includes Cabinet Ministers, Ministers of State and, where appointed, Ministers of State with independent charge.

2291. Cabinet: Smaller inner body consisting of senior ministers and the principal decision-making body of the government.

CABINET vs COUNCIL OF MINISTERS

Cabinet	**Council of Ministers**
Smaller body	Larger body
Main policy-making body	Broader ministerial body
Includes senior ministers	Includes Cabinet Ministers and Ministers of State
Meets more regularly for key decisions	Full Council generally does not meet regularly as one body
Article 352 specifically defines Cabinet	Article 74 refers to Council of Ministers

---

COLLECTIVE RESPONSIBILITY

2292. Article 75(3): Council of Ministers is **collectively responsible to Lok Sabha**.

2293. Collective Responsibility: All ministers stand together behind government decisions.

2294. Main Principle: If the government loses the confidence of Lok Sabha, the entire Council of Ministers normally resigns.

INDIVIDUAL RESPONSIBILITY

2295. Individual Responsibility: Ministers hold office during the pleasure of the President, but in practice this operates on the advice of the Prime Minister.

2296. Prime Minister: Can recommend removal of a minister.

91ST CONSTITUTIONAL AMENDMENT

2297. 91st Amendment Act, 2003: Limited the size of the Council of Ministers.

2298. Union Council of Ministers: Total number of ministers, including Prime Minister, cannot exceed **15% of the total strength of Lok Sabha**.

2299. State Council of Ministers: Total number of ministers, including Chief Minister, cannot exceed **15% of the total strength of the Legislative Assembly**.

2300. Minimum: State Council of Ministers cannot have fewer than **12 ministers**.

2301. Purpose: Prevent unnecessarily large ministries and reduce political rewards through excessive ministerial appointments.

CABINET COMMITTEES

2302. Cabinet Committee: Smaller group of ministers formed to examine and decide specific areas of government policy.

2303. Nature: Generally created by the government through rules of business; not all are constitutional bodies.

2304. Examples include: Committees dealing with:

- Security.
- Economic Affairs.
- Parliamentary Affairs.
- Political Affairs.
- Appointments.

2305. Important: Composition and number of Cabinet Committees can change according to government requirements.

PRIME MINISTER — QUICK REVISION

2306. Head of Government → Prime Minister.

2307. Constitutional Basis → Articles 74 and 75.

2308. Appointed By → President.

2309. Usually → Leader of majority in Lok Sabha.

2310. Member of Rajya Sabha → Can become Prime Minister.

2311. Non-MP Minister → Must become MP within 6 months.

2312. Term → No fixed term.

2313. Must Retain → Confidence of Lok Sabha.

2314. Council Responsible To → Lok Sabha.

2315. Collective Responsibility → Article 75(3).

2316. Prime Minister's Duties to President → Article 78.

2317. Maximum Union Ministers → 15% of Lok Sabha strength.

2318. 15% Rule → 91st Constitutional Amendment Act, 2003.

X. COUNCIL OF MINISTERS AND UNION EXECUTIVE

UNION EXECUTIVE — BASIC STRUCTURE

2319. Union Executive: The executive branch of the Government of India.

2320. Constitutional Basis: Part V, Chapter I — Articles 52 to 78.

2321. Main Components of Union Executive:

- President
- Vice-President
- Prime Minister
- Council of Ministers
- Attorney General of India

2322. President: Constitutional head of the Union.

2323. Prime Minister: Head of the Government and head of the Council of Ministers.

2324. Council of Ministers: Body of ministers assisting and advising the President.

2325. Attorney General: Highest law officer of the Union.

COUNCIL OF MINISTERS

2326. Article 74: There shall be a Council of Ministers with the Prime Minister at the head to aid and advise the President.

2327. Council of Ministers: The larger body containing all categories of ministers.

2328. Constitutional Position: President normally acts according to the advice of the Council of Ministers.

2329. Reconsideration: President may once require the Council of Ministers to reconsider its advice.

2330. After Reconsideration: President must act according to the advice tendered after reconsideration.

TYPES OF MINISTERS

2331. Cabinet Minister: Senior minister in charge of an important ministry and member of the Cabinet.

2332. Minister of State with Independent Charge: Minister of State who independently handles a ministry or department but is not normally a member of the Cabinet unless specifically invited.

2333. Minister of State: Minister who generally assists a Cabinet Minister.

2334. Deputy Minister: Historically, a junior minister assisting a senior minister; this category is not commonly appointed in the present Union Council.

2335. Important: The Constitution does not itself create detailed constitutional categories such as Cabinet Minister or Minister of State; these classifications arise mainly from parliamentary practice and government rules.

CABINET

2336. Cabinet: Smaller and more powerful body within the Council of Ministers.

2337. Article 352: Constitution defines the Cabinet as the Council consisting of the Prime Minister and other ministers of Cabinet rank.

2338. Main Function: Takes major policy decisions of the Union Government.

2339. Cabinet: Central decision-making body of the parliamentary executive.

2340. Cabinet Meetings: Chaired by the Prime Minister.

CABINET vs COUNCIL OF MINISTERS

2341. Council of Ministers: Larger body.

2342. Cabinet: Smaller inner body.

2343. Cabinet: Includes only Cabinet-rank ministers.

2344. Council: Includes Cabinet Ministers and Ministers of State and other ministers as appointed.

2345. Decision Making: Major government decisions are generally taken by the Cabinet.

2346. Collective Responsibility: Applies to the entire Council of Ministers.

COLLECTIVE RESPONSIBILITY

2347. Article 75(3): Council of Ministers is collectively responsible to the **Lok Sabha**.

2348. Collective Responsibility: All ministers are jointly responsible for government decisions.

2349. Confidence: Government must retain the confidence of Lok Sabha.

2350. No Confidence Motion: Parliamentary procedure through which Lok Sabha can express that it no longer has confidence in the Council of Ministers.

2351. If No Confidence Is Passed: The Council of Ministers normally resigns.

INDIVIDUAL RESPONSIBILITY

2352. Article 75(2): Ministers hold office during the pleasure of the President.

2353. Practical Meaning: The President normally acts on the advice of the Prime Minister.

2354. Minister's Resignation: A minister may resign from office.

2355. Removal: Prime Minister may recommend removal of a minister.

SIZE OF COUNCIL OF MINISTERS

2356. 91st Constitutional Amendment Act, 2003: Limited the size of the Union and State Councils of Ministers.

2357. Union Limit: Total number of ministers, including Prime Minister, cannot exceed **15% of the total strength of Lok Sabha**.

2358. State Limit: Total number of ministers, including Chief Minister, cannot exceed **15% of the total strength of the Legislative Assembly**.

2359. Minimum for States: Council of Ministers in a State cannot have fewer than **12 members**.

APPOINTMENT OF MINISTERS

2360. Article 75: President appoints ministers on the advice of the Prime Minister.

2361. Cabinet Ministers: Appointed by President on Prime Minister's advice.

2362. Ministers of State: Appointed by President on Prime Minister's advice.

2363. Oath: Ministers take oath of office and secrecy before the President.

2364. Article 75(4): Oath is prescribed in the **Third Schedule**.

MINISTER WHO IS NOT AN MP

2365. Important: A person who is not a member of either House of Parliament can become a minister.

2366. Six-Month Rule: Such a person must become a member of either House within **6 consecutive months**.

2367. If Not Elected: Must cease to be a minister after six months.

MINISTER AND PARLIAMENT

2368. Minister: Can belong to either Lok Sabha or Rajya Sabha.

2369. Cabinet Minister: May be a member of either House.

2370. Accountability: Ministers are politically accountable to Parliament, especially to Lok Sabha because of collective responsibility.

2371. Parliamentary Accountability: Ministers answer questions and participate in parliamentary debates and legislative work.

PORTFOLIO

2372. Portfolio: Particular ministry or area of government work assigned to a minister.

2373. Example: Finance, Defence, Home Affairs, Education, External Affairs.

2374. Allocation: Prime Minister allocates portfolios to ministers.

2375. Reshuffle: Changing ministers or their portfolios.

MINISTRIES AND DEPARTMENTS

2376. Ministry: Major administrative unit of the Central Government headed politically by a minister.

2377. Department: Administrative division within a ministry or, in some cases, an independently organised government unit.

2378. Secretary: Senior civil servant who heads the administrative side of a ministry/department.

2379. Minister: Political head.

2380. Secretary: Administrative head.

2381. Important: Political executive and permanent executive work together.

POLITICAL EXECUTIVE

2382. Political Executive: Elected or politically appointed leadership of government.

2383. Includes: Prime Minister and Ministers.

2384. Political Executive: Changes with changes in government.

PERMANENT EXECUTIVE

2385. Permanent Executive: Civil servants who continue in government service regardless of changes in elected governments.

2386. Civil Servants: Career government officials.

2387. Main Role: Provide administrative expertise and implement government policies.

2388. Example: IAS, IPS, Indian Revenue Service and other civil services.

CABINET SECRETARIAT

2389. Cabinet Secretariat: Central coordinating organisation supporting the Cabinet and its committees.

2390. Head: Cabinet Secretary.

2391. Cabinet Secretary: Senior-most civil servant at the Union level.

2392. Main Functions:

- Supports Cabinet decision-making.
- Coordinates among ministries.
- Facilitates implementation and monitoring of Cabinet decisions.
- Provides secretarial support to Cabinet Committees.

2393. Important: Cabinet Secretariat is part of the Union Government's administrative machinery.

RULES OF BUSINESS

2394. Article 77: Deals with conduct of business of the Government of India.

2395. President: Makes rules for allocation of business among ministers and transaction of government business.

2396. Practical Administration: These functions operate through the **Government of India (Transaction of Business) Rules** and **Allocation of Business Rules**.

2397. Purpose: Clearly distribute government work among ministries and departments.

PRIME MINISTER'S CENTRAL ROLE

2398. Prime Minister: Leader of the Council of Ministers.

2399. Advises President: On appointment of other ministers.

2400. Allocates Portfolios: Assigns departments.

2401. Coordinates Ministries: Ensures coordination among departments.

2402. Chairs Cabinet Meetings: Prime Minister presides over Cabinet meetings.

2403. Government Leadership: Provides overall policy direction.

KITCHEN CABINET

2404. Kitchen Cabinet: Informal group of trusted advisers around the Prime Minister.

2405. Nature: Not a constitutional or statutory body.

2406. Members: May include ministers, political advisers and other trusted persons.

2407. Purpose: Informal consultation and political advice.

2408. Important: It is different from the formal Cabinet.

CABINET COMMITTEES

2409. Cabinet Committees: Smaller groups of ministers dealing with specific subjects.

2410. Purpose: Detailed consideration of important policy matters.

2411. Examples: Committees may deal with:

- Security.
- Economic Affairs.
- Political Affairs.
- Parliamentary Affairs.
- Appointments.

2412. Composition: Decided by the Prime Minister and can change.

2413. Important: Cabinet Committees are generally **extra-constitutional bodies**.

2414. Extra-Constitutional: Not created directly by the Constitution.

ATTORNEY GENERAL OF INDIA

2415. Attorney General: Highest law officer of India.

2416. Article 76: Provides for the Attorney General of India.

2417. Appointment: Appointed by the **President**.

2418. Qualification: Must be qualified to be appointed as a **Judge of the Supreme Court**.

2419. Main Functions:

- Gives legal advice to the Government of India.
- Performs legal duties assigned by the President.
- Represents the Union Government in courts when required.

RIGHTS IN PARLIAMENT

2420. Attorney General: Has the right to speak and participate in proceedings of Parliament and its committees.

2421. Important: Attorney General **does not have the right to vote** in Parliament.

2422. Term: Constitution does not fix a specific term.

2423. Office: Holds office during the pleasure of the President.

SOLICITOR GENERAL

2424. Solicitor General of India: Important law officer assisting the Attorney General.

2425. Additional Solicitors General: Assist the Union Government in legal matters.

2426. Important: Unlike the Attorney General, the Solicitor General is **not a constitutional office**.

UNION EXECUTIVE — EASY STRUCTURE

2427. President → Constitutional Head

2428. Vice-President → Rajya Sabha Chairman

2429. Prime Minister → Head of Government

2430. Council of Ministers → Assists and advises President

2431. Cabinet → Main policy-making body

2432. Cabinet Ministers → Senior ministers

2433. Ministers of State → Assist or independently handle assigned departments

2434. Attorney General → Highest Law Officer

2435. Civil Services → Permanent administrative machinery

IMPORTANT ARTICLES

2436. Article 74 → Council of Ministers to aid and advise President.

2437. Article 75 → Other provisions as to Ministers.

2438. Article 76 → Attorney General of India.

2439. Article 77 → Conduct of business of Government of India.

2440. Article 78 → Duties of Prime Minister regarding President.

2441. Article 88 → Rights of Ministers and Attorney General in Parliament.

2442. Article 352 → Cabinet's written advice required for National Emergency.

IMPORTANT TERMS

2443. Council of Ministers: All ministers collectively.

2444. Cabinet: Smaller group of senior ministers taking major policy decisions.

2445. Collective Responsibility: Entire Council stands together before Lok Sabha.

2446. Portfolio: Department or area assigned to a minister.

2447. Reshuffle: Change in ministerial portfolios or ministers.

2448. Political Executive: Political leadership of government.

2449. Permanent Executive: Career civil servants.

2450. Cabinet Secretariat: Organisation supporting and coordinating Cabinet work.

2451. Cabinet Secretary: Senior-most civil servant heading the Cabinet Secretariat.

2452. Kitchen Cabinet: Informal group of trusted advisers.

2453. Constitutional Body: Body directly created by the Constitution.

2454. Statutory Body: Body created by an Act of Parliament or State Legislature.

2455. Extra-Constitutional Body: Body not created directly by the Constitution.

2456. Law Officer: Government lawyer who provides legal advice or representation.

QUICK REVISION

2457. Union Executive → Part V, Chapter I.

2458. Council of Ministers → Article 74.

2459. Ministers → Article 75.

2460. Attorney General → Article 76.

2461. Government Business → Article 77.

2462. PM's Duties → Article 78.

2463. Collective Responsibility → Article 75(3).

2464. Maximum Union Ministers → 15% of Lok Sabha strength.

2465. 15% Limit → 91st Constitutional Amendment, 2003.

2466. Non-MP Minister → Must become MP within 6 months.

2467. Cabinet → Smaller body within Council of Ministers.

2468. Cabinet Committees → Generally extra-constitutional bodies.

2469. Cabinet Secretary → Head of Cabinet Secretariat.

2470. Attorney General → Highest Law Officer of India.

2471. Attorney General → Article 76.

2472. Attorney General can speak in Parliament → Yes.

2473. Attorney General can vote in Parliament → No.

Y. PARLIAMENT OF INDIA

BASIC INFORMATION

2474. Parliament of India: The supreme legislative body (law-making body) of the Union.

2475. Constitutional Basis: Part V, Chapter II — Articles 79–122.

2476. Article 79: Parliament consists of:

- **President**
- **Rajya Sabha**
- **Lok Sabha**

2477. Important: President is an integral part of Parliament, although the President is **not a member of either House**.

2478. Two Houses:
Rajya Sabha → Council of States
Lok Sabha → House of the People

2479. Bicameral Legislature: Legislature having two Houses.

2480. India: Has a **bicameral Parliament**.

RAJYA SABHA

2481. Rajya Sabha: Upper House of Parliament.

2482. Other Name: Council of States.

2483. Article 80: Deals with composition of Rajya Sabha.

2484. Maximum Constitutional Strength: 250 members.

2485. Elected Members: Up to **238 representatives of States and Union Territories**.

2486. Nominated Members: 12 members nominated by the President.

2487. Nominated Members: Persons having special knowledge or practical experience in:

- Literature.
- Science.
- Art.
- Social service.

2488. Present Constitutional Maximum: 250.

2489. Important: The actual strength can be lower than the constitutional maximum.

RAJYA SABHA ELECTION

2490. State Representatives: Elected by elected members of State Legislative Assemblies.

2491. Method: Proportional representation by means of **Single Transferable Vote (STV)**.

2492. Voting: Open ballot system, subject to election law.

2493. Union Territories: Representation is provided according to constitutional/statutory provisions.

RAJYA SABHA — PERMANENT HOUSE

2494. Rajya Sabha: Is a **permanent House**.

2495. Dissolution: Rajya Sabha is never dissolved.

2496. Retirement: Approximately **one-third of its members retire every second year**.

2497. Term of Member: 6 years.

2498. Election: Biennial (every two years) elections are held for retiring members.

QUALIFICATION FOR RAJYA SABHA

2499. Article 84: Candidate must:

- Be a citizen of India.
- Be at least **30 years old**.
- Fulfil other qualifications prescribed by law.

2500. Minimum Age: Rajya Sabha → **30 years**.

2501. Lok Sabha: Minimum age → **25 years**.

LOK SABHA

2502. Lok Sabha: Lower House of Parliament.

2503. Other Name: House of the People.

2504. Article 81: Deals with composition of Lok Sabha.

2505. Maximum Constitutional Strength: 550 elected members from States and Union Territories under the current constitutional arrangement.

2506. Important Constitutional Change: The Constitution originally provided for up to 530 members from States and 20 from Union Territories, with provision for nominated Anglo-Indian members under Article 331.

2507. Anglo-Indian Nomination: The provision allowing nomination of Anglo-Indian members to Lok Sabha ceased to operate after the **104th Constitutional Amendment Act, 2019**.

2508. Present Position: Lok Sabha consists of elected representatives.

LOK SABHA ELECTION

2509. Election: Members are directly elected by the people.

2510. Method: First-Past-the-Post (FPTP).

2511. Constituencies: Each elected member represents a territorial constituency.

2512. Universal Adult Suffrage: Citizens aged 18 years and above, subject to law, can vote.

QUALIFICATION FOR LOK SABHA

2513. Article 84: Candidate must:

- Be a citizen of India.
- Be at least **25 years old**.
- Fulfil other qualifications prescribed by Parliament.

2514. Minimum Age: Lok Sabha → **25 years**.

TERM OF LOK SABHA

2515. Article 83: Normal term → **5 years**.

2516. Dissolution: Lok Sabha may be dissolved earlier.

2517. National Emergency: During a National Emergency, Parliament may extend the term of Lok Sabha by law for **one year at a time**.

2518. Limitation: Such extension cannot continue beyond **six months after the Emergency ends**.

SPEAKER OF LOK SABHA

2519. Article 93: Lok Sabha chooses:

- Speaker.
- Deputy Speaker.

2520. Speaker: Presiding officer of Lok Sabha.

2521. Main Functions:

- Conducts proceedings.
- Maintains order.
- Decides points of order.
- Interprets rules of procedure.
- Certifies whether a Bill is a Money Bill.
- Presides over joint sittings of Parliament.

2522. Important: Speaker's decision on whether a Bill is a Money Bill is constitutionally significant and subject to judicial review within constitutional limits.

DEPUTY SPEAKER

2523. Deputy Speaker: Presides over Lok Sabha when Speaker is absent.

2524. Article: 93.

2525. Important: Deputy Speaker is elected by Lok Sabha.

SPEAKER'S REMOVAL

2526. Speaker: Can be removed by a resolution of Lok Sabha passed by a **majority of all the then members of the House**.

2527. Notice: At least **14 days' notice** is required.

2528. During Consideration: Speaker does not preside over the sitting when a resolution for their removal is under consideration.

CHAIRMAN OF RAJYA SABHA

2529. Chairman: Vice-President of India is the **ex-officio Chairman** of Rajya Sabha.

2530. Article 64: Vice-President serves as Chairman.

2531. Main Functions:

- Presides over Rajya Sabha.
- Maintains order.
- Decides procedural matters according to rules.

2532. Casting Vote: Chairman votes only in case of equality of votes.

DEPUTY CHAIRMAN OF RAJYA SABHA

2533. Article 89: Rajya Sabha chooses a Deputy Chairman from among its members.

2534. Function: Performs Chairman's duties when Chairman is absent or office is vacant.

PARLIAMENTARY SESSIONS

2535. Article 85: President summons Parliament.

2536. Maximum Gap: Not more than **6 months** can intervene between two sessions.

2537. Session: Period during which Parliament meets and conducts business.

2538. Common Sessions:

- Budget Session.
- Monsoon Session.
- Winter Session.

2539. Important: These names are parliamentary practice, not directly fixed by the Constitution.

SUMMONING

2540. Summon: President calls Parliament to meet.

2541. Prorogation: Ends a session of Parliament.

2542. Dissolution: Ends the life of Lok Sabha.

2543. Important: Rajya Sabha is not dissolved.

ADJOURNMENT

2544. Adjournment: Suspension of a sitting for a specified period.

2545. Adjournment Sine Die: Ending a sitting without fixing a date for the next sitting.

2546. Difference: Adjournment does not end the session.

QUORUM

2547. Quorum: Minimum number of members required to conduct business.

2548. Article 100: Quorum is **one-tenth of the total number of members** of the House.

2549. Important: If quorum is absent, the House may be adjourned or suspended according to the rules.

JOINT SITTING

2550. Article 108: Joint sitting of both Houses can be called in case of disagreement over an ordinary Bill.

2551. Joint Sitting: Lok Sabha and Rajya Sabha meet together.

2552. Presiding Officer: Speaker of Lok Sabha.

2553. Joint Sitting Not Used For:

- Money Bills.
- Constitutional Amendment Bills.

2554. Main Purpose: Resolve deadlock between the two Houses on an ordinary Bill.

PARLIAMENTARY DEADLOCK

2555. Deadlock: Situation where both Houses cannot agree on a Bill.

2556. Joint Sitting May Occur When:

- One House rejects the Bill.
- Houses disagree on amendments.
- More than six months pass without the other House passing the Bill.

MONEY BILL

2557. Article 110: Defines Money Bill.

2558. Money Bill: Bill dealing only with matters specified in Article 110, such as taxation, borrowing of money and custody/withdrawal of money from the Consolidated Fund of India.

2559. Introduction: Can be introduced **only in Lok Sabha**.

2560. Recommendation: Requires recommendation of the President.

2561. Rajya Sabha: Cannot reject or amend a Money Bill.

2562. Time: Rajya Sabha must return a Money Bill within **14 days**.

2563. Lok Sabha: May accept or reject recommendations of Rajya Sabha.

2564. Certification: Speaker of Lok Sabha certifies a Bill as a Money Bill.

FINANCIAL BILL

2565. Financial Bill: Bill relating to financial matters but not necessarily satisfying the strict definition of Money Bill.

2566. Article 117: Deals with Financial Bills.

2567. Important: Every Money Bill is a Financial Bill in a broad sense, but **every Financial Bill is not a Money Bill**.

ORDINARY BILL

2568. Ordinary Bill: Bill dealing with matters other than those specifically classified as Money Bills or other special categories.

2569. Introduction: Can originate in either House.

2570. Passage: Must be passed by both Houses.

2571. Joint Sitting: Possible in case of constitutional deadlock, subject to Article 108.

CONSTITUTIONAL AMENDMENT BILL

2572. Article 368: Constitutional amendment procedure.

2573. Introduction: Can be introduced in either House.

2574. Joint Sitting: No joint sitting.

2575. Special Majority: Generally requires:

- Majority of total membership of each House.
- Two-thirds of members present and voting.

2576. State Ratification: Certain amendments additionally require ratification by at least **half of the State Legislatures**.

BILL — BASIC PROCESS

2577. Bill: Proposed law.

2578. First Reading: Introduction of Bill.

2579. Second Reading: Detailed discussion and consideration.

2580. Committee Stage: Bill may be examined by a Parliamentary Committee.

2581. Third Reading: Final consideration and voting.

2582. Other House: Bill follows the required procedure in the other House.

2583. President: After Parliament passes the Bill, it is presented to the President.

2584. Act: After required presidential assent, the Bill becomes law.

PARLIAMENTARY COMMITTEES

2585. Parliamentary Committee: Smaller group of MPs that examines specific matters in detail.

2586. Purpose: Detailed scrutiny of government work, expenditure, Bills and policies.

2587. Main Types:

- Standing Committees.
- Ad Hoc Committees.

2588. Standing Committee: Permanent or regularly constituted committee.

2589. Ad Hoc Committee: Temporary committee formed for a specific purpose.

IMPORTANT FINANCIAL COMMITTEES

2590. Public Accounts Committee (PAC): Examines government expenditure and reports of the **Comptroller and Auditor General (CAG)**.

2591. Estimates Committee: Examines estimates of government expenditure and suggests improvements in economy and efficiency.

2592. Committee on Public Undertakings (COPU): Examines reports and working of public sector undertakings within its mandate.

PUBLIC ACCOUNTS COMMITTEE

2593. PAC: Public Accounts Committee.

2594. Members: 22 members — 15 from Lok Sabha and 7 from Rajya Sabha.

2595. Election: Members are elected annually by Parliament using proportional representation by single transferable vote.

2596. Minister: A minister cannot be a member of PAC.

2597. Main Function: Examines appropriation accounts, annual finance accounts and CAG reports.

ESTIMATES COMMITTEE

2598. Estimates Committee: Has **30 members**.

2599. Members: All from Lok Sabha.

2600. Rajya Sabha: Does not have members in the Estimates Committee.

2601. Main Function: Examines budget estimates and suggests economies and improvements.

COMMITTEE ON PUBLIC UNDERTAKINGS

2602. COPU: Committee on Public Undertakings.

2603. Members: 22 members — 15 Lok Sabha + 7 Rajya Sabha.

2604. Main Function: Examines reports and accounts of specified public sector undertakings.

PARLIAMENTARY PRIVILEGES

2605. Parliamentary Privilege: Special rights and immunities necessary for Parliament and its members to function effectively.

2606. Article 105: Parliamentary privileges of Parliament and its members.

2607. Main Privileges:

- Freedom of speech in Parliament.
- Immunity for certain things said or votes given in Parliament, subject to constitutional provisions.
- Right to regulate internal proceedings.
- Certain protections relating to publication of parliamentary proceedings as provided by law/constitutional provisions.

FREEDOM OF SPEECH

2608. Article 105: Members have freedom of speech in Parliament.

2609. Important: This is **not identical to Article 19(1)(a)**.

2610. Restriction: Parliamentary rules and constitutional limitations apply.

QUESTION HOUR

2611. Question Hour: Period when MPs ask questions to ministers.

2612. Purpose: Obtain information and hold government accountable.

2613. Types of Questions:

- Starred Questions.
- Unstarred Questions.
- Short Notice Questions.

2614. Starred Question: Answered orally and allows supplementary questions.

2615. Unstarred Question: Answered in writing; no supplementary questions.

2616. Short Notice Question: Asked with shorter notice than the ordinary prescribed period, on a matter of urgent public importance, subject to the rules.

ZERO HOUR

2617. Zero Hour: Period when members raise matters of urgent public importance after Question Hour.

2618. Important: Zero Hour is a **parliamentary practice**, not expressly mentioned in the Constitution.

MOTIONS

2619. Motion: Formal proposal placed before the House for discussion or decision.

2620. No-Confidence Motion: Motion expressing lack of confidence in the Council of Ministers.

2621. Confidence Motion: Motion through which government demonstrates majority support.

2622. Adjournment Motion: Raises a definite matter of urgent public importance and seeks to interrupt normal business, subject to parliamentary rules.

2623. Censure Motion: Expresses disapproval of a specific policy or action of the government.

BUDGET

2624. Budget: Annual financial statement of government income and expenditure.

2625. Constitutional Name: Annual Financial Statement.

2626. Article 112: Union Budget.

2627. Presented: On behalf of the President before Parliament.

2628. Main Components: Estimated receipts and expenditure of the Government of India.

VOTE ON ACCOUNT

2629. Vote on Account: Advance grant allowing government to meet essential expenditure for a limited period before the full budget is passed.

2630. Purpose: Prevent interruption of government functioning.

SUPPLEMENTARY GRANT

2631. Supplementary Grant: Additional amount required when the amount authorised for a service is insufficient.

EXCESS GRANT

2632. Excess Grant: Grant required when expenditure has already exceeded the amount authorised by Parliament.

VOTE OF CREDIT

2633. Vote of Credit: Grant for an unexpected demand where the details cannot be stated in the usual manner, especially in exceptional circumstances.

TOKEN GRANT

2634. Token Grant: Small grant used to facilitate provision for a new service by reappropriation according to parliamentary procedure.

2635. Reappropriation: Transfer of funds from one budget head to another within permitted rules.

CONSOLIDATED FUND OF INDIA

2636. Article 266: Consolidated Fund of India.

2637. Main Government Account: All revenues received by the Government of India, loans raised by it and money received in repayment of loans generally form part of the Consolidated Fund.

2638. Withdrawal: Money cannot normally be withdrawn without parliamentary authorisation.

PUBLIC ACCOUNT OF INDIA

2639. Public Account: Money other than Consolidated Fund money received by or on behalf of the Government of India.

2640. Article: 266.

2641. Important: Government holds these funds as a banker/trustee-like custodian according to law.

CONTINGENCY FUND

2642. Article 267: Contingency Fund of India.

2643. Purpose: Provides advances for urgent unforeseen expenditure pending authorisation by Parliament.

2644. Authority: Placed at the disposal of the President.

PARLIAMENTARY CONTROL OVER FINANCE

2645. Parliament: Controls public expenditure through:

- Budget approval.
- Demands for Grants.
- Appropriation.
- Financial Committees.
- Audit reports.

2646. CAG: Audits government accounts and reports to the legislature.

IMPORTANT ARTICLES OF PARLIAMENT

2647. Article 79 → Constitution of Parliament.

2648. Article 80 → Rajya Sabha composition.

2649. Article 81 → Lok Sabha composition.

2650. Article 82 → Readjustment after each census.

2651. Article 83 → Duration of Houses.

2652. Article 84 → Qualifications for membership.

2653. Article 85 → Sessions of Parliament.

2654. Article 86 → President's right to address/send messages.

2655. Article 87 → Special Address.

2656. Article 88 → Rights of Ministers and Attorney General.

2657. Article 89 → Chairman and Deputy Chairman of Rajya Sabha.

2658. Article 93 → Speaker and Deputy Speaker of Lok Sabha.

2659. Article 100 → Voting and quorum.

2660. Article 105 → Parliamentary privileges.

2661. Article 108 → Joint Sitting.

2662. Article 109 → Special procedure for Money Bills.

2663. Article 110 → Definition of Money Bill.

2664. Article 111 → President's assent.

2665. Article 112 → Annual Financial Statement.

2666. Article 113 → Demands for Grants.

2667. Article 114 → Appropriation Bills.

2668. Article 115 → Supplementary, additional or excess grants.

2669. Article 116 → Votes on account, votes of credit and exceptional grants.

2670. Article 117 → Special provisions as to financial Bills.

2671. Article 118 → Rules of procedure.

2672. Article 119 → Regulation by law of procedure in Parliament in relation to financial business.

2673. Article 120 → Language in Parliament.

2674. Article 121 → Restriction on discussion regarding conduct of judges.

2675. Article 122 → Courts not to inquire into proceedings of Parliament, subject to constitutional limits.

2676. Article 123 → President's Ordinance power.

IMPORTANT TERMS

2677. Bicameral: Having two Houses.

2678. Unicameral: Having one House.

2679. Legislature: Law-making body.

2680. Presiding Officer: Person who conducts proceedings of a House.

2681. Quorum: Minimum members required to conduct business.

2682. Prorogation: Ending a parliamentary session.

2683. Dissolution: Ending the life of Lok Sabha.

2684. Adjournment: Suspending a sitting.

2685. Money Bill: Bill dealing exclusively with matters specified in Article 110.

2686. Financial Bill: Bill dealing with specified financial matters under Article 117.

2687. Appropriation: Legal authority to withdraw money from the Consolidated Fund.

2688. Grant: Amount authorised by Parliament for government expenditure.

2689. Privilege: Special right or immunity necessary for parliamentary functioning.

2690. Deadlock: Failure of Houses to agree on a Bill.

QUICK REVISION

2691. Parliament → President + Rajya Sabha + Lok Sabha.

2692. Parliament Article → 79.

2693. Upper House → Rajya Sabha.

2694. Lower House → Lok Sabha.

2695. Rajya Sabha → Permanent House.

2696. Rajya Sabha Member Term → 6 years.

2697. One-third Rajya Sabha Members → Retire every 2 years.

2698. Lok Sabha Normal Term → 5 years.

2699. Rajya Sabha Maximum Strength → 250.

2700. Nominated Rajya Sabha Members → 12.

2701. Rajya Sabha Minimum Age → 30.

2702. Lok Sabha Minimum Age → 25.

2703. Lok Sabha Election → Direct + FPTP.

2704. Rajya Sabha State Election → Indirect + STV.

2705. Rajya Sabha Chairman → Vice-President.

2706. Lok Sabha Presiding Officer → Speaker.

2707. Quorum → One-tenth.

2708. Money Bill → Article 110.

2709. Money Bill Introduction → Lok Sabha only.

2710. Rajya Sabha Money Bill Time → 14 days.

2711. Joint Sitting → Article 108.

2712. Joint Sitting → Not for Money Bills or Constitutional Amendment Bills.

2713. Parliamentary Privileges → Article 105.

2714. Annual Financial Statement → Article 112.

2715. Vote on Account → Article 116.

2716. Constitutional Amendment → Article 368.

2717. No-Confidence Motion → Council of Ministers' responsibility to Lok Sabha.

2718. Zero Hour → Parliamentary practice, not constitutional provision.

Z. SUPREME COURT OF INDIA

BASIC INFORMATION

2719. Supreme Court of India: The highest court in India.

2720. Constitutional Basis: Part V, Chapter IV — Articles 124–147.

2721. Article 124: Establishment and constitution of the Supreme Court.

2722. Supreme Court: Final court of appeal (highest court for appeals).

2723. Supreme Court: Guardian of the Constitution.

2724. Supreme Court: Protector of Fundamental Rights.

2725. Supreme Court: Highest judicial authority in India.

2726. Seat: Delhi is the principal seat of the Supreme Court.

2727. Additional Place: The Chief Justice of India may appoint another place or places as the seat of the Supreme Court with the President's approval.

ESTABLISHMENT

2728. Supreme Court: Came into existence on **28 January 1950**.

2729. Important Date: It was inaugurated two days after the Constitution came into force.

2730. Constitution Came into Force: 26 January 1950.

2731. First Chief Justice of India: Justice H. J. Kania.

COMPOSITION

2732. Supreme Court: Consists of the **Chief Justice of India (CJI)** and other judges as Parliament may prescribe by law.

2733. Current Statutory Strength: Up to **34 judges including the Chief Justice of India**.

2734. Important: The Constitution itself does not permanently fix the number of judges; Parliament can change it by law.

CHIEF JUSTICE OF INDIA

2735. Chief Justice of India: Head of the Supreme Court.

2736. CJI: Presides over the Supreme Court and performs important administrative functions.

2737. Appointment: CJI is appointed by the **President of India**.

2738. Convention: Normally, the senior-most Supreme Court judge considered fit is appointed as CJI.

2739. Seniority: Seniority generally refers to the length of service as a Supreme Court judge, along with established conventions.

APPOINTMENT OF SUPREME COURT JUDGES

2740. Article 124: Supreme Court judges are formally appointed by the President.

2741. Present System: Appointment operates through the **collegium system**, subject to the constitutional framework and judicial decisions.

2742. Collegium: Group of senior judges that recommends judicial appointments and transfers.

2743. Supreme Court Collegium: Consists of the **CJI + four senior-most Supreme Court judges**.

2744. Important: Collegium is **not expressly mentioned in the Constitution**.

THREE JUDGES CASES

2745. First Judges Case — 1981: S. P. Gupta v. Union of India.

2746. Second Judges Case — 1993: Supreme Court Advocates-on-Record Association v. Union of India.

2747. Third Judges Case — 1998: Presidential Reference clarified the functioning of the collegium.

2748. Result: The present collegium system developed through these judicial decisions.

NJAC

2749. NJAC: National Judicial Appointments Commission.

2750. 99th Constitutional Amendment Act, 2014: Sought to establish NJAC.

2751. NJAC Act, 2014: Provided the statutory framework for the commission.

2752. Supreme Court Decision: In **2015**, the Supreme Court struck down the 99th Amendment and NJAC Act.

2753. Result: Collegium system continued.

QUALIFICATIONS OF SUPREME COURT JUDGE

2754. Article 124(3): A person must:

- Be a citizen of India.
- Have been a High Court judge for at least **5 years**, or
- Have been an advocate of a High Court for at least **10 years**, or
- Be a **distinguished jurist (highly respected legal expert)** in the opinion of the President.

2755. Distinguished Jurist: A person with exceptional knowledge and standing in law.

OATH

2756. Article 124: Supreme Court judges take an oath or affirmation.

2757. Oath: Taken before the President or a person appointed by the President.

2758. Third Schedule: Contains the form of oath.

RETIREMENT

2759. Retirement Age: Supreme Court judge retires at **65 years**.

2760. High Court Judge: Retirement age is **62 years**.

2761. Important Difference: Supreme Court → 65; High Court → 62.

REMOVAL OF JUDGES

2762. Supreme Court Judge: Cannot be removed simply by the President's discretion.

2763. Removal: President removes a judge only after Parliament passes an address supported by the required special majority.

2764. Grounds: Proved misbehaviour or incapacity.

2765. Misbehaviour: Serious improper conduct.

2766. Incapacity: Inability to perform judicial duties.

2767. Parliamentary Majority Required:

- Majority of total membership of each House, and
- Two-thirds of members present and voting.

2768. Important: Both Houses must pass the address.

2769. Judicial Removal: Often referred to as **impeachment**, although the Constitution technically uses the expression "removal" rather than a separate impeachment process for judges.

INDEPENDENCE OF JUDICIARY

2770. Judicial Independence: Courts must be able to decide cases without improper political or external pressure.

2771. Constitutional Safeguards:

- Security of tenure.
- Difficult removal procedure.
- Salaries and allowances charged on the Consolidated Fund of India.
- Parliament cannot reduce salary/allowances after appointment except under constitutionally permitted circumstances such as a financial emergency.
- Restrictions on discussion of judges' conduct in Parliament except upon a removal motion.
- Separation of judiciary from executive.

JURISDICTION OF SUPREME COURT

2772. Jurisdiction: Legal authority of a court to hear and decide cases.

2773. Main Jurisdictions:

- Original jurisdiction.
- Writ jurisdiction.
- Appellate jurisdiction.
- Advisory jurisdiction.
- Review jurisdiction.

- Special Leave jurisdiction.

ORIGINAL JURISDICTION

2774. Article 131: Supreme Court has original jurisdiction in certain disputes involving:

- Union Government and one or more States.
- Union and one or more States on one side and other States on the other.
- Two or more States.

2775. Original Jurisdiction: Case starts directly in the Supreme Court.

2776. Important: Article 131 applies only to disputes involving legal rights of the specified governments and subject to constitutional/statutory limitations.

WRIT JURISDICTION

2777. Article 32: Supreme Court can issue writs for enforcement of **Fundamental Rights**.

2778. Writ: Formal order issued by a court.

2779. Five Constitutional Writs:

- Habeas Corpus.
- Mandamus.
- Prohibition.
- Certiorari.
- Quo Warranto.

HABEAS CORPUS

2780. Habeas Corpus: Means **"to have the body"**.

2781. Purpose: Protects a person against unlawful detention.

2782. Main Idea: Court can order that a detained person be brought before it.

MANDAMUS

2783. Mandamus: Means **"we command"**.

2784. Purpose: Commands a public authority to perform a legal duty.

2785. Public Authority: Government body or official performing public functions.

PROHIBITION

2786. Prohibition: Prevents a lower court or tribunal from continuing proceedings beyond its jurisdiction.

2787. Issued: Generally before the lower court/tribunal has completed the case.

CERTIORARI

2788. Certiorari: Used to quash (cancel) an order of a lower court or tribunal when it has acted without jurisdiction or with a serious legal error, subject to judicial principles.

2789. Generally: Operates after an order/decision has been made.

QUO WARRANTO

2790. Quo Warranto: Means **"by what authority?"**

2791. Purpose: Challenges the legal authority of a person occupying a public office.

2792. Public Office: Office created by the Constitution, law or other legally valid authority.

ARTICLE 32

2793. Article 32: Right to move the Supreme Court for enforcement of Fundamental Rights.

2794. Dr. B. R. Ambedkar: Described Article 32 as the **"heart and soul" of the Constitution**.

2795. Important: Article 32 itself is a Fundamental Right.

ARTICLE 226 vs ARTICLE 32

2796. Supreme Court → Article 32.

2797. High Courts → Article 226.

2798. Article 32: Primarily for enforcement of Fundamental Rights.

2799. Article 226: Fundamental Rights **and other legal rights**.

2800. Important: High Courts therefore have a wider writ jurisdiction in terms of the kinds of rights that can be enforced.

APPELLATE JURISDICTION

2801. Appellate Jurisdiction: Power to hear appeals against decisions of lower courts.

2802. Supreme Court: Highest appellate court in India.

2803. Appeals: Can arise from constitutional, civil and criminal matters under constitutional and statutory provisions.

SPECIAL LEAVE PETITION

2804. Article 136: Supreme Court may grant **Special Leave to Appeal (SLP)** from judgments, decrees, orders or determinations of courts/tribunals in India, subject to constitutional exclusions and limitations.

2805. SLP: Special permission to appeal.

2806. Important: It is a discretionary power.

2807. Armed Forces: Article 136 excludes courts or tribunals constituted under laws relating to the Armed Forces.

ADVISORY JURISDICTION

2808. Article 143: President can refer questions of law or fact of public importance to the Supreme Court for its opinion.

2809. Advisory Jurisdiction: Court gives its opinion rather than deciding an ordinary adversarial dispute.

2810. Important: Supreme Court's advisory opinion under Article 143 is generally **not binding in the same manner as a judgment in an ordinary case**.

REVIEW JURISDICTION

2811. Article 137: Supreme Court can review its own judgments or orders, subject to law and rules.

2812. Review: Reconsideration of a judgment on limited legal grounds.

CURATIVE PETITION

2813. Curative Petition: Exceptional remedy developed by the Supreme Court to prevent gross miscarriage of justice after dismissal of a review petition.

2814. Constitutional Basis: Not expressly mentioned in the Constitution; developed through judicial precedent.

2815. Important Case: Rupa Ashok Hurra v. Ashok Hurra (2002).

COURT OF RECORD

2816. Article 129: Supreme Court is a **Court of Record**.

2817. Court of Record: Court whose records are permanently preserved and have evidentiary value.

2818. Contempt Power: Supreme Court has power to punish for contempt of itself.

2819. Contempt: Disobedience or conduct that undermines the authority of the court.

JUDICIAL REVIEW

2820. Judicial Review: Power of courts to examine whether laws and executive actions comply with the Constitution.

2821. Supreme Court: Major institution exercising judicial review.

2822. Purpose: Protect Constitution and constitutional rights.

BASIC STRUCTURE DOCTRINE

2823. Basic Structure Doctrine: Parliament can amend the Constitution but cannot destroy its basic structure.

2824. Landmark Case: Kesavananda Bharati v. State of Kerala (1973).

2825. Important: The Supreme Court developed the doctrine through judicial interpretation.

2826. Examples of Basic Features: Include constitutional supremacy, rule of law, judicial review, federalism, secularism, democracy and republican government, subject to judicial interpretation.

PUBLIC INTEREST LITIGATION

2827. PIL: Public Interest Litigation.

2828. Meaning: Litigation brought to protect public interest or rights of disadvantaged groups.

2829. Purpose: Makes access to justice easier in appropriate cases.

2830. Important: PIL has been an important tool in developing constitutional remedies.

EPICENTRE OF CONSTITUTIONAL PROTECTION

2831. Supreme Court: Protects Fundamental Rights through constitutional remedies.

2832. Article 13: Laws inconsistent with Fundamental Rights are subject to constitutional scrutiny.

2833. Article 32: Provides direct constitutional remedy before Supreme Court for Fundamental Rights.

ARTICLE 141

2834. Article 141: Law declared by the Supreme Court is binding on all courts within India.

2835. Binding Precedent: Lower courts must follow applicable legal principles laid down by the Supreme Court.

ARTICLE 142

2836. Article 142: Supreme Court can pass orders necessary for doing **complete justice** in a matter before it.

2837. Complete Justice: Power to provide effective relief to fully resolve a case, subject to constitutional and legal limits.

ARTICLE 144

2838. Article 144: All authorities, civil and judicial, in India shall act in aid of the Supreme Court.

2839. Meaning: Government and judicial authorities must assist in implementing Supreme Court directions.

ACTING CHIEF JUSTICE

2840. Article 126: President can appoint a Supreme Court judge as Acting Chief Justice when the office of CJI is vacant or the CJI is unable to perform duties.

AD HOC JUDGES

2841. Article 127: When there is a lack of quorum of Supreme Court judges, an eligible High Court judge may be requested to sit as an ad hoc judge, following constitutional procedure.

2842. Ad Hoc: Temporary appointment for a specific purpose.

RETIRED JUDGES

2843. Article 128: Chief Justice of India may, with the President's consent and according to constitutional conditions, request a retired Supreme Court or eligible High Court judge to sit and act as a Supreme Court judge.

OFFICERS AND STAFF

2844. Article 146: Appointments of officers and servants of the Supreme Court and conditions of service are governed by constitutional provisions and rules.

SUPREME COURT — IMPORTANT ARTICLES

2845. Article 124 → Establishment and constitution of Supreme Court.

2846. Article 125 → Salaries of judges.

2847. Article 126 → Acting Chief Justice.

2848. Article 127 → Ad hoc judges.

2849. Article 128 → Attendance of retired judges.

2850. Article 129 → Court of Record.

2851. Article 130 → Seat of Supreme Court.

2852. Article 131 → Original jurisdiction.

2853. Article 132 → Constitutional appeals from High Courts.

2854. Article 133 → Civil appeals.

2855. Article 134 → Criminal appeals.

2856. Article 134A → Certificate for appeal to Supreme Court.

2857. Article 135 → Federal Court jurisdiction under existing law in certain matters.

2858. Article 136 → Special Leave to Appeal.

2859. Article 137 → Review.

2860. Article 138 → Enlargement of jurisdiction.

2861. Article 139 → Conferment of writ powers.

2862. Article 139A → Transfer of certain cases.

2863. Article 140 → Ancillary powers.

2864. Article 141 → Law declared by Supreme Court binding on all courts.

2865. Article 142 → Complete justice.

2866. Article 143 → Advisory jurisdiction.

2867. Article 144 → Authorities to act in aid of Supreme Court.

2868. Article 145 → Rules of Court.

2869. Article 146 → Officers and servants.

2870. Article 147 → Interpretation.

IMPORTANT TERMS

2871. Judiciary: System of courts administering justice.

2872. Jurisdiction: Legal authority to hear and decide a matter.

2873. Original Jurisdiction: Case begins directly in that court.

2874. Appellate Jurisdiction: Power to hear appeals.

2875. Advisory Jurisdiction: Giving an opinion on a referred legal question.

2876. Writ: Formal judicial order.

2877. Collegium: Senior judges' body involved in recommending judicial appointments.

2878. Judicial Review: Checking laws and executive actions against the Constitution.

2879. Judicial Independence: Freedom of courts from improper interference.

2880. PIL: Litigation concerning public interest.

2881. Precedent: Earlier judicial decision used as guidance or binding law where applicable.

2882. Contempt: Conduct that disobeys or undermines the authority of a court.

2883. Curative: Exceptional final judicial remedy after review.

2884. Ad Hoc: Temporary arrangement for a specific purpose.

2885. Misbehaviour: Serious improper conduct.

2886. Incapacity: Inability to perform required duties.

QUICK REVISION

2887. Highest Court → Supreme Court of India.

2888. Established → 28 January 1950.

2889. First CJI → Justice H. J. Kania.

2890. Constitutional Basis → Articles 124–147.

2891. Present Maximum Strength → 34 judges including CJI.

2892. Retirement Age → 65 years.

2893. High Court Judge Retirement → 62 years.

2894. CJI Appointment → President.

2895. Judge Removal Grounds → Proved misbehaviour or incapacity.

2896. Original Jurisdiction → Article 131.

2897. Fundamental Rights Writs → Article 32.

2898. SLP → Article 136.

2899. Review → Article 137.

2900. Court of Record → Article 129.

2901. Advisory Jurisdiction → Article 143.

2902. Binding Law → Article 141.

2903. Complete Justice → Article 142.

2904. Judicial Review → Constitutional protection and judicial interpretation.

2905. Basic Structure Doctrine → Kesavananda Bharati Case, 1973.

2906. PIL → Public Interest Litigation.

2907. Five Writs → Habeas Corpus, Mandamus, Prohibition, Certiorari, Quo Warranto.

AA. HIGH COURTS OF INDIA

BASIC INFORMATION

2908. High Court: Highest court at the State level.

2909. Constitutional Basis: Part VI, Chapter V — Articles 214–231.

2910. Article 214: There shall be a High Court for each State.

2911. Important: The Constitution allows Parliament to establish a **common High Court for two or more States or for two or more States and a Union Territory**.

2912. Present High Courts: India has **25 High Courts**.

2913. High Court: Functions as the highest judicial authority within its territorial jurisdiction, subject to the Supreme Court.

HIGH COURT JUDGES

2914. Article 216: Every High Court consists of a **Chief Justice and such other judges as the President may appoint**.

2915. Number of Judges: There is no fixed constitutional number for every High Court.

2916. Chief Justice: Head of the High Court.

2917. Additional Judges: May be appointed for temporary increases in work or arrears, subject to constitutional provisions.

2918. Acting Judge: May be appointed when a judge is temporarily unable to perform duties.

APPOINTMENT OF HIGH COURT JUDGES

2919. Article 217: High Court judges are formally appointed by the **President of India**.

2920. Consultation: President consults:

- Chief Justice of India.
- Governor of the State.
- Chief Justice of the concerned High Court for appointment of a judge other than the Chief Justice.

2921. Present Practice: Judicial appointments operate through the **collegium system** developed through Supreme Court judgments.

HIGH COURT COLLEGIUM

2922. High Court Collegium: Consists of the **Chief Justice of the High Court and two senior-most judges** of that High Court.

2923. Role: Recommends appointments and transfers of High Court judges through the established constitutional/judicial process.

2924. Important: Collegium is **not expressly mentioned in the Constitution**.

QUALIFICATIONS

2925. Article 217: A person must:

- Be a citizen of India.
- Have held a judicial office in India for at least **10 years**, or
- Have been an advocate of a High Court or two or more such courts in succession for at least **10 years**.

2926. Minimum Age: Constitution does **not prescribe a minimum age** for appointment as a High Court judge.

RETIREMENT AGE

2927. High Court Judge: Retires at **62 years**.

2928. Supreme Court Judge: Retires at **65 years**.

2929. Easy Revision:
High Court → **62**
Supreme Court → **65**

TRANSFER OF JUDGES

2930. Article 222: President may transfer a High Court judge from one High Court to another after consultation with the **Chief Justice of India**.

2931. Transfer: Change of a judge from one High Court to another.

2932. Collegium: Plays the central role in recommending transfers under the present system.

REMOVAL OF HIGH COURT JUDGES

2933. Article 217: A High Court judge can be removed in the same manner and on the same grounds as a Supreme Court judge.

2934. Grounds:

- Proved misbehaviour.
- Incapacity.

2935. Procedure: Requires the constitutionally prescribed parliamentary process and subsequent order of the President.

2936. Important: Removal is not simply at the discretion of the Governor or President.

OATH

2937. Article 219: High Court judges take oath or affirmation before the **Governor of the State**, or a person appointed by the Governor.

2938. Third Schedule: Contains the form of oath.

JURISDICTION OF HIGH COURT

2939. Jurisdiction: Legal authority of a High Court to hear and decide cases.

2940. Main Jurisdictions:

- Original jurisdiction.
- Appellate jurisdiction.
- Writ jurisdiction.
- Supervisory jurisdiction.
- Judicial review.
- Administrative and constitutional functions.

WRIT JURISDICTION

2941. Article 226: High Courts can issue writs.

2942. Five Writs:

- Habeas Corpus.
- Mandamus.
- Prohibition.
- Certiorari.
- Quo Warranto.

2943. Important: High Courts can issue writs for:

- Enforcement of Fundamental Rights.
- **Other legal rights.**

2944. High Court Writ Jurisdiction: Therefore wider in scope than Article 32 jurisdiction of the Supreme Court.

HABEAS CORPUS

2945. Habeas Corpus: "To have the body."

2946. Purpose: Protects against unlawful detention.

2947. Court: Can order production of the detained person before the court.

MANDAMUS

2948. Mandamus: "We command."

2949. Purpose: Orders a public authority to perform a legal duty.

PROHIBITION

2950. Prohibition: Prevents a lower court or tribunal from continuing proceedings beyond its jurisdiction.

2951. Nature: Generally issued before the final decision.

CERTIORARI

2952. Certiorari: Can quash an order of a lower court or tribunal where legal requirements for the writ are satisfied.

2953. Nature: Generally operates after an order or decision has been made.

QUO WARRANTO

2954. Quo Warranto: "By what authority?"

2955. Purpose: Questions the legal authority of a person holding a public office.

SUPERVISORY JURISDICTION

2956. Article 227: Every High Court has superintendence (supervisory authority) over courts and tribunals within its territorial jurisdiction, subject to constitutional limitations.

2957. Superintendence: Power to supervise the functioning of subordinate courts and tribunals.

2958. Important: This power is broader than ordinary appellate jurisdiction.

COURT OF RECORD

2959. Article 215: Every High Court is a **Court of Record**.

2960. Meaning: Its records have permanent evidentiary value.

2961. Contempt: High Court has power to punish for contempt of itself.

JUDICIAL REVIEW

2962. High Court: Can review laws and executive actions for constitutional validity within its jurisdiction.

2963. Article 226: Important constitutional remedy.

2964. Article 227: Supervisory jurisdiction over subordinate courts and tribunals.

HIGH COURT AND FUNDAMENTAL RIGHTS

2965. High Court: Can protect Fundamental Rights through Article 226.

2966. Difference: High Court can also issue writs for **other legal rights**.

2967. Supreme Court Article 32: Primarily enforcement of Fundamental Rights.

HIGH COURT VS SUPREME COURT

High Court	**Supreme Court**
Highest court at State level	Highest court of India
Article 214 onwards	Article 124 onwards
Retirement age 62	Retirement age 65
Article 226 writ jurisdiction	Article 32 writ jurisdiction
Writs for FR + other legal rights	Article 32 for FR
Article 227 supervision	Supreme constitutional authority
Can hear appeals from subordinate courts	Final court of appeal

---

SUBORDINATE COURTS

2968. Subordinate Courts: Courts below the High Court.

2969. Constitutional Basis: Part VI, Chapter VI — Articles 233–237.

2970. Main Categories:

- District Courts.
- Other subordinate civil courts.
- Criminal courts established under law.

DISTRICT JUDGE

2971. Article 233: Appointment of district judges in a State is made by the Governor in consultation with the High Court.

2972. District Judge: Highest judicial officer at the district level.

2973. Important: A person not already in government service generally requires at least **7 years' practice as an advocate/pleader** and recommendation by the High Court for direct appointment, subject to constitutional conditions.

CONTROL OVER SUBORDINATE COURTS

2974. Article 235: Control over district courts and courts subordinate to them is vested in the **High Court**.

2975. Control Includes: Posting, promotion and leave of judicial officers, subject to constitutional provisions.

2976. Purpose: Helps maintain independence of subordinate judiciary from the executive.

SEPARATION OF JUDICIARY FROM EXECUTIVE

2977. Article 50: State shall take steps to separate judiciary from executive in public services of the State.

2978. Article 50: It is a **Directive Principle of State Policy**.

2979. Purpose: Protect judicial independence.

COMMON HIGH COURT

2980. Article 231: Parliament can establish a common High Court for:

- Two or more States.
- Two or more States and a Union Territory.

2981. Common High Court: One High Court serving more than one State/UT.

HIGH COURT JURISDICTION — SPECIAL POINT

2982. High Court: Some High Courts have special original civil jurisdiction under laws applicable to their jurisdiction.

2983. Important: Original jurisdiction varies among High Courts according to constitutional and statutory provisions.

HIGH COURT — IMPORTANT ARTICLES

2984. Article 214 → High Courts for States.

2985. Article 215 → High Courts as Courts of Record.

2986. Article 216 → Constitution of High Courts.

2987. Article 217 → Appointment and conditions of office of High Court judges.

2988. Article 218 → Certain Supreme Court provisions applied to High Courts.

2989. Article 219 → Oath of High Court judges.

2990. Article 220 → Restriction on practice after being a permanent judge.

2991. Article 221 → Salaries of High Court judges.

2992. Article 222 → Transfer of judges.

2993. Article 223 → Acting Chief Justice.

2994. Article 224 → Additional and acting judges.

2995. Article 224A → Appointment of retired judges at sittings.

2996. Article 225 → Jurisdiction of existing High Courts.

2997. Article 226 → Writ jurisdiction.

2998. Article 227 → Superintendence over subordinate courts.

2999. Article 228 → Transfer of certain cases to High Court.

3000. Article 229 → Officers and servants of High Courts.

3001. Article 230 → Extension of jurisdiction to Union Territories.

3002. Article 231 → Common High Court.

SUBORDINATE COURTS — IMPORTANT ARTICLES

3003. Article 233 → Appointment of district judges.

3004. Article 234 → Recruitment of persons other than district judges.

3005. Article 235 → Control over subordinate courts.

3006. Article 236 → Interpretation.

3007. Article 237 → Application of provisions to certain magistrates.

IMPORTANT TERMS

3008. High Court: Highest court in a State-level judicial system.

3009. Appellate: Relating to an appeal.

3010. Original Jurisdiction: Power to hear a case at the first instance.

3011. Writ: Formal order issued by a constitutional court.

3012. Superintendence: Supervisory control.

3013. Tribunal: Special body created to decide particular categories of disputes.

3014. Subordinate Court: Court functioning below the High Court.

3015. District Judge: Senior-most judicial officer at district level.

3016. Collegium: Group of senior judges involved in judicial appointment recommendations.

3017. Misbehaviour: Serious improper conduct.

3018. Incapacity: Inability to perform official duties.

3019. Jurisdiction: Legal authority to hear and decide cases.

3020. Court of Record: Court whose records are authoritative and permanently preserved.

QUICK REVISION

3021. High Court → Highest State-level Court.

3022. Constitutional Articles → 214–231.

3023. Present Number of High Courts → 25.

3024. High Court Judge Retirement → 62 years.

3025. Supreme Court Judge Retirement → 65 years.

3026. High Court Writ → Article 226.

3027. High Court Superintendence → Article 227.

3028. High Court Court of Record → Article 215.

3029. Common High Court → Article 231.

3030. Transfer of High Court Judge → Article 222.

3031. High Court Judge Appointment → Article 217.

3032. District Judge Appointment → Article 233.

3033. Control over Subordinate Courts → High Court, Article 235.

3034. Separation of Judiciary from Executive → Article 50.

3035. Five Writs → Habeas Corpus, Mandamus, Prohibition, Certiorari, Quo Warranto.

3036. High Court Writs → Fundamental Rights + Other Legal Rights.

3037. Supreme Court Article 32 → Fundamental Rights.

3038. High Court → Can exercise judicial review.

AB. STATE EXECUTIVE

BASIC INFORMATION

3039. State Executive: The executive branch (law-implementing branch) of a State government.

3040. Constitutional Basis: Part VI, Chapter II — Articles 153–167.

3041. State Executive Consists of:

- Governor.
- Chief Minister.
- Council of Ministers.
- Advocate General of the State.

3042. Parliamentary System: India follows a parliamentary form of government at both Union and State levels.

3043. Real Executive: Chief Minister and Council of Ministers.

3044. Constitutional/nominal Executive: Governor.

GOVERNOR

3045. Article 153: There shall be a Governor for each State.

3046. Common Governor: The same person can be appointed Governor of two or more States.

3047. Governor: Constitutional head of the State.

3048. Governor: Acts as the formal executive authority of the State, while normally exercising powers on the aid and advice of the Council of Ministers.

APPOINTMENT OF GOVERNOR

3049. Article 155: Governor is appointed by the **President of India**.

3050. Method: Governor is **appointed, not elected**.

3051. Important: There is no direct election by the people.

3052. Governor: Holds office during the **pleasure of the President**.

QUALIFICATIONS

3053. Article 157: A Governor must:

- Be a citizen of India.
- Have completed **35 years of age**.

3054. Important: Constitution does not prescribe any educational qualification.

3055. Important: Governor cannot be a member of Parliament or a State Legislature.

3056. If a sitting legislator is appointed Governor: Their seat is deemed vacant when they enter office.

CONDITIONS OF OFFICE

3057. Article 158: Governor:

- Cannot hold any other office of profit.
- Is entitled to official residence without rent.
- Receives salary and allowances as prescribed by Parliament.

3058. Salary: Charged on the **Consolidated Fund of the State**.

3059. Important: Salary and allowances cannot be diminished during the term of office.

TERM OF GOVERNOR

3060. Normal Term: 5 years.

3061. Important: The Governor continues in office until the successor enters office.

3062. Removal: Governor can be removed by the President.

3063. Resignation: Governor resigns by writing to the President.

OATH OF GOVERNOR

3064. Article 159: Governor takes oath or affirmation.

3065. Oath: Administered by the Chief Justice of the concerned High Court, or in their absence, the senior-most available judge of that High Court.

3066. Main Promise: To preserve, protect and defend the Constitution and devote oneself to the service and well-being of the people.

EXECUTIVE POWER OF GOVERNOR

3067. Article 154: Executive power of the State is vested in the Governor.

3068. Meaning: Government executive action is formally carried out in the Governor's name.

3069. Important: Governor normally acts on the aid and advice of the Council of Ministers headed by the Chief Minister.

POWERS OF GOVERNOR

3070. Main Powers:

- Executive powers.
- Legislative powers.
- Financial powers.
- Judicial powers.
- Discretionary powers.

EXECUTIVE POWERS

3071. Governor: Appoints the Chief Minister.

3072. Governor: Appoints other ministers on the advice of the Chief Minister.

3073. Governor: Appoints the Advocate General of the State.

3074. Governor: Appoints State Election Commissioner according to constitutional provisions.

3075. Governor: Appoints members of State Public Service Commission, subject to constitutional provisions.

3076. Important: Governor does not independently choose the entire Council of Ministers.

CHIEF MINISTER

3077. Article 164: Chief Minister is appointed by the Governor.

3078. Chief Minister: Real head of the State government.

3079. Majority: Normally, Governor appoints the leader of the majority party or coalition in the Legislative Assembly.

3080. Coalition: Group of political parties working together to form government.

COUNCIL OF MINISTERS

3081. Article 163: There shall be a Council of Ministers with the Chief Minister at the head to aid and advise the Governor.

3082. Real Executive: Council of Ministers.

3083. Collective Responsibility: Council of Ministers is collectively responsible to the **State Legislative Assembly**.

3084. Article: 164(2).

3085. Meaning: If the Assembly withdraws confidence, the Council of Ministers normally has to resign.

COUNCIL OF MINISTERS VS CABINET

3086. Council of Ministers: Larger body consisting of all categories of ministers.

3087. Cabinet: Smaller inner group of senior ministers responsible for major government decisions.

3088. Cabinet: Main policy-making body of the State government.

3089. Easy Difference:
Council of Ministers → Bigger body.
Cabinet → Smaller and more powerful group.

NUMBER OF MINISTERS

3090. Article 164(1A): Total number of ministers, including the Chief Minister, in a State shall not exceed **15% of the total number of members of the Legislative Assembly**.

3091. Minimum: Number of ministers, including Chief Minister, shall not be less than **12**.

3092. Important: This restriction was introduced by the **91st Constitutional Amendment Act, 2003**.

MINISTER FROM OUTSIDE LEGISLATURE

3093. Article 164(4): A person who is not a member of the State Legislature can become a minister.

3094. Time Limit: Must become a member of the State Legislature within **6 months**.

3095. If Not: Must cease to be a minister.

STATE LEGISLATURE

3096. State Legislature: Makes laws for the State subject to constitutional limits.

3097. Article 168: State Legislature consists of:

- Governor.
- Legislative Assembly.
- Legislative Council where the State has one.

3098. Bicameral State Legislature: State having two Houses.

3099. Unicameral State Legislature: State having one House.

LEGISLATIVE POWERS OF GOVERNOR

3100. Governor: Summons and prorogues the State Legislature.

3101. Article 174: Governor summons and prorogues the House/Houses.

3102. Maximum Gap: Not more than **6 months** between two sessions.

3103. Governor: Can dissolve the Legislative Assembly.

3104. Address: Governor addresses the Legislature at the beginning of the first session after each general election and first session of each year.

GOVERNOR'S ASSENT TO BILLS

3105. Article 200: When a Bill is passed by the State Legislature, Governor may:

- Give assent.
- Withhold assent.
- Return a Bill other than a Money Bill for reconsideration.
- Reserve a Bill for consideration of the President.

3106. Important: A Money Bill cannot be returned for reconsideration.

3107. Reconsideration: If a non-Money Bill is returned and passed again, the Governor generally cannot withhold assent, subject to constitutional provisions.

RESERVATION OF BILL FOR PRESIDENT

3108. Governor: May reserve certain Bills for consideration of the President.

3109. Article 201: Deals with Bills reserved for the consideration of the President.

3110. Important: Reservation is particularly important where constitutional issues or other circumstances specified by the Constitution arise.

MONEY BILL IN STATE

3111. Money Bill: Can be introduced only in the State Legislative Assembly.

3112. Recommendation: Governor's recommendation is required for introduction of a Money Bill.

3113. Legislative Council: If present, cannot reject a Money Bill.

ORDINANCE POWER

3114. Article 213: Governor can promulgate an Ordinance when the State Legislature is not in session and immediate action is necessary.

3115. Ordinance: Temporary law having the force of an Act.

3116. Limitation: Ordinance must satisfy constitutional conditions.

3117. Duration: An Ordinance ceases to operate **6 weeks after the reassembly of the Legislature**, unless earlier withdrawn or replaced by an Act.

3118. Important: If both Houses exist, the six-week period is counted from the later date of reassembly of the Houses.

FINANCIAL POWERS

3119. Article 202: Governor causes the **Annual Financial Statement** of the State to be laid before the Legislature.

3120. State Budget: Presented in the name of the Governor.

3121. Money Bill: Requires Governor's recommendation before introduction.

3122. Demands for Grants: Presented to Legislative Assembly on recommendation of Governor.

3123. Contingency Fund: Governor may make advances from the State Contingency Fund according to law and constitutional provisions.

JUDICIAL POWERS

3124. Article 161: Governor has power to grant:

- Pardons.
- Reprieves.

- Respite.
- Remissions.
- Commutation.

3125. Pardon: Complete forgiveness of punishment.

3126. Reprieve: Temporary suspension of execution of a sentence.

3127. Respite: Reduction of punishment due to special circumstances.

3128. Remission: Reduction of the period or amount of punishment without changing its nature.

3129. Commutation: Substitution of one form of punishment with a lighter form.

GOVERNOR VS PRESIDENT — PARDON POWER

3130. President → Article 72.

3131. Governor → Article 161.

3132. President: Can grant pardon in cases involving:

- Court Martial.
- Offences under Union laws.
- Death sentences.

3133. Governor: Can exercise Article 161 power in relation to matters within the State's executive power.

3134. Important: Governor **cannot pardon a death sentence**, though can suspend, remit or commute a death sentence under the constitutional/statutory framework.

DISCRETIONARY POWERS OF GOVERNOR

3135. Discretionary Power: Power exercised by Governor in circumstances where the Constitution permits discretion.

3136. Examples:

- Choosing a Chief Minister when no party has a clear majority.
- Reserving certain Bills for President.

- Reporting to President that constitutional machinery in the State has failed, under Article 356.
- Certain functions connected with special constitutional responsibilities.

3137. Important: Governor's discretion is **not unlimited**.

3138. Constitutional Courts: Can review constitutional exercise of such powers.

HUNG ASSEMBLY

3139. Hung Assembly: No party or coalition has a clear majority.

3140. Governor: Has to identify the person most likely to command the confidence of the Legislative Assembly.

3141. Floor Test: Majority should ordinarily be tested on the floor of the House.

3142. Floor Test: Vote in the Legislature to determine whether the government has majority support.

PRESIDENT'S RULE

3143. Article 356: President may impose President's Rule in a State if satisfied that a situation has arisen in which the government of the State cannot be carried on according to the Constitution.

3144. Governor: May send a report to the President regarding such a situation.

3145. Important: Governor's report is **not the only possible basis** for Article 356.

3146. President's Rule: State Council of Ministers is removed and executive authority is exercised in accordance with the constitutional arrangement.

3147. State Legislature: Parliament may exercise the legislative power of the State under the constitutional framework.

GOVERNOR'S REPORT

3148. Article 356: Governor can report constitutional breakdown to the President.

3149. Constitutional Breakdown: Failure of constitutional machinery.

3150. Important: Governor's report must be based on relevant constitutional facts and is subject to constitutional scrutiny.

ADVOCATE GENERAL

3151. Article 165: Advocate General is the highest law officer of a State.

3152. Appointment: Governor appoints the Advocate General.

3153. Qualification: Must be qualified to be appointed as a **High Court judge**.

3154. Main Function: Advises State Government on legal matters.

3155. Right in Legislature: Can speak and participate in proceedings of State Legislature and its committees, but cannot vote merely by virtue of that office.

ADVOCATE GENERAL — TENURE

3156. Tenure: Holds office during the pleasure of the Governor.

3157. Fixed Term: Constitution does not prescribe a fixed term.

3158. Salary: Determined by the Governor.

CHIEF MINISTER — MAIN FUNCTIONS

3159. Chief Minister: Communicates decisions of Council of Ministers to Governor.

3160. Article 167: Chief Minister must:

- Communicate decisions of Council of Ministers.
- Furnish information requested by Governor.
- Place a matter before Council of Ministers if Governor requires reconsideration.

3161. Chief Minister: Advises Governor regarding appointment of ministers.

3162. Chief Minister: Allocates portfolios among ministers.

3163. Portfolio: Particular department or area of government responsibility.

3164. Chief Minister: Acts as link between Governor and Council of Ministers.

STATE COUNCIL OF MINISTERS — COLLECTIVE RESPONSIBILITY

3165. Article 164(2): Council of Ministers is collectively responsible to Legislative Assembly.

3166. Collective Responsibility: All ministers stand together politically and support Cabinet decisions.

3167. Confidence: Government must retain majority support in Legislative Assembly.

INDIVIDUAL RESPONSIBILITY

3168. Minister: Holds office during the pleasure of the Governor.

3169. Practical Position: Governor normally acts on the advice of the Chief Minister regarding ministers.

3170. Minister: Can be removed when Chief Minister advises such action.

IMPORTANT ARTICLES

3171. Article 153 → Governor of States.

3172. Article 154 → Executive power of State.

3173. Article 155 → Appointment of Governor.

3174. Article 156 → Term of Governor.

3175. Article 157 → Qualifications.

3176. Article 158 → Conditions of Governor's office.

3177. Article 159 → Oath of Governor.

3178. Article 160 → Contingencies.

3179. Article 161 → Governor's pardoning power.

3180. Article 162 → Extent of State executive power.

3181. Article 163 → Council of Ministers to aid and advise Governor.

3182. Article 164 → Other provisions as to ministers.

3183. Article 165 → Advocate General.

3184. Article 166 → Conduct of State Government business.

3185. Article 167 → Duties of Chief Minister.

IMPORTANT LEGISLATIVE ARTICLES

3186. Article 168 → State Legislature.

3187. Article 169 → Creation/abolition of Legislative Council.

3188. Article 170 → Composition of Legislative Assemblies.

3189. Article 171 → Composition of Legislative Councils.

3190. Article 172 → Duration of State Legislatures.

3191. Article 173 → Qualification for membership.

3192. Article 174 → Sessions, prorogation and dissolution.

3193. Article 175 → Governor's right to address/send messages.

3194. Article 176 → Special Address.

3195. Article 177 → Rights of Ministers and Advocate General in Houses.

IMPORTANT BILL ARTICLES

3196. Article 200 → Assent to Bills.

3197. Article 201 → Bills reserved for President.

3198. Article 202 → Annual Financial Statement.

3199. Article 203 → Procedure regarding estimates.

3200. Article 204 → Appropriation Bills.

3201. Article 205 → Supplementary, additional or excess grants.

3202. Article 206 → Votes on account, votes of credit and exceptional grants.

3203. Article 207 → Special provisions regarding financial Bills.

3204. Article 208 → Rules of procedure.

3205. Article 209 → Regulation of financial procedure.

3206. Article 210 → Language in Legislature.

3207. Article 211 → Restriction on discussion of judges' conduct.

3208. Article 212 → Courts not to inquire into legislative proceedings, subject to constitutional principles.

3209. Article 213 → Governor's Ordinance-making power.

IMPORTANT TERMS

3210. Executive: Branch that implements laws and runs administration.

3211. Constitutional Head: Formal head whose powers operate within the constitutional system.

3212. Real Executive: Body that actually exercises day-to-day political executive authority.

3213. Pleasure of President: Governor remains in office subject to President's constitutional authority.

3214. Discretion: Choice exercised where Constitution permits independent judgment.

3215. Coalition: Alliance of political parties.

3216. Hung Assembly: Assembly where no party/coalition has a clear majority.

3217. Floor Test: Vote in the House to determine majority support.

3218. Ordinance: Temporary law issued by Governor when Legislature is not in session, subject to Article 213.

3219. Prorogation: Ending a legislative session.

3220. Dissolution: Ending the life of the Legislative Assembly.

3221. Portfolio: Department assigned to a minister.

3222. Advocate General: Highest legal officer of a State.

3223. Collective Responsibility: Ministers jointly responsible to the Legislative Assembly.

3224. Remission: Reduction of punishment without changing its character.

3225. Commutation: Replacement of punishment with a lighter form.

QUICK REVISION

3226. State Executive → Governor + CM + Council of Ministers + Advocate General.

3227. Governor Appointment → President.

3228. Governor Minimum Age → 35 years.

3229. Governor Normal Term → 5 years.

3230. Governor Resignation → President.

3231. Governor Oath → Article 159.

3232. Governor Pardoning Power → Article 161.

3233. CM Appointment → Governor.

3234. Real Executive → Chief Minister + Council of Ministers.

3235. Collective Responsibility → Legislative Assembly.

3236. Council of Ministers → Article 163.

3237. Ministers → Article 164.

3238. Advocate General → Article 165.

3239. CM Duties → Article 167.

3240. Ordinance Power of Governor → Article 213.

3241. President's Rule → Article 356.

3242. Governor's Bill Assent → Article 200.

3243. Reserved Bill → Article 201.

3244. State Budget → Article 202.

3245. High Court → Highest judicial authority at State level.

3246. Governor → Constitutional head.

3247. Chief Minister → Head of State government.

HIGH COURT

3841. High Court: Highest court at the State level.

3842. Constitutional Basis: Articles **214–231** of the Constitution.

3843. Article 214: Provides for a High Court for each State.

3844. Common High Court: Parliament can establish one High Court for two or more States or for States and a Union Territory.

3845. High Court Judge: Appointed by the **President of India**.

3846. Qualification: Must be a citizen of India and have **10 years of judicial office** or **10 years as an advocate** of a High Court or High Courts.

3847. Retirement Age: 62 years.

3848. Article 215: Every High Court is a **Court of Record** (its records have legal authority).

3849. Article 226: High Courts can issue **writs (formal court orders)** for Fundamental Rights and other legal purposes.

3850. Five Writs: Habeas Corpus, Mandamus, Prohibition, Certiorari and Quo Warranto.

3851. Article 227: High Court has **superintendence (supervision)** over subordinate courts and tribunals.

3852. Article 229: High Court controls its officers and employees.

3853. Judicial Review: High Court can examine whether laws and government actions are constitutional.

3854. Transfer of Judge: A High Court Judge can be transferred by the President after consultation with the Chief Justice of India.

3855. Removal: High Court Judge is removed by the President through the same parliamentary procedure used for removal of a Supreme Court Judge.

3856. Oath: High Court Judge takes oath before the Governor or a person appointed by the Governor.

IMPORTANT TERMS

3857. Jurisdiction: Legal power of a court to hear and decide cases.

3858. Writ: Formal order issued by a constitutional court.

3859. Judicial Review: Power to check whether a law or government action is constitutional.

3860. Superintendence: Power of supervision over subordinate courts.

QUICK REVISION

3861. High Court → Highest State-level court.

3862. Articles → 214–231.

3863. Judge appointed by → President.

3864. Retirement → 62 years.

3865. Writs → Article 226.

3866. Superintendence → Article 227.

3867. Court of Record → Article 215.

SUBORDINATE COURTS

3869. Subordinate Courts: Courts working below the High Court at the district and lower levels.

3870. Constitutional Basis: Mainly **Articles 233–237**.

3871. District Courts: Highest courts at the district level.

3872. District Judge: Appointed by the **Governor** in consultation with the High Court.

3873. Article 233: Deals with appointment of District Judges.

3874. District Judge: Can be a judicial officer or an advocate with the required qualifications under the Constitution.

3875. Control: Control over subordinate courts is vested in the **High Court**.

3876. Article 235: High Court controls posting, promotion and leave of judicial officers below the rank of District Judge.

3877. Civil Courts: Deal mainly with civil matters (disputes involving property, contracts, money, rights etc.).

3878. Criminal Courts: Deal mainly with offences and criminal cases.

3879. District and Sessions Judge: The same judicial officer may function as District Judge in civil matters and Sessions Judge in criminal matters.

3880. Sessions Court: Deals with serious criminal cases.

3881. Subordinate Judiciary: Includes courts below the High Court established under the judicial system of the State.

IMPORTANT TERMS

3882. Civil Case: Case concerning private rights or disputes.

3883. Criminal Case: Case involving an offence against law.

3884. District Judge: Principal judge of the district judiciary on the civil side.

3885. Sessions Judge: Principal judge dealing with serious criminal matters at the district level.

3886. Judicial Hierarchy: High Court → District/Sessions Court → Lower/Subordinate Courts.

QUICK REVISION

3887. Articles → 233–237.

3888. District Judge Appointment → Governor + consultation with High Court.

3889. Control over Subordinate Courts → High Court.

3890. Article 235 → High Court's control over subordinate judiciary.

TRIBUNALS

3892. Tribunal: A specialised body that decides particular types of disputes and cases.

3893. Constitutional Basis: Part XIV-A, Articles 323A and 323B.

3894. 42nd Constitutional Amendment Act, 1976: Added provisions relating to tribunals to the Constitution.

3895. Article 323A: Deals with **Administrative Tribunals**.

3896. Article 323B: Deals with tribunals for other specified matters.

3897. Administrative Tribunal: Deals mainly with service matters (employment-related disputes) of government employees.

3898. Central Administrative Tribunal (CAT): Established under the **Administrative Tribunals Act, 1985**.

3899. CAT: Deals mainly with service disputes involving Central Government employees and certain other notified organisations.

3900. Armed Forces Tribunal (AFT): Deals with service matters and appeals concerning court-martial cases of the Armed Forces, as provided by law.

3901. National Green Tribunal (NGT): Specialised tribunal dealing with environmental cases.

3902. NGT Act: Established under the **National Green Tribunal Act, 2010**.

3903. Tribunal: Provides specialised and relatively speedy dispute resolution (settlement of disputes).

3904. Important: Tribunals are different from ordinary courts because they are generally specialised for particular subjects.

IMPORTANT TERMS

3905. Tribunal: Specialised dispute-settling body.

3906. Administrative Matter: Matter related to government service and administration.

3907. Service Matter: Dispute related to government employment, such as appointment, promotion or service conditions.

3908. Specialised: Designed to deal with a particular subject.

QUICK REVISION

3909. Tribunals → Part XIV-A.

3910. Article 323A → Administrative Tribunals.

3911. Article 323B → Other specified matters.

3912. 42nd Amendment → Constitutional provisions for tribunals.

3913. CAT → Administrative/service matters.

3914. AFT → Armed Forces matters.

3915. NGT → Environmental matters.

CONSUMER COMMISSIONS

3917. Consumer Commission: A quasi-judicial (court-like) body that provides a simple and relatively speedy system for resolving consumer disputes.

3918. Main Law: Consumer Protection Act, 2019.

3919. Consumer: A person who buys goods or uses services for consideration (payment), subject to the law.

3920. Consumer Dispute: Dispute between a consumer and a seller, manufacturer or service provider.

3921. Three-Tier System: District Commission → State Commission → National Commission.

3922. District Consumer Disputes Redressal Commission: Deals with consumer cases at the district level.

3923. State Consumer Disputes Redressal Commission: Deals with cases at the State level and appeals from District Commissions.

3924. National Consumer Disputes Redressal Commission (NCDRC): National-level consumer dispute body and hears appeals from State Commissions.

3925. NCDRC: Established under the consumer protection law.

3926. Redressal: Providing a remedy or solution to a complaint.

3927. Consumer Rights: Include protection against hazardous goods/services, information, choice, being heard, redressal and consumer education.

3928. Product Liability: Legal responsibility of a manufacturer, seller or service provider for harm caused by a defective product or deficient service, as provided by law.

3929. Central Consumer Protection Authority (CCPA): Statutory authority established under the **Consumer Protection Act, 2019**.

3930. CCPA: Protects consumers as a class and deals with unfair trade practices and misleading advertisements.

IMPORTANT TERMS

3931. Consumer: Person who purchases goods or services for consideration.

3932. Redressal: Remedy or solution to a complaint.

3933. Unfair Trade Practice: Unfair or deceptive business practice prohibited by law.

3934. Misleading Advertisement: Advertisement that gives false or misleading information.

QUICK REVISION

3935. Main Law → Consumer Protection Act, 2019.

3936. Three Levels → District → State → National.

3937. National Body → NCDRC.

3938. Consumer Protection Authority → CCPA.

LOK ADALATS, OTHER COURTS & ALTERNATIVE DISPUTE RESOLUTION

LOK ADALAT

3940. Lok Adalat: People's Court (people-friendly forum) for settlement of disputes.

3941. Legal Basis: Legal Services Authorities Act, 1987.

3942. Main Purpose: To provide free and speedy settlement of disputes through compromise or settlement.

3943. Lok Adalat: Can deal with pending cases and certain pre-litigation (before a case is filed in court) disputes.

3944. Award: Decision of Lok Adalat is treated as a decree (formal decision) of a civil court.

3945. Appeal: No appeal lies against a Lok Adalat award.

3946. Permanent Lok Adalat: Deals mainly with disputes relating to public utility services.

3947. Public Utility Services: Transport, postal, telegraph, power, water, sanitation and similar notified services.

ALTERNATIVE DISPUTE RESOLUTION

3948. ADR: Alternative Dispute Resolution (methods of settling disputes without normal court proceedings).

3949. Main ADR Methods: Arbitration, mediation, conciliation and negotiation.

3950. Arbitration: Dispute is decided by an arbitrator (person appointed to decide the dispute).

3951. Mediation: A neutral person helps parties reach a mutually acceptable settlement.

3952. Conciliation: A neutral person helps parties settle a dispute and may suggest solutions.

FAMILY COURTS

3953. Family Court: Special court dealing mainly with family and matrimonial disputes.

3954. Legal Basis: Family Courts Act, 1984.

3955. Main Matters: Marriage, divorce, maintenance, custody of children and related family disputes.

GRAM NYAYALAYAS

3956. Gram Nyayalaya: Village-level court intended to provide justice closer to rural people.

3957. Legal Basis: Gram Nyayalayas Act, 2008.

3958. Main Purpose: Accessible and affordable justice in rural areas.

IMPORTANT COURT TERMS

3959. Decree: Formal decision of a civil court.

3960. Appeal: Request to a higher court to reconsider a decision.

3961. Mediation: Settlement with the help of a neutral person.

3962. Arbitration: Dispute resolution by an appointed arbitrator.

3963. Conciliation: Settlement process assisted by a neutral person.

QUICK REVISION

3964. Lok Adalat → Legal Services Authorities Act, 1987.

3965. Permanent Lok Adalat → Public Utility Services.

3966. Family Courts → Family Courts Act, 1984.

3967. Gram Nyayalayas → Gram Nyayalayas Act, 2008.

3968. ADR → Alternative Dispute Resolution.

ANCHAYATI RAJ — DETAILED NOTES

4002. Panchayati Raj: System of **rural local self-government** (government at village and rural level through elected representatives).

4003. Constitutional Status: Panchayati Raj received constitutional status through the **73rd Constitutional Amendment Act, 1992**.

4004. Effective Date: The 73rd Amendment came into force on **24 April 1993**.

4005. National Panchayati Raj Day: 24 April is observed every year as National Panchayati Raj Day.

4006. Constitutional Part: Panchayats are covered under **Part IX** of the Constitution.

4007. Articles: Panchayats are covered mainly under **Articles 243 to 243-O**.

GRAM SABHA

4008. Gram Sabha: General body consisting of persons registered as voters in the village-level electoral roll.

4009. Article 243(b): Defines Gram Sabha.

4010. Gram Sabha: It is **not an elected body**; all registered voters of the village are members.

4011. Main Role: Discusses local development, public welfare and Panchayat-related matters.

4012. Gram Sabha: Helps promote **direct democracy** (people directly participating in local decision-making).

4013. Important: The exact powers and functions of Gram Sabha are determined largely by State laws.

THREE-TIER PANCHAYATI RAJ SYSTEM

4014. Three-Tier System: Gram Panchayat → Intermediate Panchayat → Zila Parishad.

4015. First Level: Gram Panchayat — village level.

4016. Second Level: Intermediate Panchayat — block/intermediate level.

4017. Third Level: Zila Parishad — district level.

4018. Exception: A State with population not exceeding **20 lakh** may not have the intermediate level.

GRAM PANCHAYAT

4019. Gram Panchayat: Elected local government body at village level.

4020. Members: Elected representatives of the village Panchayat.

4021. Sarpanch: Common term for the elected head of a Gram Panchayat; exact title can vary by State.

4022. Main Work: Local development, sanitation, roads, drinking water and other functions assigned by State law.

4023. Important: Actual powers and responsibilities vary among States because Panchayats are implemented through State legislation.

INTERMEDIATE PANCHAYAT

4024. Intermediate Panchayat: Panchayat at the block/intermediate level.

4025. Function: Coordinates development activities between village Panchayats and district-level Panchayat institutions.

4026. Important: Not compulsory in States having population of **20 lakh or less**.

ZILA PARISHAD

4027. Zila Parishad: District-level Panchayati Raj institution.

4028. Main Role: Coordinates development programmes at the district level.

4029. Zila Parishad: Works with lower-level Panchayats and State administration in rural development.

ELECTIONS

4030. Panchayat Elections: Conducted under the supervision of the **State Election Commission**.

4031. Article 243K: Deals with elections to Panchayats.

4032. State Election Commissioner: Appointed by the Governor.

4033. Electoral Roll: State Election Commission supervises preparation of electoral rolls for Panchayat elections.

TERM OF PANCHAYATS

4034. Article 243E: Normal term of every Panchayat is **5 years**.

4035. Election Before Expiry: Elections should normally be completed before the term expires.

4036. Dissolution: If a Panchayat is dissolved early, elections should generally be held within **6 months**, subject to the constitutional conditions.

4037. Important: A newly elected Panchayat after premature dissolution normally serves only the remaining period of the original term.

RESERVATION

4038. Article 243D: Provides reservation in Panchayats.

4039. SC Reservation: Seats are reserved for Scheduled Castes according to their population in the Panchayat area.

4040. ST Reservation: Seats are reserved for Scheduled Tribes according to their population in the Panchayat area.

4041. Women Reservation: At least **one-third of total seats** are reserved for women.

4042. Women Reservation: Reservation also applies to seats reserved for SC/ST women.

4043. Chairpersons: Offices of Panchayat chairpersons are reserved for SCs, STs and women according to constitutional provisions and State law.

POWERS AND FUNCTIONS

4044. Article 243G: State Legislatures may give Panchayats powers and responsibilities necessary to function as institutions of self-government.

4045. Main Areas: Economic development and social justice.

4046. Eleventh Schedule: Contains **29 subjects** that may be transferred to Panchayats.

IMPORTANT 29 SUBJECTS — GROUPED FOR EASY LEARNING

4047. Agriculture: Agriculture, agricultural extension, land improvement and soil conservation.

4048. Irrigation: Minor irrigation, water management and watershed development.

4049. Animal Husbandry: Animal husbandry, dairying and poultry.

4050. Fisheries: Fisheries.

4051. Forestry: Social forestry and farm forestry.

4052. Minor Forest Produce: Collection and management of minor forest produce.

4053. Small Industries: Small-scale industries, including food-processing industries.

4054. Rural Industries: Khadi, village and cottage industries.

4055. Rural Housing: Rural housing.

4056. Drinking Water: Provision of drinking water.

4057. Fuel and Fodder: Fuel and fodder.

4058. Roads: Roads, culverts, bridges and communication facilities.

4059. Rural Electrification: Electrification and distribution of electricity.

4060. Renewable Energy: Non-conventional energy sources.

4061. Poverty Alleviation: Programmes for poverty alleviation.

4062. Education: Primary and secondary education.

4063. Technical Training: Technical training and vocational education.

4064. Adult Education: Adult and non-formal education.

4065. Libraries: Libraries.

4066. Cultural Activities: Cultural activities.

4067. Markets: Markets and fairs.

4068. Health: Health and sanitation, including hospitals, primary health centres and dispensaries.

4069. Family Welfare: Family welfare.

4070. Women and Child Development: Women and child development.

4071. Social Welfare: Social welfare, including welfare of persons with disabilities and mental disabilities.

4072. Weaker Sections: Welfare of weaker sections, particularly SCs and STs.

4073. Public Distribution: Public distribution system.

4074. Community Assets: Maintenance of community assets.

FINANCIAL PROVISIONS

4075. Article 243H: State Legislature may authorise Panchayats to levy taxes, duties, tolls and fees according to law.

4076. Grants-in-Aid: States may provide financial assistance to Panchayats.

4077. State Finance Commission: Reviews the financial position of Panchayats and Municipalities.

4078. Article 243-I: Deals with State Finance Commission.

4079. Frequency: State Finance Commission is constituted every **5 years**.

IMPORTANT COMMITTEES

4080. Balwant Rai Mehta Committee: Recommended the **three-tier Panchayati Raj system**.

4081. Year: Committee appointed in **1957**.

4082. Ashok Mehta Committee: Appointed in **1977**.

4083. Ashok Mehta Committee: Recommended a **two-tier system** with Mandal Panchayat and Zila Parishad.

4084. G.V.K. Rao Committee: Emphasised the importance of Panchayati Raj institutions in rural development.

4085. L.M. Singhvi Committee: Recommended constitutional recognition for Panchayati Raj institutions.

FIRST PANCHAYATI RAJ

4086. First State to Introduce Panchayati Raj: Rajasthan.

4087. Launch: 2 October 1959.

4088. First Launch Location: Nagaur district, Rajasthan.

4089. Andhra Pradesh: Soon followed Rajasthan in introducing the system.

73RD AMENDMENT — IMPORTANT FACTS

4090. 73rd Amendment: Constitutionalised Panchayati Raj Institutions.

4091. Added: Part IX to the Constitution.

4092. Added: Eleventh Schedule.

4093. Eleventh Schedule: Contains **29 subjects**.

4094. Articles Added: 243 to 243-O.

4095. Gram Sabha: Received constitutional recognition.

4096. Reservation: SCs, STs and women.

4097. Term: 5 years.

4098. Elections: State Election Commission.

4099. Finance: State Finance Commission.

IMPORTANT TERMS

4100. Decentralisation: Transfer of powers from higher levels of government to lower levels.

4101. Local Self-Government: Local people managing local affairs through elected institutions.

4102. Devolution: Transfer of powers, responsibilities and resources to lower levels of government.

4103. Gram Sabha: Assembly of registered voters of a village.

4104. Gram Panchayat: Elected village-level Panchayat.

4105. Zila Parishad: District-level Panchayat institution.

4106. Quorum: Minimum number of members required for a meeting to conduct official business.

QUICK REVISION

4107. 73rd Amendment → 1992.

4108. Effective → 24 April 1993.

4109. Part IX → Panchayats.

4110. Articles → 243–243O.

4111. Eleventh Schedule → 29 subjects.

4112. Normal Term → 5 years.

4113. Panchayat Elections → State Election Commission.

4114. State Finance Commission → Every 5 years.

4115. First Panchayati Raj State → Rajasthan.

4116. First Launch → 2 October 1959, Nagaur.

MUNICIPALITIES — URBAN LOCAL GOVERNMENT

4118. Municipality: Urban local self-government (government for towns and cities).

4119. Constitutional Status: Given by the **74th Constitutional Amendment Act, 1992**.

4120. Effective Date: 1 June 1993.

4121. Constitutional Part: Part IX-A.

4122. Articles: 243P–243ZG.

4123. Twelfth Schedule: Contains **18 subjects** related to urban local bodies.

TYPES OF URBAN LOCAL BODIES

4124. Nagar Panchayat: For a **transitional area** (area changing from rural to urban).

4125. Municipal Council: For a **smaller urban area**.

4126. Municipal Corporation: For a **larger urban area**.

4127. Municipal Corporation: Usually established in large cities through State legislation.

MUNICIPAL CORPORATION

4128. Mayor: Political head of a Municipal Corporation.

4129. Municipal Commissioner: Chief executive/administrative officer of a Municipal Corporation.

4130. Mayor: Usually elected according to the State's municipal law.

4131. Municipal Commissioner: Generally appointed through the State government system.

ELECTION & TERM

4132. Municipal Elections: Conducted under the supervision of the **State Election Commission**.

4133. Article 243ZA: Deals with elections to Municipalities.

4134. Term: 5 years.

4135. Dissolution: If dissolved early, elections are generally required within **6 months**, subject to constitutional provisions.

RESERVATION

4136. Article 243T: Provides reservation in Municipalities.

4137. SC/ST Reservation: Seats reserved according to population.

4138. Women: At least **one-third of seats** reserved for women.

4139. Chairpersons: Reservation for SCs, STs and women as provided by the Constitution and State law.

POWERS & FUNCTIONS

4140. Article 243W: State Legislatures may give Municipalities powers and responsibilities for functioning as institutions of self-government.

4141. Twelfth Schedule: Contains **18 subjects**.

4142. Main Areas: Urban planning, land-use regulation, roads, water supply, sanitation, public health, fire services, urban forestry, slum improvement and poverty alleviation.

4143. Urban Planning: Includes town planning and planning for economic and social development.

4144. Water Supply: Water supply for domestic, industrial and commercial purposes.

4145. Public Health: Sanitation, waste management and related public health services.

4146. Fire Services: Organisation and maintenance of fire services.

4147. Slum Improvement: Improvement and upgrading of slum areas.

4148. Urban Poverty: Implementation of urban poverty alleviation programmes.

FINANCE

4149. Article 243X: State Legislature may authorise Municipalities to levy taxes, duties, tolls and fees according to law.

4150. Article 243Y: State Finance Commission reviews the financial position of Municipalities.

4151. State Finance Commission: Constituted every **5 years**.

IMPORTANT TERMS

4152. Urban: Related to towns and cities.

4153. Municipality: Local government institution for an urban area.

4154. Mayor: Political head of a Municipal Corporation.

4155. Municipal Commissioner: Administrative/executive head of a Municipal Corporation.

4156. Transitional Area: Area changing from rural to urban.

QUICK REVISION

4157. 74th Amendment → 1992.

4158. Effective → 1 June 1993.

4159. Part IX-A → Municipalities.

4160. Articles → 243P–243ZG.

4161. Twelfth Schedule → 18 subjects.

4162. Types → Nagar Panchayat → Municipal Council → Municipal Corporation.

4163. Term → 5 years.

4164. Elections → State Election Commission.

UNION TERRITORIES + SCHEDULED & TRIBAL AREAS

UNION TERRITORIES

4166. Union Territory (UT): Territory administered by the Union Government under the Constitution.

4167. Constitutional Basis: Articles 239–241.

4168. Present Number of Union Territories: 8.

4169. Union Territories: Andaman and Nicobar Islands, Chandigarh, Dadra and Nagar Haveli and Daman and Diu, Delhi, Jammu and Kashmir, Ladakh, Lakshadweep and Puducherry.

4170. Administrator: President appoints an Administrator for a Union Territory.

4171. Delhi: Officially **National Capital Territory of Delhi (NCT Delhi)**.

4172. Puducherry: Has a Legislative Assembly and Council of Ministers.

4173. Jammu and Kashmir: Has a Legislative Assembly under the Jammu and Kashmir Reorganisation Act, 2019 and the constitutional framework applicable to it.

4174. Ladakh: Union Territory **without a Legislative Assembly**.

4175. Chandigarh: Union Territory and joint capital of Punjab and Haryana.

SCHEDULED AREAS

4176. Scheduled Areas: Areas with special administrative arrangements for the welfare and protection of Scheduled Tribes.

4177. Constitutional Basis: Fifth Schedule.

4178. Fifth Schedule: Deals with administration and control of Scheduled Areas and Scheduled Tribes in States other than Assam, Meghalaya, Tripura and Mizoram.

4179. Tribal Advisory Council: Can be established in States having Scheduled Areas as provided under the Fifth Schedule.

TRIBAL AREAS

4180. Sixth Schedule: Deals with administration of tribal areas in **Assam, Meghalaya, Tripura and Mizoram**.

4181. Autonomous District Council: Local self-governing body for specified tribal areas under the Sixth Schedule.

4182. Autonomous Regional Council: May be created for certain tribal areas within an autonomous district.

4183. Main Purpose: Protect tribal customs, culture, land and local self-governance.

QUICK REVISION

4184. Union Territories → Articles 239–241.

4185. Total UTs → 8.

4186. Fifth Schedule → Scheduled Areas.

4187. Sixth Schedule → Tribal Areas in Assam, Meghalaya, Tripura and Mizoram.

CONSTITUTIONAL BODIES

4228. Constitutional Body: A body created directly by the Constitution.

4229. Important Constitutional Bodies: Election Commission, UPSC, Finance Commission, CAG, Attorney General, NCSC, NCST, NCBC and GST Council.

ELECTION COMMISSION OF INDIA

4230. Election Commission of India (ECI): Constitutional authority responsible for conducting elections.

4231. Article: 324.

4232. Elections: Lok Sabha, Rajya Sabha, State Legislative Assemblies, President and Vice-President.

4233. Chief Election Commissioner (CEC): Head of the Election Commission.

4234. Voting Age: 18 years.

UPSC

4235. UPSC: Constitutional body responsible mainly for recruitment to Union civil services.

4236. Articles: 315–323.

4237. Article 320: Lists important functions of Public Service Commissions.

4238. Main Functions: Conduct examinations, recruitment and advise the Government on specified service matters.

4239. Important Exams: Civil Services, Engineering Services, Combined Defence Services, NDA and other examinations.

FINANCE COMMISSION

4240. Finance Commission: Constitutional body dealing with financial relations between Union and States.

4241. Article: 280.

4242. Formation: Constituted by the President normally every **5 years**.

4243. Main Function: Recommends distribution of certain tax revenues between Union and States and principles for grants-in-aid.

CAG

4244. CAG: Comptroller and Auditor General of India; constitutional authority for auditing government accounts.

4245. Article: 148.

4246. Appointment: President.

4247. Main Function: Audits accounts of the Union and States and promotes financial accountability.

4248. Removal: Same manner and on the same grounds as a Supreme Court Judge.

QUICK REVISION

4249. ECI → Article 324.

4250. UPSC → Articles 315–323.

4251. Finance Commission → Article 280.

4252. CAG → Article 148.

4253. Next → NCSC + NCST + NCBC + GST COUNCIL.

NCSC + NCST + NCBC + GST COUNCIL

NATIONAL COMMISSION FOR SCHEDULED CASTES

4254. NCSC: National Commission for Scheduled Castes; constitutional body for protecting the interests and safeguards of Scheduled Castes.

4255. Article: 338.

4256. Composition: Chairperson, Vice-Chairperson and **3 other Members**.

4257. Appointment: Chairperson, Vice-Chairperson and Members are appointed by the **President**.

4258. Main Functions: Investigates complaints, monitors safeguards and advises on the socio-economic development of Scheduled Castes.

4259. Reports: Submits reports to the **President**, which are laid before Parliament.

NATIONAL COMMISSION FOR SCHEDULED TRIBES

4260. NCST: National Commission for Scheduled Tribes; constitutional body for protecting the interests and safeguards of Scheduled Tribes.

4261. Article: 338A.

4262. Created: Separated from the earlier combined SC/ST Commission through the **89th Constitutional Amendment Act, 2003**.

4263. Composition: Chairperson, Vice-Chairperson and **3 other Members**.

4264. Appointment: President.

4265. Main Functions: Monitors safeguards, investigates complaints and advises on the development of Scheduled Tribes.

NATIONAL COMMISSION FOR BACKWARD CLASSES

4266. NCBC: National Commission for Backward Classes; constitutional body dealing with safeguards for socially and educationally backward classes.

4267. Article: 338B.

4268. Constitutional Status: Given by the **102nd Constitutional Amendment Act, 2018**.

4269. Composition: Chairperson, Vice-Chairperson and **3 other Members**.

4270. Appointment: President.

4271. Article 342A: Deals with specification of socially and educationally backward classes.

GST COUNCIL

4272. GST Council: Constitutional body that makes recommendations on important matters relating to Goods and Services Tax.

4273. Article: 279A.

4274. Created By: 101st Constitutional Amendment Act, 2016.

4275. Chairperson: Union Finance Minister.

4276. Members: Union Minister of State in charge of Revenue/Finance and the Finance/Taxation Ministers or other nominated ministers of the States.

4277. Main Functions: Recommends GST rates, exemptions, model GST laws, principles of taxation and place of supply.

4278. Voting: Union Government has **one-third** of the weighted votes and all State Governments together have **two-thirds**.

4279. Decision: Requires at least **three-fourths of weighted votes** of members present and voting.

IMPORTANT TERMS

4280. Safeguard: Legal or constitutional protection provided to a particular group.

4281. Constitutional Body: Body created directly by the Constitution.

4282. Weighted Vote: Vote given a particular value or weight in decision-making.

QUICK REVISION

4283. NCSC → Article 338 → SCs.

4284. NCST → Article 338A → STs.

4285. NCBC → Article 338B → Backward Classes.

4286. GST Council → Article 279A → GST.

4287. 101st Amendment → GST Council.

4288. 102nd Amendment → NCBC constitutional status.

STATUTORY + EXECUTIVE BODIES

STATUTORY BODIES

4290. Statutory Body: A body created by an Act (law) passed by Parliament or a State Legislature.

4291. Central Information Commission (CIC): Statutory body under the **Right to Information Act, 2005**.

4292. CIC Main Function: Deals with appeals and complaints under the RTI framework.

4293. Central Vigilance Commission (CVC): Statutory body established under the **CVC Act, 2003**.

4294. CVC Main Function: Advises and supervises vigilance (anti-corruption) administration in specified Central Government organisations.

4295. National Human Rights Commission (NHRC): Statutory body established under the **Protection of Human Rights Act, 1993**.

4296. NHRC Main Function: Protects and promotes human rights and investigates alleged human-rights violations within its legal mandate.

4297. National Commission for Women (NCW): Statutory body established under the **NCW Act, 1990**.

4298. NCW Main Function: Reviews safeguards for women and advises the government on related legal and policy matters.

4299. National Green Tribunal (NGT): Specialised statutory tribunal established under the **NGT Act, 2010**.

4300. NGT Main Function: Deals with environmental disputes and provides specialised environmental justice.

4301. Lokpal: Statutory anti-corruption institution established under the **Lokpal and Lokayuktas Act, 2013**.

4302. Competition Commission of India (CCI): Statutory body established under the **Competition Act, 2002**.

4303. CCI Main Function: Promotes competition and prevents anti-competitive practices.

EXECUTIVE BODIES

4304. Executive Body: Body created by executive action (government decision/order) rather than directly by the Constitution or an Act.

4305. NITI Aayog: Government of India's policy think tank (institution providing policy advice).

4306. Established: 1 January 2015.

4307. NITI Aayog: Replaced the Planning Commission.

4308. Main Role: Promotes cooperative federalism (Union and States working together) and provides policy advice.

4309. National Development Council: Earlier important policy coordination body associated with national planning; its role declined after the Planning Commission was replaced.

4310. Prime Minister's Office (PMO): Provides administrative and policy support to the Prime Minister.

4311. Cabinet Secretariat: Supports the Cabinet and Cabinet Committees and coordinates government business.

IMPORTANT DIFFERENCE

4312. Constitutional Body: Created by the Constitution.

4313. Statutory Body: Created by an Act/law.

4314. Executive Body: Created by executive decision/order.

QUICK REVISION

4315. CIC → RTI Act, 2005.

4316. CVC → CVC Act, 2003.

4317. NHRC → Protection of Human Rights Act, 1993.

4318. NCW → NCW Act, 1990.

4319. NGT → NGT Act, 2010.

4320. Lokpal → Lokpal and Lokayuktas Act, 2013.

4321. CCI → Competition Act, 2002.

4322. NITI Aayog → Executive body → 2015.

IMPORTANT COMMISSIONS & CENTRAL GOVERNMENT INSTITUTIONS

NITI AAYOG

4324. NITI Aayog: Government of India's apex policy think tank (institution that gives policy advice).

4325. Full Form: National Institution for Transforming India.

4326. Established: 1 January 2015 by a Union Cabinet resolution.

4327. Replaced: Planning Commission.

4328. Chairperson: Prime Minister of India.

4329. Main Role: Provides policy advice and supports long-term development strategies.

4330. Cooperative Federalism: NITI Aayog promotes cooperation between the Union and State Governments.

CABINET SECRETARIAT

4331. Cabinet Secretariat: Central coordinating institution that assists the Cabinet and Cabinet Committees.

4332. Administrative Head: Cabinet Secretary.

4333. Works Under: Prime Minister.

4334. Main Function: Provides secretarial assistance to the Cabinet and Cabinet Committees.

4335. Coordination: Helps resolve differences and coordinate work between different Ministries and Departments.

4336. Rules: Administers the **Government of India (Transaction of Business) Rules, 1961** and **Allocation of Business Rules, 1961**.

4337. Crisis Management: Helps coordinate Ministries during major national crises.

CENTRAL INFORMATION COMMISSION

4338. CIC: Central Information Commission; statutory body under the **Right to Information Act, 2005**.

4339. Established: 12 October 2005.

4340. Jurisdiction: Covers Central Public Authorities.

4341. Main Function: Deals mainly with complaints and second appeals under the RTI Act.

4342. Penalty: Can impose penalties on responsible public officials in cases specified under the RTI Act.

IMPORTANT DIFFERENCE

4343. NITI Aayog → Executive body → Policy advice.

4344. Cabinet Secretariat → Central coordinating institution → Government coordination.

4345. CIC → Statutory body → Right to Information.

IMPORTANT CENTRAL GOVERNMENT OFFICES & AUTHORITIES

PRIME MINISTER'S OFFICE

4347. Prime Minister's Office (PMO): Office that provides administrative and policy support to the Prime Minister.

4348. Nature: Non-constitutional and non-statutory executive office.

4349. Head: Principal Secretary to the Prime Minister.

4350. Main Role: Assists the Prime Minister in policy matters, coordination and important administrative issues.

ATTORNEY GENERAL & SOLICITOR GENERAL

4351. Attorney General of India: Highest law officer of India.

4352. Article: 76.

4353. Appointment: Appointed by the President.

4354. Qualification: Must be qualified to become a Supreme Court Judge.

4355. Main Role: Gives legal advice to the Government of India and represents it in legal matters.

4356. Solicitor General of India: Senior law officer who assists the Attorney General.

4357. Important: Solicitor General is **not a constitutional office**.

CENTRAL VIGILANCE COMMISSION

4358. Central Vigilance Commission (CVC): Statutory body dealing with vigilance (prevention and detection of corruption) in specified Central Government organisations.

4359. Legal Basis: Central Vigilance Commission Act, 2003.

4360. Main Role: Advises and supervises vigilance administration in its legally defined areas.

4361. Important: CVC is **statutory, not constitutional**.

CENTRAL BUREAU OF INVESTIGATION

4362. Central Bureau of Investigation (CBI): Major investigating agency of the Government of India.

4363. Legal Basis: CBI derives its investigative powers mainly from the **Delhi Special Police Establishment Act, 1946**.

4364. Main Work: Investigates specified cases involving corruption, economic offences and serious crimes, subject to its legal jurisdiction.

4365. Administrative Control: CBI functions under the **Department of Personnel and Training (DoPT)**.

QUICK REVISION

4366. PMO → Support to Prime Minister.

4367. Attorney General → Article 76 → Highest Law Officer.

4368. Solicitor General → Assists Attorney General → Not Constitutional.

4369. CVC → CVC Act, 2003 → Vigilance.

4370. CBI → DSPE Act, 1946 → Investigation.

CABINET COMMITTEES + CENTRAL GOVERNMENT MINISTRIES

CABINET COMMITTEES

4372. Cabinet Committee: Smaller group of ministers formed to examine and decide specific important government matters.

4373. Constitutional Status: Cabinet Committees are **not mentioned in the Constitution**.

4374. Legal Basis: Function under the **Government of India (Transaction of Business) Rules, 1961**.

4375. Formation: Constituted by the Prime Minister.

4376. Chairperson: Usually the Prime Minister or another designated senior minister, depending on the committee.

4377. Main Purpose: Reduce the workload of the Cabinet and allow detailed consideration of important matters.

4378. Important Committees: Cabinet Committee on Security, Cabinet Committee on Economic Affairs, Cabinet Committee on Political Affairs and Cabinet Committee on Parliamentary Affairs.

4379. Cabinet Committee on Security (CCS): Deals with important matters relating to national security and defence.

4380. Cabinet Committee on Economic Affairs (CCEA): Deals with major economic policy and related matters.

CENTRAL GOVERNMENT MINISTRIES & DEPARTMENTS

4381. Ministry: Major administrative unit of the Central Government dealing with a particular area of governance.

4382. Department: Administrative unit within a Ministry dealing with specific subjects.

4383. Political Head: Minister.

4384. Administrative Head: Secretary.

4385. Secretary: Senior civil servant responsible for administration and policy implementation in a department.

IMPORTANT MINISTRIES

4386. Ministry of Home Affairs: Internal security, Union Territories and other internal administrative matters.

4387. Ministry of Defence: Defence policy and Armed Forces.

4388. Ministry of Finance: Government finances, taxation, expenditure and economic matters.

4389. Ministry of External Affairs: Foreign relations and diplomacy.

4390. Ministry of Education: Education policy and national education programmes.

4391. Ministry of Health and Family Welfare: Health and family welfare.

4392. Ministry of Agriculture and Farmers Welfare: Agriculture and farmers' welfare.

4393. Ministry of Law and Justice: Legal affairs, legislation and justice-related matters.

4394. Ministry of Electronics and Information Technology: Digital technology, electronics and IT-related matters.

4395. Ministry of Environment, Forest and Climate Change: Environment, forests, wildlife and climate-related matters.

4396. Ministry of Railways: Railway transport and administration.

4397. Ministry of Communications: Telecommunications and postal services.

4398. Ministry of Parliamentary Affairs: Coordination of government business in Parliament.

4399. Ministry of Personnel, Public Grievances and Pensions: Personnel administration, public grievances and pensions.

QUICK REVISION

4400. Cabinet Committees → Not constitutional bodies.

4401. CCS → Security and defence matters.

4402. CCEA → Economic matters.

4403. Ministry → Major government administrative unit.

4404. Department → Unit within a Ministry.

4405. Minister → Political head.

4406. Secretary → Administrative head.

CENTRE–STATE RELATIONS

4408. Centre–State Relations: Relationship between the Union Government and State Governments in India.

4409. Constitutional Basis: Mainly **Part XI, Articles 245–263**.

4410. Three Areas: Legislative relations, administrative relations and financial relations.

LEGISLATIVE RELATIONS

4411. Union List: Subjects on which Parliament normally has exclusive law-making power.

4412. State List: Subjects on which State Legislatures normally have law-making power.

4413. Concurrent List: Subjects on which both Parliament and State Legislatures can make laws.

4414. Seventh Schedule: Contains the **Union List, State List and Concurrent List**.

4415. Residuary Powers: Powers over matters not listed in any of the three lists belong to **Parliament**.

4416. Article 246: Distributes legislative powers between Union and States.

ADMINISTRATIVE RELATIONS

4417. Article 256: States must exercise their executive power to ensure compliance with laws made by Parliament.

4418. Article 257: State executive power must not impede (obstruct) the exercise of Union executive power.

4419. Inter-State Council: Constitutional provision under **Article 263** for coordination and discussion between States and the Union.

FINANCIAL RELATIONS

4420. Financial Relations: Distribution of taxation powers and financial resources between Union and States.

4421. Finance Commission: Recommends distribution of certain tax revenues between Union and States.

4422. Grants-in-Aid: Financial assistance given by the Union to States under constitutional and legal provisions.

IMPORTANT TERM

4423. Federalism: System in which powers are divided between the Union and State Governments.

4424. Cooperative Federalism: Union and States work together to achieve common goals.

4425. Competitive Federalism: States compete to improve development, investment and governance.

QUICK REVISION

4426. Centre–State Relations → Part XI.

4427. Articles → 245–263.

4428. Three Relations → Legislative + Administrative + Financial.

4429. Seventh Schedule → Three Legislative Lists.

4430. Residuary Powers → Parliament.

4431. Inter-State Council → Article 263.

INTER-STATE RELATIONS + ZONAL COUNCILS

INTER-STATE COUNCIL

4433. Inter-State Council: Constitutional mechanism for coordination and discussion between the Union and States and among States.

4434. Constitutional Basis: Article 263.

4435. Establishment: The President may establish an Inter-State Council when considered necessary in the public interest.

4436. Main Functions: Investigates and discusses matters of common interest, advises on inter-State disputes and recommends better coordination of policies and actions.

4437. Nature: It is mainly an **advisory body (gives advice, not binding decisions)**.

4438. Important: It does **not act as a court** to decide inter-State disputes.

ZONAL COUNCILS

4439. Zonal Councils: Regional forums created to promote cooperation between States and help resolve inter-State and Centre–State issues.

4440. Legal Basis: States Reorganisation Act, 1956.

4441. Number: 5 Zonal Councils — Northern, Central, Eastern, Western and Southern.

4442. Chairman: Union Home Minister.

4443. Vice-Chairman: Chief Ministers of the States in the zone, by rotation.

4444. Main Purpose: Promote cooperation, discuss common problems and help resolve inter-State issues.

4445. North Eastern Council: North-Eastern States are dealt with through the **North Eastern Council**, established under the **North Eastern Council Act, 1972**.

INTER-STATE WATER DISPUTES

4446. Article 262: Provides for adjudication (legal settlement) of disputes relating to waters of inter-State rivers.

4447. Parliament: Can make a law providing for settlement of such disputes.

4448. Inter-State River Water Disputes Act, 1956: Provides a legal framework for adjudication of inter-State river water disputes.

QUICK REVISION

4449. Inter-State Council → Article 263.

4450. Inter-State Council → Advisory and coordination body.

4451. Zonal Councils → States Reorganisation Act, 1956.

4452. Zonal Councils → 5.

4453. Chairman → Union Home Minister.

4454. Article 262 → Inter-State water disputes.

EMERGENCY PROVISIONS

4456. Emergency Provisions: Special constitutional provisions used during serious national, State or financial crises.

4457. Constitutional Basis: Part XVIII, Articles 352–360.

NATIONAL EMERGENCY

4458. National Emergency: Declared when the security of India or any part of it is threatened by **war, external aggression or armed rebellion**.

4459. Article: 352.

4460. Authority: President issues the proclamation on the basis of the **written advice of the Union Cabinet**.

4461. Parliamentary Approval: Must be approved by both Houses of Parliament within **1 month**.

4462. Duration: Once approved, it continues for **6 months at a time** and can be extended with parliamentary approval.

4463. Lok Sabha: Can disapprove the continuation of a National Emergency.

4464. Effect: Union Government becomes stronger and Parliament can make laws on matters in the State List.

4465. Article 19: Automatically suspended only when the Emergency is declared on the ground of **war or external aggression**.

4466. Articles 20 & 21: Rights under Articles 20 and 21 cannot be suspended through an order under Article 359.

PRESIDENT'S RULE

4467. President's Rule: Union takes over certain functions of a State when constitutional machinery in the State cannot function according to the Constitution.

4468. Article: 356.

4469. Basis: Governor's report or otherwise.

4470. Parliamentary Approval: Must be approved by both Houses within **2 months**.

4471. Duration: Normally **6 months at a time**, subject to constitutional conditions; maximum generally **3 years**.

4472. State Assembly: May be dissolved or kept in suspended animation (temporarily inactive).

FINANCIAL EMERGENCY

4473. Financial Emergency: Declared when the financial stability or credit of India or any part of it is threatened.

4474. Article: 360.

4475. Approval: Must be approved by Parliament within **2 months**.

4476. Important: No Financial Emergency has ever been declared in India.

QUICK REVISION

4477. Part XVIII → Emergency Provisions.

4478. Article 352 → National Emergency.

4479. Article 356 → President's Rule.

4480. Article 360 → Financial Emergency.

4481. National Emergency Grounds → War + External Aggression + Armed Rebellion.

4482. President's Rule → Failure of constitutional machinery in a State.

4483. Financial Emergency → Financial stability or credit threatened.

ELECTIONS & ELECTORAL SYSTEM

4485. Election: Process through which people choose their representatives.

4486. Constitutional Basis: Part XV, Articles 324–329.

4487. Election Commission of India (ECI): Constitutional body responsible for superintendence, direction and control of elections.

4488. Article 324: Gives constitutional authority to the Election Commission.

4489. Elections Conducted: Lok Sabha, Rajya Sabha, State Legislative Assemblies, State Legislative Councils, President and Vice-President.

4490. Universal Adult Suffrage: Every citizen meeting the legal requirements can vote after attaining **18 years**.

4491. Voting Age: Reduced from 21 to 18 by the **61st Constitutional Amendment Act, 1988**.

4492. Electoral Roll: Official list of registered voters.

4493. Constituency: Geographical area from which voters elect a representative.

4494. General Election: Election held to elect members of the Lok Sabha or a State Legislative Assembly after the normal term ends or the House is dissolved.

4495. By-Election: Election held to fill a vacant seat before the normal term ends.

4496. Mid-Term Election: Election held before the normal five-year term of a House is completed because the House is dissolved.

ELECTORAL SYSTEM

4497. First-Past-the-Post (FPTP): Candidate receiving the highest number of votes in a constituency wins.

4498. India: Lok Sabha and State Assembly elections mainly use the **FPTP system**.

4499. Proportional Representation: Seats are allocated broadly according to the proportion of votes received.

4500. Rajya Sabha: Members elected by elected members of State Legislative Assemblies through **proportional representation by means of single transferable vote**.

4501. President: Elected through proportional representation by means of **single transferable vote**.

4502. Vice-President: Elected by members of both Houses of Parliament through proportional representation by means of single transferable vote.

IMPORTANT ELECTION TERMS

4503. Secret Ballot: Voting method in which the voter's choice is kept confidential.

4504. NOTA: None of the Above option for voters who do not wish to choose any candidate.

4505. Model Code of Conduct: Guidelines issued by the Election Commission for political parties and candidates during elections.

4506. Voter ID: EPIC — Elector Photo Identity Card.

4507. EPIC: Identity card issued to registered electors.

4508. Delimitation: Process of fixing or redrawing boundaries of constituencies.

4509. Delimitation Commission: Statutory body constituted under a law of Parliament to carry out delimitation.

4510. Electoral College: Group of elected or otherwise specified representatives who elect a constitutional office-holder.

QUICK REVISION

4511. Elections → Part XV.

4512. Articles → 324–329.

4513. ECI → Article 324.

4514. Voting Age → 18 years.

4515. Voting Age Amendment → 61st Amendment, 1988.

4516. Lok Sabha Elections → FPTP.

4517. Rajya Sabha → Proportional Representation + Single Transferable Vote.

4518. President → Proportional Representation + Single Transferable Vote.

4519. Vice-President → Proportional Representation + Single Transferable Vote.

POLITICAL PARTIES + ANTI-DEFECTION + ELECTION SYMBOLS

POLITICAL PARTIES

4521. Political Party: A group of people organised to contest elections and form or influence government.

4522. Recognition: Election Commission recognises political parties as **National Parties or State Parties** according to legal criteria.

4523. National Party: Political party recognised by the Election Commission as a national party under the applicable rules.

4524. State Party: Political party recognised by the Election Commission as a State party in a particular State/UT under the applicable rules.

4525. Election Symbol: Symbol allotted by the Election Commission to recognised political parties and candidates according to law.

ANTI-DEFECTION LAW

4526. Defection: Changing political party membership or position by an elected legislator in circumstances covered by the law.

4527. Anti-Defection Law: Added to the Constitution through the **52nd Constitutional Amendment Act, 1985**.

4528. Tenth Schedule: Contains provisions relating to disqualification on the ground of defection.

4529. Main Purpose: To prevent political defections and promote stability in elected governments.

4530. Disqualification: A member may be disqualified for voluntarily giving up membership of a political party or voting/abstaining contrary to the party direction, subject to constitutional exceptions.

4531. Independent Member: An elected independent member can be disqualified if they join a political party after election.

4532. Nominated Member: A nominated member may join a political party within **6 months** of taking the seat; joining after that can attract disqualification.

4533. Speaker/Chairman: Decides questions of disqualification under the Tenth Schedule, subject to judicial review.

4534. 91st Constitutional Amendment Act, 2003: Removed the earlier exception relating to **one-third split** and strengthened the anti-defection provisions.

4535. Merger Exception: Defection provisions do not apply to a merger when **at least two-thirds** of the members of the legislature party agree to the merger.

ELECTION SYMBOLS

4536. Election Symbols: Help voters identify political parties and candidates.

4537. Election Symbols (Reservation and Allotment) Order, 1968: Main legal framework governing reservation and allotment of election symbols.

4538. Reserved Symbol: Symbol reserved for a recognised political party.

4539. Free Symbol: Symbol available for allotment to eligible candidates according to Election Commission rules.

QUICK REVISION

4540. Anti-Defection → 52nd Amendment, 1985.

4541. Anti-Defection Schedule → Tenth Schedule.

4542. One-Third Split Exception → Removed by 91st Amendment, 2003.

4543. Merger Exception → Two-thirds members.

4544. Defection Decision → Speaker/Chairman, subject to judicial review.

4545. Election Symbols → Election Commission.

4546. Symbol Order → Election Symbols (Reservation and Allotment) Order, 1968.

IMPORTANT CONSTITUTIONAL AMENDMENTS + BASIC STRUCTURE

CONSTITUTIONAL AMENDMENTS

4548. Constitutional Amendment: Formal change made to the Constitution according to **Article 368** and other applicable constitutional provisions.

4549. Article 368: Provides the main procedure for amendment of the Constitution.

4550. Types of Amendment: Some provisions can be changed by **simple majority**, some by **special majority**, and some by **special majority + ratification by at least half of the State Legislatures**.

4551. Simple Majority: More than half of the members present and voting, for matters where the Constitution permits this method.

4552. Special Majority: Majority of the total membership of each House **and** two-thirds of members present and voting.

4553. State Ratification: Certain federal provisions also require approval by at least **50% of State Legislatures**.

IMPORTANT AMENDMENTS

4554. 1st Amendment, 1951: Introduced important changes relating to fundamental rights, reasonable restrictions and land reform laws.

4555. 7th Amendment, 1956: Reorganised States and changed the constitutional classification of States and Union Territories.

4556. 42nd Amendment, 1976: Known as the **"Mini-Constitution"** because of its wide-ranging changes.

4557. 42nd Amendment: Added **Socialist, Secular and Integrity** to the Preamble.

4558. 42nd Amendment: Added **Fundamental Duties** under Article 51A.

4559. 44th Amendment, 1978: Reversed several Emergency-era changes and strengthened safeguards for individual liberty.

4560. 44th Amendment: Right to Property ceased to be a Fundamental Right and became a **constitutional/legal right under Article 300A**.

4561. 52nd Amendment, 1985: Added the **Tenth Schedule** dealing with anti-defection.

4562. 61st Amendment, 1988: Reduced voting age from **21 to 18 years**.

4563. 73rd Amendment, 1992: Gave constitutional status to **Panchayati Raj Institutions**.

4564. 74th Amendment, 1992: Gave constitutional status to **Municipalities**.

4565. 86th Amendment, 2002: Inserted **Article 21A**, making free and compulsory education a Fundamental Right for children aged 6–14 years.

4566. 101st Amendment, 2016: Introduced the constitutional framework for **GST**.

4567. 102nd Amendment, 2018: Gave constitutional status to the **National Commission for Backward Classes**.

4568. 103rd Amendment, 2019: Introduced up to **10% reservation for Economically Weaker Sections (EWS)** in education and public employment, subject to constitutional provisions.

4569. 106th Amendment, 2023: Provides for reservation of approximately **one-third of seats for women** in the Lok Sabha, State Legislative Assemblies and Delhi Assembly, subject to the constitutional conditions for its implementation.

BASIC STRUCTURE DOCTRINE

4570. Basic Structure Doctrine: Parliament cannot destroy the basic features of the Constitution through the amendment power.

4571. Kesavananda Bharati Case: Basic Structure Doctrine was established by the Supreme Court in **1973**.

4572. Kesavananda Bharati Case: Parliament has wide power to amend the Constitution but cannot alter its basic structure.

4573. Judicial Review: Considered an important feature of the constitutional system.

4574. Rule of Law: No person is above the law.

4575. Separation of Powers: Legislative, executive and judicial powers are distributed among different organs.

4576. Federalism: Division of powers between the Union and States.

4577. Secularism: State does not establish or favour any particular religion.

4578. Democracy: Government ultimately derives authority from the people.

4579. Republicanism: Head of the State is elected, directly or indirectly, rather than being a hereditary monarch.

4580. Parliamentary System: Executive is responsible to the elected legislature.

4581. Fundamental Rights: Protection of basic rights is an important constitutional feature.

4582. Dignity and Liberty: Individual dignity and liberty are important constitutional values.

QUICK REVISION

4583. Amendment Procedure → Article 368.

4584. Mini-Constitution → 42nd Amendment, 1976.

4585. Emergency Safeguards → 44th Amendment, 1978.

4586. Anti-Defection → 52nd Amendment, 1985.

4587. Voting Age 18 → 61st Amendment, 1988.

4588. Panchayats → 73rd Amendment.

4589. Municipalities → 74th Amendment.

4590. Right to Education → 86th Amendment.

4591. GST → 101st Amendment.

4592. NCBC → 102nd Amendment.

4593. EWS Reservation → 103rd Amendment.

4594. Women's Reservation → 106th Amendment.

4595. Basic Structure Doctrine → Kesavananda Bharati Case, 1973.

WORLD GEOGRAPHY — PART 1

UNIVERSE, GALAXY & SOLAR SYSTEM

1. UNIVERSE

- **Universe** means everything that exists — space, galaxies, stars, planets, gases, dust and other celestial objects.
- The most accepted explanation for its beginning is the **Big Bang Theory**.

- The Universe began about **13.8 billion years ago** from an extremely hot and dense state.
- The Universe is **still expanding**.
- **Galaxy** = a huge system of stars, gas and dust held together by gravity.
- The observable Universe contains **billions of galaxies**.
- **Milky Way** is the galaxy in which our Solar System is located.
- The Milky Way is a **barred spiral galaxy**.
- A **star** produces its own light and heat.
- A **planet** does not produce its own light; it reflects light from a star.
- **Gravity** is the force that keeps planets and other objects in their orbits.

2. SOLAR SYSTEM

- **Solar System** = Sun + 8 planets + their moons + dwarf planets + asteroids + comets + meteoroids and other objects.
- **Sun** is the centre of our Solar System.
- The Sun is a **star**.
- The Sun contains about **99.8% of the Solar System's total mass**.
- Planets revolve around the Sun in **orbits** because of gravity.
- There are **8 planets** in the Solar System.

3. PLANETS — ORDER FROM THE SUN

Mercury → Venus → Earth → Mars → Jupiter → Saturn → Uranus → Neptune

4. IMPORTANT PLANET FACTS

Planet	Important Fact
Mercury	Closest planet to the Sun; smallest planet
Venus	Hottest planet; brightest planet seen from Earth
Earth	Only known planet with life; has liquid surface water
Mars	Known as the **Red Planet**
Jupiter	Largest planet
Saturn	Famous for its prominent rings
Uranus	Rotates almost on its side
Neptune	Farthest planet from the Sun

5. OTHER IMPORTANT SPACE OBJECTS

- **Moon:** Earth's natural satellite.
- **Dwarf Planet:** A celestial body that orbits the Sun but does not clear its orbital neighbourhood. **Pluto** is a famous example.
- **Asteroid:** Rocky object mainly found in the **Asteroid Belt between Mars and Jupiter**.
- **Comet:** Mainly made of ice, dust and rock; develops a bright tail when it comes near the Sun.
- **Meteoroid:** Small rocky or metallic object travelling through space.
- **Meteor:** A meteoroid that burns while entering Earth's atmosphere — often called a **shooting star**.

- **Meteorite:** A piece that survives the atmosphere and reaches Earth's surface.

6. IMPORTANT TERMS

Celestial Body: Any natural object in space.

Orbit: The path followed by a planet or satellite around another body.

Rotation: Spinning of an object on its own axis.

Revolution: Movement of one body around another body.

Gravity: Force of attraction between objects.

EXAM QUICK REVISION

- **Universe age → ~13.8 billion years**
- **Our Galaxy → Milky Way**
- **Our Star → Sun**
- **Planets → 8**
- **Largest Planet → Jupiter**
- **Smallest Planet → Mercury**
- **Hottest Planet → Venus**
- **Red Planet → Mars**
- **Earth's Satellite → Moon**
- **Farthest Planet → Neptune**
- **Asteroid Belt → Between Mars & Jupiter**
- **Pluto → Dwarf Planet**

EARTH: SHAPE, MOVEMENTS, DAY & NIGHT AND SEASONS

1. EARTH — BASIC FACTS

- **Earth** is the **third planet** from the Sun.
- It is the **fifth-largest planet** in the Solar System.
- Earth is often called the **Blue Planet** because about **71% of its surface is covered by water**.
- About **29%** is land.
- Earth is not a perfect sphere. It is slightly **flattened at the poles** and wider at the Equator.
- This shape is called **oblate spheroid**.
- Earth has one natural satellite — the **Moon**.

2. ROTATION

- **Rotation** = Earth spinning on its own axis.
- Earth rotates from **west to east**.

- One complete rotation takes about **24 hours**.
- Rotation causes **day and night**.
- The side facing the Sun has **day**; the opposite side has **night**.
- Earth rotates through **360° in about 24 hours**.
- Therefore, Earth rotates about **15° per hour**.

3. REVOLUTION

- **Revolution** = Earth's movement around the Sun.
- Earth takes about **365¼ days** to complete one revolution.
- A normal calendar year has **365 days**.
- The extra quarter day is adjusted as a **leap year** once every four years (with century-year exceptions).
- Earth's orbit around the Sun is **elliptical** (slightly oval), not a perfect circle.

4. SEASONS

Seasons are mainly caused by:

1. **Earth's 23½° axial tilt**
2. **Earth's revolution around the Sun**

- Earth's axis remains tilted in nearly the same direction as Earth revolves around the Sun.
- When the **Northern Hemisphere** is tilted towards the Sun, it experiences **summer**.
- At the same time, the **Southern Hemisphere** experiences winter.
- When the Northern Hemisphere is tilted away from the Sun, it experiences winter.

5. IMPORTANT DATES

21 June — Summer Solstice

- Northern Hemisphere has its **longest day and shortest night**.
- Sun's direct rays fall on the **Tropic of Cancer**.

22 December — Winter Solstice

- Northern Hemisphere has its **shortest day and longest night**.
- Sun's direct rays fall on the **Tropic of Capricorn**.

Around 21 March — Spring/Vernal Equinox

- Day and night are approximately equal.
- Sun's direct rays fall on the **Equator**.

Around 23 September — Autumnal Equinox

- Day and night are approximately equal.
- Sun's direct rays fall on the **Equator**.

QUICK REVISION

- **Earth → 3rd planet from Sun**
- **Shape → Oblate spheroid**
- **Rotation → ~24 hours → Day & Night**
- **Revolution → ~365¼ days → Year**
- **Axis Tilt → 23½°**
- **21 June → Summer Solstice**
- **22 December → Winter Solstice**
- **21 March & 23 September → Equinoxes**
- **Main cause of seasons → Axial tilt + Revolution**

LATITUDES, LONGITUDES & IMPORTANT LINES

1. LATITUDE

- **Latitude** = imaginary lines drawn **east–west** around the Earth.
- They measure distance **north or south of the Equator**.
- Latitude is measured in **degrees (°)**.
- **Equator = 0° latitude**.
- Latitude increases from **0° to 90°** towards either pole.
- **North Pole = 90°N**.
- **South Pole = 90°S**.

2. IMPORTANT LATITUDES

Line	**Location**
Equator	0°
Tropic of Cancer	23½°N
Tropic of Capricorn	23½°S
Arctic Circle	66½°N
Antarctic Circle	66½°S
North Pole	90°N
South Pole	90°S

3. LONGITUDE

- **Longitude** = imaginary lines running from **North Pole to South Pole**.
- They measure distance **east or west of the Prime Meridian**.
- Longitudes are also called **meridians**.
- **Prime Meridian = 0° longitude**.
- It passes through **Greenwich, London, UK**.
- Longitude ranges from **0° to 180° East or West**.
- **180°E and 180°W** represent the same line.

4. LATITUDE VS LONGITUDE

Latitude → East–West lines → Measures North/South position.

Longitude → North–South lines → Measures East/West position.

5. PRIME MERIDIAN

- Prime Meridian is **0° longitude**.
- It divides Earth into **Eastern Hemisphere and Western Hemisphere**.
- It passes through **Greenwich** in London.
- It is the reference line for calculating longitude and world time.

6. INTERNATIONAL DATE LINE

- Roughly follows **180° longitude**.
- It is located mainly over the **Pacific Ocean**.
- Crossing it changes the **calendar date by one day**.
- It is not perfectly straight because it bends around countries and island groups.

7. HEAT ZONES

Torrid Zone: Between **Tropic of Cancer and Tropic of Capricorn**.

Temperate Zones: Between the tropics and polar circles in both hemispheres.

Frigid Zones: Between the Arctic/Antarctic Circles and the poles.

QUICK REVISION

- **Equator → 0° latitude**
- **Prime Meridian → 0° longitude**
- **Tropic of Cancer → 23½°N**
- **Tropic of Capricorn → 23½°S**
- **Arctic Circle → 66½°N**
- **Antarctic Circle → 66½°S**
- **North Pole → 90°N**
- **South Pole → 90°S**
- **International Date Line → roughly 180°**
- **Latitude → North/South**
- **Longitude → East/West**

TIME ZONES, GMT, UTC & INTERNATIONAL DATE LINE

1. LOCAL TIME

- **Local Time:** Time based on the position of the Sun at a particular longitude.
- Earth rotates **360° in about 24 hours**.
- Therefore, **15° longitude = 1 hour**.
- **1° longitude = 4 minutes**.
- Moving **east → time increases**.
- Moving **west → time decreases**.

2. TIME ZONES

- **Time Zone:** A region where the same standard time is used.
- The Earth is divided into approximately **24 standard time zones**.
- Each ideal time zone covers about **15° of longitude**.
- Countries may use time zones that do not exactly follow these 15° divisions because of political and practical reasons.

3. GMT

- **GMT = Greenwich Mean Time**.
- Based on the **Prime Meridian (0°)** at Greenwich.
- Historically used as an international reference for time.
- Today, **UTC** is the main international time standard.

4. UTC

- **UTC = Coordinated Universal Time**.
- It is the world's main **international time standard**.
- It is based on highly precise atomic clocks, with adjustments related to Earth's rotation when required.
- UTC is **not a time zone**; it is the reference standard from which time zones are expressed.

5. INDIAN STANDARD TIME

- **IST = Indian Standard Time**.
- India uses **UTC + 5:30**.
- IST is based on the **82°30′E longitude**.
- The Standard Meridian of India passes near **Mirzapur, Uttar Pradesh**.
- India follows **one standard time** across the country.

6. INTERNATIONAL DATE LINE

- Located approximately along **180° longitude**.
- Mainly passes through the **Pacific Ocean**.
- Crossing it changes the date by **one day**.
- **Westward crossing → add one day.**

- **Eastward crossing → subtract one day.**
- It bends around islands and countries to avoid dividing some territories into two different dates.

QUICK REVISION

- **15° longitude → 1 hour**
- **1° longitude → 4 minutes**
- **East → Time increases**
- **West → Time decreases**
- **GMT → Greenwich reference time**
- **UTC → International time standard**
- **IST → UTC + 5:30**
- **India's Standard Meridian → 82°30′E**
- **International Date Line → Approximately 180°**
- **Date changes → By 1 day**

CONTINENTS & OCEANS

1. CONTINENTS

A **continent** is a very large continuous landmass.

There are **7 continents**:

Continent	Important Facts
Asia	Largest continent; most populous
Africa	2nd-largest; Equator passes through it
North America	3rd-largest; includes Canada, USA, Mexico
South America	Amazon Basin and Andes Mountains
Antarctica	Coldest continent; almost completely covered by ice
Europe	2nd-smallest continent; highly developed and densely populated in many areas
Australia	Smallest continent

2. IMPORTANT CONTINENT FACTS

- **Largest continent → Asia**
- **Smallest continent → Australia**
- **Most populous → Asia**
- **Least populated → Antarctica** (no permanent resident population)
- **Coldest → Antarctica**
- **Hottest continent → Africa**
- **Highest mountain → Mount Everest (Asia)**
- **Longest mountain range on land → Andes (South America)**
- **Largest desert by area → Antarctica**

- **Largest hot desert → Sahara (Africa)**

3. OCEANS

An **ocean** is a very large body of salt water covering much of Earth's surface.

There are **5 oceans**:

1. **Pacific Ocean**
2. **Atlantic Ocean**
3. **Indian Ocean**
4. **Southern Ocean**
5. **Arctic Ocean**

4. IMPORTANT OCEAN FACTS

- **Largest ocean → Pacific Ocean**
- **Smallest ocean → Arctic Ocean**
- **Deepest ocean → Pacific Ocean**
- **Mariana Trench → deepest known oceanic trench**
- **Indian Ocean → named after India**
- **Southern Ocean → surrounds Antarctica**
- **Arctic Ocean → smallest and shallowest ocean**

5. CONTINENTS & OCEANS — LOCATION

- **Asia:** North of Indian Ocean; east of Europe.
- **Africa:** Between Atlantic and Indian Oceans.
- **Europe:** North of Mediterranean Sea and west of Asia.
- **North America:** Between Pacific and Atlantic Oceans.
- **South America:** Between Pacific and Atlantic Oceans.
- **Australia:** Between Indian and Pacific Oceans.
- **Antarctica:** Around the South Pole, surrounded by the Southern Ocean.

QUICK REVISION

7 Continents → Asia, Africa, North America, South America, Antarctica, Europe, Australia.

5 Oceans → Pacific, Atlantic, Indian, Southern, Arctic.

Largest Continent → Asia

Smallest Continent → Australia

Largest Ocean → Pacific

Smallest Ocean → Arctic

Coldest Continent → Antarctica

Hottest Continent → Africa

Largest Hot Desert → Sahara

INTERIOR OF THE EARTH + ROCKS + MINERALS

1. INTERIOR OF THE EARTH

Earth is mainly divided into **3 layers**:

1. Crust

- Outermost and thinnest layer.
- We live on the crust.
- **Continental crust** is generally thicker and less dense.
- **Oceanic crust** is thinner and denser.

2. Mantle

- Lies below the crust.
- Extends to about **2,900 km** depth.
- Made mainly of silicate-rich rocks.
- Movement of material in the mantle helps drive **plate tectonics**.

3. Core

- Innermost layer.
- Mainly composed of **iron and nickel**.
- Divided into:
    - **Outer Core → liquid**
    - **Inner Core → solid**
- Movement in the outer core produces Earth's **magnetic field**.

2. IMPORTANT TERMS

Lithosphere: Rigid outer layer made of the crust and uppermost mantle.

Asthenosphere: Weaker, partly plastic layer below the lithosphere.

Magma: Molten rock **below Earth's surface**.

Lava: Magma that reaches **Earth's surface**.

ROCKS

A **rock** is a natural solid material made of one or more minerals.

3. THREE MAIN TYPES OF ROCKS

Igneous Rocks

- Form when **magma or lava cools and solidifies**.
- Also called **primary rocks**.
- Examples: **Granite, Basalt**.

Sedimentary Rocks

- Form from **deposition, compaction and cementation** of sediments.
- Often occur in **layers**.
- Fossils are commonly found in them.
- Examples: **Sandstone, Limestone, Shale**.

Metamorphic Rocks

- Existing rocks changed by **heat, pressure or both**.
- Examples: **Marble, Slate, Quartzite**.

4. ROCK CYCLE

Magma → Igneous Rock → Sediments → Sedimentary Rock → Metamorphic Rock → Melting → Magma

Rocks can continuously change from one type to another.

MINERALS

Mineral: Naturally occurring inorganic substance with a definite chemical composition and characteristic properties.

IMPORTANT MINERALS

- **Iron** → Steel and machinery
- **Copper** → Electrical wires
- **Bauxite** → Main ore of aluminium
- **Mica** → Electrical and industrial uses

- **Gold** → Jewellery and electronics
- **Coal** → Major fossil fuel
- **Petroleum** → Fuel and petrochemical industry

QUICK REVISION

- **3 Earth layers → Crust + Mantle + Core**
- **Outer Core → Liquid**
- **Inner Core → Solid**
- **Magma → Below surface**
- **Lava → On/at surface**
- **Igneous → Cooling of magma/lava**
- **Sedimentary → Sediments**
- **Metamorphic → Heat + Pressure**
- **Fossils → Commonly found in sedimentary rocks**
- **Bauxite → Aluminium ore**

PLATE TECTONICS + EARTHQUAKES + VOLCANOES

1. CONTINENTAL DRIFT

- **Continental Drift Theory** was proposed by **Alfred Wegener in 1912**.
- It states that continents were once joined together and later moved apart.
- The ancient supercontinent was called **Pangaea**.
- Pangaea was surrounded by a huge ocean called **Panthalassa**.
- Pangaea later divided into **Laurasia** (northern part) and **Gondwana** (southern part).

2. PLATE TECTONICS

- **Plate Tectonics:** Theory that Earth's lithosphere is divided into large plates that move slowly.
- Plates move over the weaker **asthenosphere**.
- Their movement is mainly related to heat-driven processes inside Earth.
- Major plates include **Pacific, North American, South American, Eurasian, African, Antarctic and Indo-Australian** plates.

3. TYPES OF PLATE BOUNDARIES

Divergent Boundary

- Plates move **away from each other**.
- New crust is formed.
- Common at **mid-ocean ridges**.

Convergent Boundary

- Plates move **towards each other**.
- One plate may subduct (sink beneath another) or mountains may form.
- Example: **Indian Plate + Eurasian Plate → Himalayas**.

Transform Boundary

- Plates slide **past each other horizontally**.
- Can cause earthquakes.
- Example: **San Andreas Fault, California**.

EARTHQUAKES

- **Earthquake:** Sudden shaking of Earth's surface caused by release of energy inside Earth.
- **Focus/Hypocentre:** Point inside Earth where the earthquake begins.
- **Epicentre:** Point on Earth's surface directly above the focus.
- **Seismic Waves:** Waves produced by an earthquake.
- **Seismograph:** Instrument used to record earthquake vibrations.
- **Magnitude:** Measures the size/energy released by an earthquake.
- **Tsunami:** Series of large sea waves usually caused by undersea earthquakes, volcanic eruptions or landslides.

VOLCANOES

- **Volcano:** Opening in Earth's crust through which magma, gases and ash reach the surface.
- **Active Volcano:** Currently erupting or likely to erupt again.
- **Dormant Volcano:** Not currently erupting but may erupt in the future.
- **Extinct Volcano:** Not expected to erupt again.

IMPORTANT VOLCANIC AREAS

- **Pacific Ring of Fire:** Major zone of earthquakes and volcanoes around the Pacific Ocean.
- **Mount Etna:** Active volcano in Italy.
- **Mount Fuji:** Volcano in Japan.

QUICK REVISION

- **Continental Drift → Alfred Wegener → 1912**
- **Supercontinent → Pangaea**
- **Divergent → Move apart**
- **Convergent → Move together**
- **Transform → Slide past**
- **Focus → Inside Earth**

- **Epicentre → Surface**
- **Seismograph → Records earthquakes**
- **Tsunami → Large sea waves**
- **Ring of Fire → Pacific region**

MAJOR MOUNTAINS, PLATEAUS & PLAINS OF THE WORLD

1. MOUNTAINS

Mountain: A natural elevation of Earth's surface, usually much higher and steeper than surrounding land.

Major Mountain Systems

- **Himalayas → Asia** — world's highest mountain system.
- **Andes → South America** — world's longest continental mountain range.
- **Rocky Mountains → North America**.
- **Alps → Europe**.
- **Atlas Mountains → North-West Africa**.
- **Ural Mountains → Europe & Asia** — traditional boundary between Europe and Asia.
- **Great Dividing Range → Australia**.

IMPORTANT PEAKS

- **Mount Everest → 8,848.86 m → highest mountain above sea level.**
- **K2 → 8,611 m → second-highest mountain.**
- **Aconcagua → South America → highest peak outside Asia.**
- **Denali → North America → highest peak in North America.**
- **Mount Elbrus → Europe → commonly considered Europe's highest peak.**

---

2. PLATEAUS

Plateau: A broad area of relatively flat land that is **higher than the surrounding land**.

- **Tibetan Plateau → Asia** — world's highest and largest high plateau.
- **Deccan Plateau → India**.
- **Brazilian Highlands → South America**.
- **Ethiopian Highlands → Africa**.
- **Colorado Plateau → North America**.

Important: Plateaus are sometimes called **tablelands** because of their relatively flat tops.

---

3. PLAINS

Plain: A large area of relatively **flat or gently rolling land**, usually at low elevation.

- **Indo-Gangetic Plain → South Asia**.
- **Great Plains → North America**.
- **North European Plain → Europe**.
- **West Siberian Plain → Asia**.
- **Pampas → South America**.
- **North China Plain → China**.

WHY PLAINS ARE IMPORTANT

- Usually have **fertile soil**.
- Suitable for **agriculture**.
- Easier for **settlements and transport**.
- Many major cities and civilizations developed in plains.

QUICK REVISION

- **Highest mountain → Mount Everest**
- **Second-highest → K2**
- **Longest continental mountain range → Andes**
- **Highest mountain system → Himalayas**
- **Highest plateau → Tibetan Plateau**
- **Ural Mountains → Europe–Asia boundary**
- **Pampas → South America**
- **Great Plains → North America**
- **Indo-Gangetic Plain → South Asia**

MAJOR RIVERS, LAKES & WATERFALLS OF THE WORLD

1. MAJOR RIVERS

River: A natural stream of flowing water that usually flows towards a sea, lake or another river.

River	Important Fact
Nile	Traditionally regarded as the world's longest river; flows through north-eastern Africa
Amazon	Carries the largest volume of water; South America
Yangtze	Longest river in Asia; China
Mississippi–Missouri	Major river system of North America

Yenisei	Major river of Siberia; flows into Arctic Ocean
Congo	Deepest river in the world; Africa
Ganges	Major river of South Asia
Danube	Major European river; passes through many countries
Volga	Longest river in Europe; flows into Caspian Sea
Murray–Darling	Major river system of Australia

IMPORTANT RIVER FACTS

- **Longest river → Nile** *(commonly cited; exact ranking with Amazon is debated depending on measurement method).*
- **Largest water discharge → Amazon**
- **Longest river in Asia → Yangtze**
- **Longest river in Europe → Volga**
- **Major river of South America → Amazon**
- **Deepest river → Congo**

---

2. MAJOR LAKES

Lake: A body of water surrounded by land.

Lake	Important Fact
Caspian Sea	Largest enclosed inland water body
Lake Superior	Largest freshwater lake by surface area
Lake Baikal	Deepest freshwater lake
Lake Victoria	Largest lake in Africa; major source region of Nile system
Lake Tanganyika	One of the world's deepest lakes
Dead Sea	Very high salinity; famous for extremely low elevation

IMPORTANT

- **Largest lake by area → Caspian Sea**
- **Largest freshwater lake by surface area → Lake Superior**
- **Deepest lake → Lake Baikal**
- **Largest lake in Africa → Lake Victoria**

---

3. WATERFALLS

Waterfall: Water falling vertically or steeply from a higher level to a lower level.

- **Angel Falls → Venezuela → highest uninterrupted waterfall.**
- **Niagara Falls → USA & Canada → major waterfall system and tourist attraction.**

- **Victoria Falls → Zambia & Zimbabwe → one of the world's largest and most spectacular waterfalls.**
- **Iguazu Falls → Argentina & Brazil → famous large waterfall system.**

QUICK REVISION

- **Nile → commonly regarded as longest river**
- **Amazon → greatest water discharge**
- **Yangtze → longest in Asia**
- **Volga → longest in Europe**
- **Congo → deepest major river**
- **Caspian Sea → largest enclosed inland water body**
- **Lake Superior → largest freshwater lake by surface area**
- **Baikal → deepest lake**
- **Angel Falls → highest uninterrupted waterfall**
- **Niagara → USA–Canada**
- **Victoria Falls → Zambia–Zimbabwe**

ATMOSPHERE + WEATHER + CLIMATE

1. ATMOSPHERE

- **Atmosphere:** The layer of gases surrounding Earth.
- Main gases: **Nitrogen (~78%)**, **Oxygen (~21%)**, and about **1% other gases**.
- It protects life and helps regulate Earth's temperature.
- **Weather** occurs mainly in the **Troposphere**.

2. LAYERS OF ATMOSPHERE

From Earth upward:

1. Troposphere

- Lowest layer.
- Almost all **weather** occurs here.
- Contains most atmospheric water vapour.
- Temperature generally decreases with height.

2. Stratosphere

- Above troposphere.
- Contains the **Ozone Layer**.
- Commercial aircraft often cruise in the lower stratosphere.

3. Mesosphere

- Meteors commonly **burn up** here.
- One of the coldest atmospheric layers.

4. Thermosphere

- Very high temperatures due to absorption of high-energy solar radiation.
- **Auroras** occur mainly here.

5. Exosphere

- Outermost layer.
- Gradually merges into outer space.

3. OZONE LAYER

- Located mainly in the **stratosphere**.
- Absorbs much of the Sun's harmful **ultraviolet (UV) radiation**.
- Important for protecting living organisms.

---

4. WEATHER & CLIMATE

Weather: Short-term condition of the atmosphere at a particular place and time.

Climate: Long-term average pattern of weather of a place, generally calculated over **30 years or more**.

Main Elements

- **Temperature**
- **Air Pressure**
- **Wind**
- **Humidity**
- **Clouds**
- **Precipitation**

Temperature: Degree of hotness or coldness.

Humidity: Amount of water vapour present in the air.

Precipitation: Water falling from the atmosphere as rain, snow, sleet or hail.

Air Pressure: Force exerted by the weight of air.

QUICK REVISION

- **Atmosphere → Layer of gases around Earth**
- **Most abundant gas → Nitrogen**
- **Weather → Short-term**
- **Climate → Long-term**
- **Weather layer → Troposphere**
- **Ozone → Stratosphere**
- **Meteors → Mainly burn in Mesosphere**
- **Auroras → Mainly Thermosphere**
- **Outermost → Exosphere**
- **Ozone → Protects from harmful UV radiation**

AIR PRESSURE + WINDS + PRESSURE BELTS

1. AIR PRESSURE

- **Air Pressure:** Force exerted by the weight of air on Earth's surface.
- Measured using a **barometer**.
- Unit commonly used: **millibar (mb)** or **hectopascal (hPa)**.
- **Warm air → rises → Low pressure.**
- **Cold air → sinks → High pressure.**
- Air generally moves from **high-pressure areas to low-pressure areas**.

2. PRESSURE BELTS OF EARTH

There are **7 major pressure belts**:

1. **Equatorial Low-Pressure Belt**
2. **Subtropical High-Pressure Belts** — around 30° N & S
3. **Subpolar Low-Pressure Belts** — around 60° N & S
4. **Polar High-Pressure Belts** — around 90° N & S

Important: These are commonly described as **7 belts** because the subtropical, subpolar and polar belts occur in both hemispheres, while the equatorial belt is one continuous belt.

3. GLOBAL / PLANETARY WINDS

Trade Winds

- Blow from subtropical high-pressure belts towards the equatorial low-pressure belt.
- **Northern Hemisphere → North-East Trade Winds**
- **Southern Hemisphere → South-East Trade Winds**

Westerlies

- Blow from subtropical high pressure towards subpolar low pressure.
- Generally move **west → east**.
- Important in the **mid-latitudes**.

Polar Easterlies

- Blow from polar high pressure towards subpolar low pressure.
- Generally move **east → west**.

4. CORIOLIS EFFECT

- **Coriolis Effect:** Apparent deflection of moving air and water caused by Earth's rotation.
- Deflects moving objects **to the right in the Northern Hemisphere**.
- Deflects them **to the left in the Southern Hemisphere**.
- It is **zero at the Equator** and strongest near the poles.

IMPORTANT TERMS

Doldrums: Calm/low-wind region near the Equator, associated with the equatorial low-pressure belt.

Horse Latitudes: Subtropical high-pressure regions around **30° N and 30° S**, traditionally associated with calm conditions.

QUICK REVISION

- **Barometer → Measures air pressure**
- **Warm air → Low pressure**
- **Cold air → High pressure**
- **Air → High pressure to low pressure**
- **Trade Winds → Towards Equator**
- **Westerlies → West to East**
- **Polar Easterlies → East to West**
- **Coriolis → Right in North, Left in South**
- **Doldrums → Equatorial region**
- **Horse Latitudes → Around 30° N/S**

MONSOON + LOCAL WINDS + JET STREAMS + EL NIÑO & LA NIÑA

1. MONSOON

Monsoon: Seasonal reversal of winds, especially important in South and Southeast Asia.

- Main cause → **Unequal heating of land and sea**.
- **Summer:** Land heats strongly → low pressure develops over land → moist winds move from sea towards land → rainfall.

- **Winter:** Land cools → high pressure develops over land → winds generally move from land towards sea.
- Monsoon is important for **agriculture and water supply** in many Asian countries.

2. LOCAL WINDS

Loo

- Very hot and dry wind.
- Blows in parts of **North India and Pakistan** during summer.

Chinook

- Warm, dry wind on the eastern slopes of the **Rocky Mountains**.
- Known as a **snow-eater** because it can rapidly melt snow.

Foehn

- Warm, dry wind on the leeward side of the **Alps** in Europe.

Mistral

- Cold, dry wind in southern **France**.

Sirocco

- Hot wind originating from the **Sahara**, affecting parts of the Mediterranean region.

3. JET STREAMS

- **Jet Streams:** Narrow bands of very fast winds high in the atmosphere.
- They generally flow from **west to east**.
- They occur mainly near the **tropopause**.
- They influence **weather systems and the movement of storms**.
- The **Subtropical Westerly Jet** and **Tropical Easterly Jet** are important for the Indian monsoon.

4. EL NIÑO

- **El Niño:** Unusual warming of surface waters in the **central and eastern tropical Pacific Ocean**.
- It can disturb normal global weather patterns.
- It may affect rainfall, temperatures and fisheries in different regions.
- It is associated with changes in atmospheric circulation.

5. LA NIÑA

- **La Niña:** Unusual cooling of surface waters in the **central and eastern tropical Pacific Ocean**.
- It generally has effects opposite to El Niño in many regions.
- It can also influence global rainfall and temperature patterns.

6. ENSO

ENSO = El Niño–Southern Oscillation

It is a climate pattern involving changes in **Pacific Ocean temperatures and atmospheric pressure/circulation**.

QUICK REVISION

- **Monsoon → Seasonal reversal of winds**
- **Loo → Hot & dry**
- **Chinook → Rocky Mountains**
- **Foehn → Alps**
- **Mistral → Southern France**
- **Sirocco → Sahara → Mediterranean**
- **Jet Streams → Fast upper-air winds**
- **El Niño → Pacific warming**
- **La Niña → Pacific cooling**
- **ENSO → El Niño + Southern Oscillation**

HUMIDITY + CLOUDS + RAINFALL + CYCLONES

1. HUMIDITY

Humidity: Amount of water vapour present in the air.

- **Absolute Humidity:** Actual amount of water vapour in a given volume of air.
- **Relative Humidity:** Amount of water vapour present compared with the maximum amount the air can hold at that temperature.
- Warm air can generally hold **more water vapour** than cold air.
- When air becomes saturated, **relative humidity reaches 100%**.

2. CLOUDS

Cloud: A visible collection of tiny water droplets and/or ice crystals in the atmosphere.

Main types:

- **Cirrus:** High, thin and feathery clouds.

- **Cumulus:** Puffy, cotton-like clouds; often indicate fair weather.
- **Stratus:** Low, layered clouds covering much of the sky.
- **Nimbus:** Rain-bearing cloud term.

Cumulonimbus: Tall thunderstorm clouds that can produce **heavy rain, lightning, thunder and hail**.

---

3. PRECIPITATION

Precipitation: Water falling from the atmosphere to Earth's surface.

Forms include:

- **Rain**
- **Snow**
- **Sleet**
- **Hail**

4. TYPES OF RAINFALL

Convectional Rainfall

- Strong heating causes air to rise.
- Rising air cools → condensation → heavy rain.
- Common in **equatorial regions**.

Orographic/Relief Rainfall

- Moist air is forced to rise over mountains.
- **Windward side → more rainfall.**
- **Leeward side → less rainfall → Rain Shadow.**

Cyclonic/Frontal Rainfall

- Occurs when air masses meet or around low-pressure systems.
- Common in **mid-latitude regions**.

---

5. CYCLONES

Cyclone: A large system of winds rotating around a **low-pressure centre**.

Tropical Cyclone

- Forms over **warm tropical oceans**.
- Needs warm ocean water, generally around **26.5°C or higher**.
- Has strong winds and heavy rainfall.
- Called **Hurricane** in the Atlantic and eastern North Pacific.
- Called **Typhoon** in the western North Pacific.
- Called **Cyclone** in the Indian Ocean and South Pacific.

6. ANTICYCLONE

- System of winds around a **high-pressure centre**.
- Air generally **sinks**.
- Usually associated with **clearer and more stable weather**.

QUICK REVISION

- **Humidity → Water vapour in air**
- **Relative Humidity → Usually expressed as %**
- **Cloud → Water droplets/ice crystals**
- **Cirrus → High & thin**
- **Cumulus → Puffy**
- **Stratus → Layered**
- **Cumulonimbus → Thunderstorms**
- **Convectional Rain → Heating**
- **Orographic Rain → Mountains**
- **Windward → More rain**
- **Leeward → Rain shadow**
- **Cyclone → Low pressure**
- **Anticyclone → High pressure**
- **Hurricane → Atlantic/Eastern Pacific**
- **Typhoon → Western Pacific**

OCEANS: CURRENTS + TIDES + WAVES + CORAL REEFS

1. OCEAN CURRENTS

Ocean Current: Continuous movement of ocean water in a particular direction.

- Currents may be **warm or cold**.
- They are influenced by **winds, Earth's rotation, temperature, salinity and ocean shape**.
- They affect **climate, rainfall, fisheries and navigation**.

IMPORTANT WARM CURRENTS

- **Gulf Stream → North Atlantic Ocean**

- **Kuroshio Current → Western Pacific**
- **Brazil Current → South Atlantic**
- **Agulhas Current → Western Indian Ocean**

IMPORTANT COLD CURRENTS

- **Labrador Current → North Atlantic**
- **California Current → North Pacific**
- **Peru/Humboldt Current → Western South America**
- **Benguela Current → South-West Africa**
- **Canary Current → North-West Africa**
- **West Australian Current → Western Australia**

IMPORTANT FACT

Peru/Humboldt Current is one reason the waters off western South America are highly productive fishing grounds.

---

2. TIDES

Tide: Regular rise and fall of sea level mainly caused by the gravitational pull of the **Moon and Sun**, with the Moon having the stronger effect.

High Tide

- Sea level rises.

Low Tide

- Sea level falls.

Spring Tide

- Occurs near **New Moon and Full Moon**.
- Sun, Moon and Earth are approximately aligned.
- Produces **higher high tides and lower low tides**.

Neap Tide

- Occurs near the **First and Third Quarter Moon**.
- Sun and Moon pull at roughly right angles.
- Produces **smaller tidal ranges**.

---

3. WAVES

Wave: Movement of energy through ocean water, commonly caused by wind.

- Stronger winds generally produce larger waves.
- **Tsunami** is different from ordinary wind waves.
- Tsunamis are usually caused by **undersea earthquakes**, but can also result from volcanic eruptions or landslides.

---

4. CORAL REEFS

Coral Reef: Marine ecosystem built mainly by tiny organisms called **coral polyps**.

- Usually develop in **warm, shallow, clear and sunlit tropical seas**.
- Corals have a symbiotic relationship with algae called **zooxanthellae**.
- Important for **marine biodiversity and coastal protection**.

TYPES

Fringing Reef: Directly attached to or close to the coast.

Barrier Reef: Separated from the coast by a **lagoon**.

Atoll: Ring-shaped coral reef surrounding a lagoon, usually formed around a sinking volcanic island.

IMPORTANT

Great Barrier Reef → Australia → World's largest coral reef system.

QUICK REVISION

- **Ocean Current → Movement of ocean water**
- **Gulf Stream → Warm**
- **Labrador → Cold**
- **Humboldt/Peru → Cold**
- **Tides → Mainly Moon + Sun**
- **Spring Tide → New & Full Moon**
- **Neap Tide → First & Third Quarter**
- **Tsunami → Usually undersea earthquake**
- **Coral → Warm, shallow, clear water**
- **Great Barrier Reef → Australia**

NATURAL VEGETATION + BIOMES OF THE WORLD

1. NATURAL VEGETATION

Natural Vegetation: Plants that grow naturally without direct human cultivation.

The type of vegetation mainly depends on:

- **Temperature**
- **Rainfall**
- **Soil**
- **Relief**

---

2. TROPICAL RAINFOREST

- Found near the **Equator**.
- Hot and **very wet throughout the year**.
- Dense, evergreen forests.
- Very high biodiversity.
- Major regions: **Amazon Basin, Congo Basin, Southeast Asia**.
- **Amazon Rainforest → South America → largest tropical rainforest.**

---

3. SAVANNA GRASSLAND

- Found mainly in **tropical regions with distinct wet and dry seasons**.
- Tall grasses with scattered trees.
- Major region: **Africa**.
- Supports animals such as elephants, giraffes and lions.

---

4. DESERT VEGETATION

- Very **low rainfall**.
- Plants are adapted to dry conditions.
- Common plants: **Cactus, thorny shrubs and drought-resistant grasses**.
- Major deserts: **Sahara, Arabian, Kalahari, Atacama, Australian deserts**.

---

5. MEDITERRANEAN VEGETATION

- Found around the **Mediterranean Sea** and regions with similar climate.
- **Hot, dry summers** and **mild, wet winters**.
- Vegetation includes shrubs and drought-resistant trees.
- Important for **olives, grapes and citrus fruits**.

---

6. TEMPERATE GRASSLANDS

- Moderate rainfall, generally not enough for dense forests.
- Mainly covered by grasses.
- Very important for **wheat and livestock farming**.

Region	**Name**
North America	**Prairies**
South America	**Pampas**
Eurasia	**Steppes**
South Africa	**Veld**
Australia	**Downs**

---

7. TAIGA / BOREAL FOREST

- Found in high northern latitudes.
- Dominated by **coniferous trees** such as pine, spruce and fir.
- Long, cold winters.
- Major regions: **Canada, Alaska, Scandinavia and Russia**.
- **Russia/Siberia → very large part of the world's boreal forest.**

---

8. TUNDRA

- Found near the **Arctic region**.
- Extremely cold.
- **No large trees** because of very short growing seasons and frozen ground.
- Vegetation includes **mosses, lichens and small shrubs**.
- **Permafrost** is common.

Permafrost: Ground that remains frozen for at least two consecutive years.

QUICK REVISION

- **Equatorial → Tropical Rainforest**
- **Tropical seasonal → Savanna**
- **Very dry → Desert**
- **Mediterranean → Dry summer, wet winter**
- **Temperate grassland → Prairies, Pampas, Steppes**
- **Cold forest → Taiga**
- **Very cold, treeless → Tundra**
- **Amazon → Largest tropical rainforest**
- **Taiga → Coniferous forest**
- **Tundra → Mosses & lichens**
- **Permafrost → Permanently/long-term frozen ground**

WORLD AGRICULTURE + MAJOR CROPS

1. AGRICULTURE

Agriculture: Growing crops and rearing animals for food, raw materials and other uses.

2. TYPES OF AGRICULTURE

Subsistence Agriculture

- Mainly for the farmer's own needs.
- Small-scale production.

Commercial Agriculture

- Crops/animals produced mainly for sale and profit.
- Usually larger-scale and more mechanised.

Plantation Agriculture

- Large farms growing mainly **one commercial crop**.
- Common in tropical regions.
- Examples: **Tea, coffee, rubber, cocoa, sugarcane**.

Shifting Cultivation

- Forest/vegetation is cleared and burned, crops are grown for a few years, then the farmer moves to another area.
- Known by different names in different regions.

Mixed Farming

- Growing crops + rearing livestock on the same farm.

3. MAJOR FOOD CROPS

Rice

- Needs **warm climate and plenty of water**.
- Major producers: **China, India, Indonesia, Bangladesh, Vietnam**.

Wheat

- Prefers **cool growing season and relatively dry conditions during ripening**.
- Major producers: **China, India, Russia, USA, Canada, Australia**.

Maize / Corn

- Major food and feed crop.
- Important producers: **USA, China, Brazil, Argentina**.

Millets

- More tolerant of **drought and poor soils** than many major cereals.
- Important in parts of **India and Africa**.

4. MAJOR CASH / COMMERCIAL CROPS

Tea

- Warm, humid climate; often grown on **slopes**.
- Major producers: **China, India, Kenya, Sri Lanka**.

Coffee

- Warm tropical climate, often in highland areas.
- Major producer: **Brazil**.

Cocoa

- Mainly grown in hot, wet tropical regions.
- Major producer: **Côte d'Ivoire**.

Rubber

- Requires hot and humid tropical conditions.
- Major producers include **Thailand, Indonesia and Vietnam**.

Cotton

- Needs a **warm climate** and a relatively long frost-free period.
- Major producers: **China, India, Brazil, USA**.

Sugarcane

- Requires a **warm climate and adequate water**.
- Major producers: **Brazil, India, China**.

---

5. IMPORTANT TERMS

Crop: Plant grown for food, fibre, oil or other useful products.

Food Crop: Mainly grown for human consumption.

Cash Crop: Mainly grown for sale and profit.

Plantation: Large commercial farm, usually focused on one or a few major crops.

QUICK REVISION

- **Rice → China/India major producers**
- **Wheat → China/India major producers**
- **Maize → USA major producer**
- **Coffee → Brazil**
- **Cocoa → Côte d'Ivoire**
- **Tea → China/India/Kenya**
- **Rubber → Thailand/Indonesia/Vietnam**
- **Sugarcane → Brazil/India**
- **Cotton → China/India/Brazil/USA**
- **Cash Crop → Mainly for sale**
- **Plantation → Large commercial farm**

MINERALS + ENERGY RESOURCES

1. MINERALS

Mineral: A naturally occurring inorganic substance with a definite chemical composition and characteristic properties.

Minerals are important for **industry, construction, transport and technology**.

2. IMPORTANT METALLIC MINERALS

Iron Ore

- Main raw material for **iron and steel**.
- Major producers: **Australia, Brazil, China, India**.

Copper

- Used in **electrical wires, electronics and construction**.
- Major producers: **Chile, Peru, China, Democratic Republic of the Congo**.

Bauxite

- Main ore of **aluminium**.
- Major producers: **Australia, Guinea, China, Brazil**.

Gold

- Used in jewellery, electronics and as a financial asset.
- Major producers include **China, Australia, Russia, Canada**.

---

3. COAL

- **Coal** is a fossil fuel formed from ancient plant remains.
- Major types: **Anthracite, Bituminous, Lignite**.
- Used mainly for **electricity generation and steel production**.
- Major producers: **China, India, Indonesia, Australia, USA**.

Anthracite → Highest-grade coal.

Lignite → Low-grade coal with high moisture content.

---

4. PETROLEUM

- **Petroleum (crude oil)** is a fossil fuel formed from ancient organic matter.
- Used for **petrol, diesel, aviation fuel, plastics and many chemicals**.
- Major producing regions include:
  - **Middle East**
  - **Russia**
  - **USA**
  - **Canada**
  - **Venezuela**

IMPORTANT

OPEC: Organization of the Petroleum Exporting Countries.

- Established in **1960**.
- Headquarters → **Vienna, Austria**.
- Works to coordinate petroleum policies of member countries.

---

5. NATURAL GAS

- Fossil fuel consisting mainly of **methane**.
- Burns relatively cleaner than coal and oil.
- Used for **electricity, heating and industry**.
- Major producers include **USA, Russia, Iran and China**.

---

6. RENEWABLE ENERGY

Solar Energy

- Energy from the Sun.

Wind Energy

- Uses moving air to generate electricity.

Hydropower

- Electricity produced using moving/falling water.

Geothermal Energy

- Heat energy from inside Earth.

Biomass Energy

- Energy from organic materials such as plant and animal matter.

QUICK REVISION

- **Iron → Steel**
- **Bauxite → Aluminium**
- **Copper → Electricity**
- **Coal → Electricity + Steel**
- **Petroleum → Fuel + Petrochemicals**
- **Natural Gas → Mainly Methane**
- **OPEC → Petroleum-exporting countries**
- **OPEC founded → 1960**
- **OPEC HQ → Vienna**
- **Renewable → Solar, Wind, Hydro, Geothermal, Biomass**

INDUSTRIES + INDUSTRIAL REGIONS + MAJOR PORTS & TRADE ROUTES

1. INDUSTRY

Industry: Economic activity in which raw materials are processed into useful goods.

Industries depend mainly on:

- Raw materials
- Energy
- Labour
- Capital
- Transport
- Markets
- Technology

2. IRON & STEEL INDUSTRY

- One of the **basic industries** because many other industries depend on steel.
- Main raw materials → **Iron ore + coal + limestone**.
- Major producing countries → **China, India, Japan, Russia, USA, South Korea, Germany**.
- Major industrial areas include **eastern China, Japan's Pacific Belt, Ruhr (Germany), Great Lakes (USA/Canada)**.

3. AUTOMOBILE INDUSTRY

Major producers include:

- **China**
- **Japan**
- **USA**
- **Germany**
- **South Korea**
- **India**

Major automobile regions are generally located near large **markets, skilled labour, transport networks and industrial centres**.

4. TEXTILE INDUSTRY

- Major centres developed where **cotton, labour, markets and transport** were available.
- Important producers include **China, India, Bangladesh, Vietnam, Turkey and Pakistan**.

---

5. MAJOR INDUSTRIAL REGIONS

North-Eastern USA & Great Lakes

- Major industries → steel, automobiles, machinery and manufacturing.

Western Europe

- Important industrial belt covering parts of **Germany, France, UK, Belgium and Netherlands**.

Ruhr Region

- Germany.
- Historically important for **coal and steel**.

Japan's Pacific Industrial Belt

- Major manufacturing region.
- Important cities include **Tokyo, Nagoya and Osaka**.

Eastern China

- Major industrial and manufacturing region.
- Includes important centres around **Shanghai, Beijing-Tianjin and the Pearl River Delta**.

---

6. IMPORTANT PORTS

Port: Place on a coast or river where ships load and unload goods and passengers.

Important world ports include:

- **Shanghai → China**
- **Singapore → Singapore**
- **Rotterdam → Netherlands**
- **Dubai/Jebel Ali → UAE**
- **Hong Kong → China**
- **Los Angeles–Long Beach → USA**

---

7. IMPORTANT TRADE ROUTES & CANALS

Suez Canal

- Connects **Mediterranean Sea and Red Sea**.
- Provides a shorter sea route between **Europe and Asia**.
- Located in **Egypt**.

Panama Canal

- Connects **Atlantic and Pacific Oceans**.
- Located in **Panama**.
- Greatly reduces the sea journey between the eastern and western coasts of the Americas.

Strait of Malacca

- Between **Malay Peninsula and Sumatra**.
- One of the world's most important **shipping routes**.
- Connects the Indian Ocean region with the Pacific/Asian seas.

Strait of Hormuz

- Connects **Persian Gulf and Gulf of Oman**.
- Extremely important for **global oil trade**.

Bab-el-Mandeb

- Connects **Red Sea and Gulf of Aden**.
- Important route between the **Red Sea and Indian Ocean**.

QUICK REVISION

- **Basic industry → Iron & Steel**
- **Ruhr → Germany**
- **Great Lakes → USA/Canada**
- **Pacific Belt → Japan**
- **Shanghai → China**
- **Rotterdam → Netherlands**
- **Suez Canal → Mediterranean ↔ Red Sea**
- **Panama Canal → Atlantic ↔ Pacific**
- **Malacca → Indian Ocean ↔ Pacific region**
- **Hormuz → Persian Gulf ↔ Gulf of Oman**
- **Bab-el-Mandeb → Red Sea ↔ Gulf of Aden**

WORLD POPULATION + DENSITY + MIGRATION + URBANISATION

1. POPULATION

Population: Total number of people living in a particular area or country.

- World population is **over 8 billion**.
- Population is **unevenly distributed** across the world.
- Major concentrations occur in **South Asia, East Asia and parts of Europe**.
- Very low population occurs in **deserts, polar regions, high mountains and dense equatorial forests**.

2. POPULATION DENSITY

Population Density: Number of people living per unit area of land.

Formula:

Population Density = Total Population ÷ Total Land Area

- **High density:** South Asia, East Asia, parts of Europe.
- **Low density:** Sahara, Antarctica, Siberia, Australian interior.

3. FACTORS AFFECTING POPULATION DISTRIBUTION

Physical factors:

- Climate
- Water availability
- Fertile soil
- Relief
- Natural resources

Human factors:

- Jobs
- Industries
- Transport
- Trade
- Cities and services

---

4. POPULATION GROWTH

Population changes because of:

- **Births**
- **Deaths**
- **Migration**

Natural Increase: Birth rate − Death rate.

Birth Rate: Number of live births per 1,000 people in a year.

Death Rate: Number of deaths per 1,000 people in a year.

---

5. MIGRATION

Migration: Movement of people from one place to another to live temporarily or permanently.

Types

Internal Migration: Movement within the same country.

International Migration: Movement from one country to another.

Immigrant: Person who enters another country to live there.

Emigrant: Person who leaves their country to live elsewhere.

Push & Pull Factors

Push Factors → War, unemployment, poverty, disasters, lack of opportunities.

Pull Factors → Jobs, education, safety, better living conditions and opportunities.

6. URBANISATION

Urbanisation: Growth in the proportion of people living in towns and cities.

Main causes:

- Industrialisation
- Employment opportunities
- Education
- Healthcare
- Better infrastructure

Problems of Rapid Urbanisation

- Traffic congestion
- Pollution
- Housing shortage
- Overcrowding
- Waste management problems
- Pressure on water and other services

MEGACITY

A **megacity** is generally an urban area with a population of **10 million or more**.

Examples:

- **Tokyo**
- **Delhi**
- **Shanghai**
- **Mumbai**
- **Mexico City**

QUICK REVISION

- **Population → Total people**
- **Density → People per unit area**
- **Natural Increase → Birth Rate − Death Rate**
- **Migration → Movement of people**
- **Immigrant → Enters a country**
- **Emigrant → Leaves a country**
- **Urbanisation → Growth of cities/urban population**
- **Megacity → 10 million+ people**
- **High population → South & East Asia**

- **Very low population → Deserts, polar regions, high mountains**

IMPORTANT STRAITS, CANALS, SEAS & GULFS

1. IMPORTANT STRAITS

Strait: A narrow natural water passage connecting two larger water bodies.

- **Strait of Gibraltar** → Atlantic Ocean ↔ Mediterranean Sea
- **Strait of Hormuz** → Persian Gulf ↔ Gulf of Oman
- **Strait of Malacca** → Indian Ocean region ↔ Pacific Ocean region
- **Bab-el-Mandeb** → Red Sea ↔ Gulf of Aden
- **Bering Strait** → Arctic Ocean ↔ Pacific Ocean
- **Bosporus Strait** → Black Sea ↔ Sea of Marmara
- **Dardanelles** → Sea of Marmara ↔ Aegean Sea
- **Strait of Dover** → English Channel ↔ North Sea

2. IMPORTANT CANALS

Canal: Artificial waterway made for navigation or other purposes.

- **Suez Canal → Egypt**
  Mediterranean Sea ↔ Red Sea
- **Panama Canal → Panama**
  Atlantic Ocean ↔ Pacific Ocean
- **Kiel Canal → Germany**
  North Sea ↔ Baltic Sea

3. IMPORTANT SEAS

Sea: A large body of salt water, usually smaller than an ocean and partly enclosed by land.

- **Mediterranean Sea** → Between Europe, Africa & Asia
- **Red Sea** → Between Africa & Arabian Peninsula
- **Black Sea** → Between Eastern Europe & Western Asia
- **Arabian Sea** → North-western Indian Ocean
- **South China Sea** → Western Pacific
- **Caribbean Sea** → Between Central America and the Caribbean islands
- **North Sea** → Between Great Britain and mainland Europe

4. IMPORTANT GULFS

Gulf: A large part of a sea or ocean extending into land.

- **Gulf of Mexico** → Atlantic Ocean
- **Persian Gulf** → Between Arabian Peninsula & Iran

- **Gulf of Aden** → Between Yemen & Somalia
- **Gulf of Guinea** → Atlantic coast of West Africa
- **Gulf of Oman** → Arabian Sea ↔ Persian Gulf region
- **Gulf of California** → Between Baja California and mainland Mexico

5. IMPORTANT GEOGRAPHICAL PAIRS

- **Suez → Mediterranean + Red Sea**
- **Panama → Atlantic + Pacific**
- **Hormuz → Persian Gulf + Gulf of Oman**
- **Malacca → Malay Peninsula + Sumatra**
- **Gibraltar → Atlantic + Mediterranean**
- **Bab-el-Mandeb → Red Sea + Gulf of Aden**
- **Bering → Asia + North America**
- **Bosporus → Black Sea + Sea of Marmara**

QUICK REVISION

Strait = Natural narrow passage

Canal = Man-made waterway

Suez Canal → Egypt

Panama Canal → Panama

Strait of Hormuz → Major oil route

Strait of Malacca → Major international shipping route

Strait of Gibraltar → Europe–Africa region

Bering Strait → Asia–North America

IMPORTANT WORLD GEOGRAPHICAL SUPERLATIVES

MOUNTAINS & LAND

- **Highest mountain → Mount Everest**
- **Second-highest → K2**
- **Longest continental mountain range → Andes**
- **Highest mountain range → Himalayas**
- **Highest plateau → Tibetan Plateau**
- **Largest peninsula → Arabian Peninsula**
- **Largest island → Greenland**
- **Largest archipelago country → Indonesia**

RIVERS & WATER BODIES

- **Longest river → Nile** *(commonly cited; exact ranking with Amazon is debated)*
- **Largest river by water discharge → Amazon**
- **Longest river in Asia → Yangtze**
- **Longest river in Europe → Volga**
- **Deepest major river → Congo**
- **Largest lake by area → Caspian Sea**
- **Largest freshwater lake by surface area → Lake Superior**
- **Deepest lake → Lake Baikal**
- **Largest ocean → Pacific Ocean**
- **Smallest ocean → Arctic Ocean**
- **Deepest ocean → Pacific Ocean**

DESERTS & FORESTS

- **Largest desert → Antarctic Desert**
- **Largest hot desert → Sahara**
- **Largest tropical rainforest → Amazon Rainforest**
- **Largest coral reef system → Great Barrier Reef**

WATERFALLS

- **Highest uninterrupted waterfall → Angel Falls**
- **Famous waterfall system → Niagara Falls**
- **Victoria Falls → Zambia–Zimbabwe**
- **Iguazu Falls → Argentina–Brazil**

CONTINENTS

- **Largest continent → Asia**
- **Smallest continent → Australia**
- **Most populous continent → Asia**
- **Coldest continent → Antarctica**
- **Hottest continent → Africa**

IMPORTANT MAP FACTS

- **Equator → 0° latitude**
- **Prime Meridian → 0° longitude**
- **Tropic of Cancer → 23½°N**
- **Tropic of Capricorn → 23½°S**
- **Arctic Circle → 66½°N**
- **Antarctic Circle → 66½°S**
- **International Date Line → roughly 180°**

QUICK EXAM REVISION

Everest → Highest mountain

Andes → Longest continental mountain range

Greenland → Largest island

Pacific → Largest & deepest ocean

Arctic → Smallest ocean

Amazon → Greatest river discharge

Baikal → Deepest lake

Sahara → Largest hot desert

Antarctica → Largest desert

Amazon → Largest tropical rainforest

Angel Falls → Highest uninterrupted waterfall

Asia → Largest & most populous continent

Australia → Smallest continent

IMPORTANT COUNTRIES, CAPITALS & CURRENCIES

ASIA

Country	Capital	Currency
India	New Delhi	Indian Rupee (₹)
China	Beijing	Yuan (Renminbi)
Japan	Tokyo	Yen
South Korea	Seoul	Won
North Korea	Pyongyang	Won
Pakistan	Islamabad	Pakistani Rupee
Bangladesh	Dhaka	Taka
Nepal	Kathmandu	Nepalese Rupee
Bhutan	Thimphu	Ngultrum
Sri Lanka	Sri Jayawardenepura Kotte	Sri Lankan Rupee
Afghanistan	Kabul	Afghani
Iran	Tehran	Rial
Iraq	Baghdad	Iraqi Dinar

Saudi Arabia	Riyadh	Riyal
UAE	Abu Dhabi	Dirham
Qatar	Doha	Qatari Riyal
Israel	Jerusalem	New Shekel
Turkey	Ankara	Turkish Lira
Russia	Moscow	Ruble

EUROPE

Country	Capital	Currency
United Kingdom	London	Pound Sterling
France	Paris	Euro
Germany	Berlin	Euro
Italy	Rome	Euro
Spain	Madrid	Euro
Portugal	Lisbon	Euro
Switzerland	Bern	Swiss Franc
Norway	Oslo	Norwegian Krone
Sweden	Stockholm	Swedish Krona
Denmark	Copenhagen	Danish Krone
Greece	Athens	Euro
Ukraine	Kyiv	Hryvnia

NORTH AMERICA

Country	Capital	Currency
USA	Washington, D.C.	US Dollar
Canada	Ottawa	Canadian Dollar
Mexico	Mexico City	Mexican Peso
Cuba	Havana	Cuban Peso
Panama	Panama City	Balboa + US Dollar

SOUTH AMERICA

Country	Capital	Currency
Brazil	Brasília	Real
Argentina	Buenos Aires	Argentine Peso
Chile	Santiago	Chilean Peso
Peru	Lima	Sol
Colombia	Bogotá	Colombian Peso
Venezuela	Caracas	Bolívar

AFRICA

Country	Capital	Currency
Egypt	Cairo	Egyptian Pound
South Africa	Pretoria*	Rand
Nigeria	Abuja	Naira
Kenya	Nairobi	Kenyan Shilling
Ethiopia	Addis Ababa	Birr
Ghana	Accra	Cedi

Morocco	Rabat	Dirham
Algeria	Algiers	Dinar

*South Africa has **three capital cities**: Pretoria (administrative), Cape Town (legislative), Bloemfontein (judicial).

AUSTRALIA & OCEANIA

Country	Capital	Currency
Australia	Canberra	Australian Dollar
New Zealand	Wellington	New Zealand Dollar
Fiji	Suva	Fijian Dollar
Papua New Guinea	Port Moresby	Kina

EXAM FACTS

- **Japan → Tokyo → Yen**
- **China → Beijing → Yuan**
- **Russia → Moscow → Ruble**
- **UK → London → Pound**
- **USA → Washington, D.C. → Dollar**
- **Brazil → Brasília → Real**
- **Egypt → Cairo → Egyptian Pound**
- **Australia → Canberra → Australian Dollar**
- **Switzerland → Bern → Swiss Franc**
- **Saudi Arabia → Riyadh → Riyal**

IMPORTANT INTERNATIONAL BORDERS, LINES & MAP LOCATIONS

1. IMPORTANT INTERNATIONAL LINES

- **Radcliffe Line** → India–Pakistan boundary; drawn in **1947**.
- **McMahon Line** → India–China boundary in the eastern sector; associated with the **Arunachal Pradesh–Tibet** region.
- **Line of Control (LoC)** → Divides areas controlled by India and Pakistan in **Jammu & Kashmir**.
- **Durand Line** → Afghanistan–Pakistan boundary; established in **1893**.
- **38th Parallel** → Divides **North Korea and South Korea**.
- **49th Parallel** → Major part of the **USA–Canada** land boundary.
- **17th Parallel** → Formerly associated with the division of **North and South Vietnam**.

2. IMPORTANT BORDER TERMS

International Boundary: Official boundary between two countries.

Border: General term for the area or line separating two territories.

Line of Control (LoC): Military control line between areas administered by India and Pakistan in Jammu & Kashmir; **not an internationally recognised international boundary**.

3. IMPORTANT COUNTRY LOCATION FACTS

- **India → South Asia**
- **China → East Asia**
- **Japan → East Asia**
- **Saudi Arabia → Arabian Peninsula**
- **Egypt → North-East Africa**
- **South Africa → Southern Africa**
- **Brazil → South America**
- **USA → North America**
- **Australia → Oceania**
- **Russia → Europe & Asia**

4. IMPORTANT MAP LOCATIONS

- **Greenwich → Prime Meridian**
- **Equator → Passes through South America, Africa & Asia**
- **Tropic of Cancer → Passes through India**
- **Tropic of Capricorn → Passes through Australia, Africa & South America**
- **Arctic Circle → Northern polar region**
- **Antarctic Circle → Southern polar region**
- **International Date Line → Approximately 180° longitude**

QUICK REVISION

- **Radcliffe → India–Pakistan**
- **McMahon → India–China (eastern sector)**
- **LoC → India–Pakistan, Jammu & Kashmir**
- **Durand → Afghanistan–Pakistan**
- **38th Parallel → North Korea–South Korea**
- **49th Parallel → USA–Canada**
- **Greenwich → 0° longitude**
- **Equator → 0° latitude**
- **IDL → ~180°**

WORLD CLIMATE TYPES

1. EQUATORIAL CLIMATE

- Found near the **Equator**.
- **Hot and wet throughout the year**.
- Heavy rainfall.
- Dense tropical rainforests.

- Example: **Amazon Basin, Congo Basin**.

2. TROPICAL SAVANNA CLIMATE

- **Hot throughout the year**.
- Distinct **wet and dry seasons**.
- Grasslands with scattered trees.
- Major region: **Africa**.

3. DESERT CLIMATE

- **Very low rainfall**.
- Days can be extremely hot; some deserts have very cold nights.
- Sparse vegetation.
- Examples: **Sahara, Arabian, Atacama**.

4. MEDITERRANEAN CLIMATE

- **Hot, dry summers**.
- **Mild, wet winters**.
- Examples: Mediterranean region, **California, central Chile, Cape Town region, south-western Australia**.

5. MONSOON CLIMATE

- Seasonal change in **wind direction and rainfall**.
- Hot/warm summers with a rainy season.
- Dry or relatively dry winters in many regions.
- Major region: **South and Southeast Asia**.

6. HUMID SUBTROPICAL CLIMATE

- Hot, humid summers.
- Mild to cool winters.
- Rainfall occurs during much of the year.
- Found in parts of **China, Japan, USA and South America**.

7. OCEANIC / MARINE WEST COAST CLIMATE

- Mild summers.
- Cool winters.
- Rainfall throughout much of the year.
- Common in **Western Europe, New Zealand and parts of coastal Canada**.

8. CONTINENTAL CLIMATE

- Large difference between **summer and winter temperatures**.
- Common in interiors of large continents.
- Example: **Central Asia, interior North America**.

9. POLAR CLIMATE

- Extremely cold.
- Very short or no warm summer.
- Very little precipitation, mostly snow.
- Found in **Antarctica and Arctic regions**.

10. MOUNTAIN / HIGHLAND CLIMATE

- Climate changes with **altitude**.
- Higher altitude generally means **lower temperature**.
- Found in **Himalayas, Andes, Alps and Rockies**.

QUICK REVISION

- **Equatorial → Hot + Wet**
- **Savanna → Wet + Dry seasons**
- **Desert → Very dry**
- **Mediterranean → Dry summer + Wet winter**
- **Monsoon → Seasonal wind/rain reversal**
- **Oceanic → Mild temperatures + rainfall**
- **Continental → Large seasonal temperature range**
- **Polar → Extremely cold**
- **Mountain → Climate changes with altitude**

ENVIRONMENT + CLIMATE CHANGE + GLOBAL WARMING

1. ENVIRONMENT

Environment: Everything surrounding living organisms, including **air, water, land, plants, animals and human surroundings**.

2. GREENHOUSE EFFECT

- **Greenhouse Effect:** Natural process in which certain gases trap some heat in Earth's atmosphere.
- It keeps Earth warm enough for life.
- Main greenhouse gases:
  - **Carbon dioxide (CO_2)**
  - **Methane (CH_4)**

  - **Nitrous oxide (N_2O)**
  - **Water vapour**

Enhanced Greenhouse Effect: Human activities increase greenhouse gases, causing additional warming.

3. GLOBAL WARMING

- **Global Warming:** Long-term rise in Earth's average surface temperature.
- Major causes:
  - Burning coal, oil and gas
  - Deforestation
  - Industrial activities
  - Transport
- Major effects include:
  - Rising sea levels
  - Melting glaciers and ice sheets
  - More frequent/intense heat extremes
  - Changes in rainfall patterns
  - Impacts on ecosystems

4. CLIMATE CHANGE

Climate Change: Long-term changes in temperature, rainfall, wind patterns and other climate conditions.

Global warming is one major part of climate change.

---

5. OZONE DEPLETION

- **Ozone Layer:** Region of the stratosphere containing relatively high concentrations of ozone.
- It absorbs harmful **UV radiation**.
- Certain chemicals, especially **CFCs**, damage stratospheric ozone.
- The **Montreal Protocol (1987)** helped phase out many ozone-depleting substances.

6. DEFORESTATION

Deforestation: Large-scale removal of forests.

Major causes:

- Agriculture
- Logging

- Mining
- Infrastructure development
- Urban expansion

Effects:

- Loss of biodiversity
- Soil erosion
- Increased CO_2
- Habitat destruction
- Changes in local water cycles

7. DESERTIFICATION

Desertification: Land degradation in dry areas, where productive land becomes increasingly degraded and less capable of supporting vegetation.

Causes may include:

- Drought
- Deforestation
- Overgrazing
- Unsustainable farming
- Poor land management

QUICK REVISION

- **Greenhouse Effect → Traps heat naturally**
- **Global Warming → Rise in average temperature**
- **Climate Change → Long-term climate changes**
- **CO_2 → Major greenhouse gas**
- **CFCs → Ozone depletion**
- **Montreal Protocol → 1987**
- **Deforestation → Loss of forests**
- **Desertification → Land degradation in drylands**

NATURAL DISASTERS

1. EARTHQUAKE

- **Earthquake:** Sudden shaking of the ground due to the release of energy inside Earth.
- **Focus/Hypocentre:** Point inside Earth where the earthquake starts.
- **Epicentre:** Point on the surface directly above the focus.
- **Seismograph:** Instrument that records earthquake vibrations.
- Strong undersea earthquakes can cause **tsunamis**.

2. VOLCANO

- **Volcano:** Opening in Earth's crust through which magma, gases and ash escape.
- **Magma:** Molten rock below the surface.
- **Lava:** Magma that reaches the surface.

Types:

- **Active:** Erupting or likely to erupt.
- **Dormant:** Currently inactive but may erupt again.
- **Extinct:** Not expected to erupt again.

Pacific Ring of Fire: Major zone of volcanoes and earthquakes surrounding much of the Pacific Ocean.

3. TSUNAMI

- **Tsunami:** Series of powerful sea waves caused mainly by **undersea earthquakes**.
- Other causes include underwater landslides and volcanic eruptions.
- Waves become especially dangerous when they reach shallow coastal water.

4. FLOOD

Flood: Overflow of water onto land that is normally dry.

Causes:

- Heavy rainfall
- River overflow
- Storm surges
- Dam failure
- Rapid snowmelt

Effects:

- Loss of life and property
- Crop damage
- Soil erosion
- Disease and infrastructure damage

5. DROUGHT

Drought: Long period of unusually low rainfall causing water shortage.

Effects:

- Crop failure
- Water shortage
- Livestock losses
- Food insecurity
- Land degradation

6. LANDSLIDE

Landslide: Rapid movement of rock, soil or debris down a slope.

Causes:

- Heavy rainfall
- Earthquakes
- Volcanic activity
- Slope cutting
- Deforestation

7. CYCLONE

- **Tropical cyclone:** Powerful rotating storm developing over warm tropical oceans.
- Brings **strong winds, heavy rainfall and storm surges**.
- Called **hurricane, typhoon or cyclone** in different regions.

QUICK REVISION

- **Earthquake → Ground shaking**
- **Focus → Inside Earth**
- **Epicentre → Surface**
- **Volcano → Magma/Lava**
- **Tsunami → Mainly undersea earthquake**
- **Flood → Water overflow**
- **Drought → Long period of low rainfall**
- **Landslide → Movement down a slope**
- **Tropical Cyclone → Warm ocean + low pressure**
- **Ring of Fire → Pacific region**

WORLD MAP REVISION — IMPORTANT LOCATIONS

1. IMPORTANT MOUNTAINS

- **Himalayas → Asia**
- **Andes → South America**
- **Rockies → North America**
- **Alps → Europe**
- **Atlas → North-West Africa**

- **Ural → Europe–Asia boundary**
- **Great Dividing Range → Australia**

2. IMPORTANT DESERTS

- **Sahara → North Africa**
- **Arabian Desert → Arabian Peninsula**
- **Gobi → Mongolia & China**
- **Kalahari → Southern Africa**
- **Namib → South-West Africa**
- **Atacama → Chile**
- **Patagonian Desert → Argentina**
- **Great Victoria Desert → Australia**

3. IMPORTANT RIVERS

- **Nile → North-East Africa**
- **Amazon → South America**
- **Yangtze → China**
- **Mississippi–Missouri → USA**
- **Danube → Europe**
- **Volga → Russia**
- **Congo → Central Africa**
- **Murray–Darling → Australia**

4. IMPORTANT LAKES

- **Caspian Sea → Europe–Asia region**
- **Lake Superior → USA–Canada**
- **Lake Baikal → Russia**
- **Lake Victoria → East Africa**
- **Lake Tanganyika → East Africa**
- **Dead Sea → Jordan–Israel/West Bank region**

5. IMPORTANT WATER BODIES

- **Mediterranean Sea → Europe–Africa–Asia**
- **Red Sea → Africa–Arabian Peninsula**
- **Arabian Sea → Indian Ocean**
- **Black Sea → Europe–Asia region**
- **South China Sea → Southeast/East Asia**
- **Caribbean Sea → Caribbean region**

6. IMPORTANT STRAITS

- **Gibraltar → Atlantic–Mediterranean**

- **Hormuz → Persian Gulf–Gulf of Oman**
- **Malacca → Malay Peninsula–Sumatra**
- **Bab-el-Mandeb → Red Sea–Gulf of Aden**
- **Bering → Asia–North America**
- **Bosporus → Black Sea–Sea of Marmara**

7. IMPORTANT CANALS

- **Suez Canal → Egypt**
- **Panama Canal → Panama**
- **Kiel Canal → Germany**

8. IMPORTANT COUNTRIES — LOCATION

- **Egypt → North-East Africa**
- **Saudi Arabia → Arabian Peninsula**
- **Turkey → Europe + Asia**
- **Russia → Europe + Asia**
- **Brazil → South America**
- **Canada → North America**
- **Australia → Oceania**
- **Indonesia → Southeast Asia**
- **Japan → East Asia**

9. IMPORTANT LINES

- **Equator → 0°**
- **Tropic of Cancer → 23½°N**
- **Tropic of Capricorn → 23½°S**
- **Prime Meridian → 0°**
- **International Date Line → ~180°**
- **Arctic Circle → 66½°N**
- **Antarctic Circle → 66½°S**

FINAL MAP MEMORY

Sahara → Africa

Amazon → South America

Himalayas → Asia

Rockies → North America

Alps → Europe

Suez → Egypt

Panama → Panama

Hormuz → Persian Gulf

Malacca → Southeast Asia

Bering → Asia–North America

FINAL ONE-LINER REVISION — MOST IMPORTANT FACTS

EARTH & SPACE

- Earth is the **3rd planet** from the Sun.
- Earth takes about **24 hours** to rotate.
- Earth takes about **365¼ days** to revolve around the Sun.
- Earth's axis is tilted by about **23½°**.
- **Rotation → Day & Night**
- **Revolution + axial tilt → Seasons**
- **Milky Way → Our Galaxy**
- **Sun → Our Star**
- **Moon → Earth's natural satellite**

LATITUDES & LONGITUDES

- **Equator → 0°**
- **Prime Meridian → 0°**
- **Tropic of Cancer → 23½°N**
- **Tropic of Capricorn → 23½°S**
- **Arctic Circle → 66½°N**
- **Antarctic Circle → 66½°S**
- **1° longitude → 4 minutes**
- **15° longitude → 1 hour**

CONTINENTS & OCEANS

- **Largest continent → Asia**
- **Smallest continent → Australia**
- **Largest ocean → Pacific**
- **Smallest ocean → Arctic**
- **Coldest continent → Antarctica**
- **Hottest continent → Africa**
- **Most populous continent → Asia**

GENERAL KNOWLEDGE | FINAL REVISION

MOUNTAINS

- **Highest mountain → Everest**
- **Second-highest → K2**
- **Longest continental mountain range → Andes**
- **Highest mountain system → Himalayas**
- **Highest plateau → Tibetan Plateau**
- **Longest mountain range in India → Western Ghats** *(India-specific fact)*

RIVERS & LAKES

- **Nile → commonly regarded as longest river**
- **Amazon → greatest water discharge**
- **Yangtze → longest in Asia**
- **Volga → longest in Europe**
- **Congo → deepest major river**
- **Baikal → deepest lake**
- **Lake Superior → largest freshwater lake by surface area**
- **Caspian Sea → largest enclosed inland water body**

DESERTS & FORESTS

- **Largest desert → Antarctica**
- **Largest hot desert → Sahara**
- **Largest tropical rainforest → Amazon**
- **Taiga → Coniferous forest**
- **Tundra → Treeless cold region**
- **Permafrost → Permanently/long-term frozen ground**

CLIMATE

- **Equatorial → Hot & wet**
- **Desert → Very dry**
- **Mediterranean → Dry summer + wet winter**
- **Monsoon → Seasonal wind reversal**
- **Polar → Extremely cold**
- **Weather → Short-term**
- **Climate → Long-term**

WINDS & PRESSURE

- **Warm air → Rises → Low pressure**
- **Cold air → Sinks → High pressure**
- **Trade Winds → Towards Equator**
- **Westerlies → West to East**
- **Polar Easterlies → East to West**

- **Coriolis → Right in Northern Hemisphere**
- **Coriolis → Left in Southern Hemisphere**

OCEANS

- **Gulf Stream → Warm current**
- **Labrador → Cold current**
- **Humboldt/Peru → Cold current**
- **Spring Tide → New & Full Moon**
- **Neap Tide → First & Third Quarter**
- **Great Barrier Reef → Australia**

AGRICULTURE

- **Rice → Warm + plenty of water**
- **Wheat → Cool growing season**
- **Coffee → Brazil is a major producer**
- **Cocoa → Côte d'Ivoire is a major producer**
- **Rubber → Southeast Asia**
- **Sugarcane → Brazil is a major producer**

RESOURCES

- **Bauxite → Aluminium**
- **Iron ore → Steel**
- **Copper → Electrical uses**
- **Coal → Electricity + Steel**
- **Petroleum → Fuel + Petrochemicals**
- **Natural Gas → Mainly methane**
- **OPEC → Founded in 1960**

IMPORTANT STRAITS & CANALS

- **Suez → Mediterranean–Red Sea**
- **Panama → Atlantic–Pacific**
- **Hormuz → Persian Gulf–Gulf of Oman**
- **Malacca → Major Asian shipping route**
- **Gibraltar → Atlantic–Mediterranean**
- **Bering → Asia–North America**

NATURAL DISASTERS

- **Earthquake → Sudden ground shaking**
- **Volcano → Magma reaches surface**
- **Tsunami → Usually undersea earthquake**
- **Cyclone → Low-pressure storm**

- **Drought → Long period of low rainfall**
- **Flood → Overflow of water**
- **Landslide → Downward movement of rock/soil**

✪ MOST IMPORTANT EXAM TRAPS

- **Largest desert → Antarctica, NOT Sahara**
- **Largest hot desert → Sahara**
- **Largest island → Greenland**
- **Largest ocean → Pacific**
- **Deepest lake → Baikal**
- **Largest freshwater lake by surface area → Superior**
- **Highest mountain → Everest**
- **Longest continental mountain range → Andes**
- **Largest tropical rainforest → Amazon**
- **Highest uninterrupted waterfall → Angel Falls**

INTERNATIONAL ORGANISATIONS

1. 1. UNITED NATIONS (UN)

- **Founded:** 24 October 1945
- **HQ:** New York, USA
- **Members:** 193
- **Purpose:** World peace, security and international cooperation.
- **Important:** Security Council has **15 members**, including 5 permanent members with veto power.

2. WORLD HEALTH ORGANIZATION (WHO)

- **Founded:** 7 April 1948
- **HQ:** Geneva, Switzerland
- **Members:** 194
- **Purpose:** Global health, disease prevention and health emergencies.
- **Important:** World Health Day — **7 April**.

3. UNESCO

- **Founded:** 16 November 1945
- **HQ:** Paris, France
- **Members:** 194
- **Purpose:** Education, science, culture and heritage.
- **Important:** World Heritage Sites.

4. UNICEF

- **Founded:** 11 December 1946
- **HQ:** New York, USA
- **Purpose:** Protection and welfare of children.
- **Main Work:** Child health, nutrition, education and protection.

5. IMF

- **Full Name:** International Monetary Fund
- **Founded:** 1944
- **HQ:** Washington, D.C., USA
- **Members:** 191
- **Purpose:** Global monetary and financial stability.
- **Main Work:** Financial assistance to countries facing economic problems.

6. WORLD BANK

- **Founded:** 1944
- **HQ:** Washington, D.C., USA
- **Members:** 189
- **Purpose:** Economic development and poverty reduction.
- **Main Work:** Development loans and financial assistance.

7. WTO

- **Full Name:** World Trade Organization
- **Founded:** 1 January 1995
- **HQ:** Geneva, Switzerland
- **Members:** 166
- **Purpose:** Promote smooth and fair international trade.
- **Main Work:** Trade rules and settlement of trade disputes.

8. ILO

- **Full Name:** International Labour Organization
- **Founded:** 1919
- **HQ:** Geneva, Switzerland
- **Members:** 187
- **Purpose:** Workers' rights, social justice and decent work.
- **Important:** Oldest UN specialized agency.

9. FAO

- **Full Name:** Food and Agriculture Organization
- **Founded:** 16 October 1945

- **HQ:** Rome, Italy
- **Members:** 194 + EU
- **Purpose:** Food security and improvement of agriculture.
- **Important:** World Food Day — **16 October**.

10. OPEC

- **Full Name:** Organization of the Petroleum Exporting Countries
- **Founded:** 14 September 1960
- **HQ:** Vienna, Austria
- **Members:** 12
- **Purpose:** Coordinate petroleum policies of member countries.
- **Important:** Founded at the **Baghdad Conference**.

UNDP — United Nations Development Programme

- **Founded:** 1965
- **HQ:** New York, USA
- **Purpose:** Poverty reduction, development and improving living standards.
- **Important:** Publishes the **Human Development Report (HDR)**.

12. UNEP — United Nations Environment Programme

- **Founded:** 1972
- **HQ:** Nairobi, Kenya
- **Purpose:** Environmental protection and sustainable development.
- **Important: World Environment Day — 5 June**.

13. UNHCR — UN Refugee Agency

- **Founded:** 1950
- **HQ:** Geneva, Switzerland
- **Purpose:** Protect and assist refugees and displaced people.
- **Important:** Nobel Peace Prize — **1954 and 1981**.

14. WFP — World Food Programme

- **Founded:** 1961
- **HQ:** Rome, Italy
- **Purpose:** Fight hunger and provide food assistance.
- **Important:** Nobel Peace Prize — **2020**.

15. IAEA — International Atomic Energy Agency

- **Founded:** 1957
- **HQ:** Vienna, Austria

- **Purpose:** Promote peaceful uses of nuclear energy.
- **Main Work:** Nuclear safety and monitoring nuclear activities.
- **Important:** Nobel Peace Prize — **2005**.

16. ICAO — International Civil Aviation Organization

- **Founded:** 1944
- **HQ:** Montreal, Canada
- **Members:** 193
- **Purpose:** Develop international civil aviation standards.
- **Main Work:** Aviation safety and international air transport standards.

17. IMO — International Maritime Organization

- **Founded:** 1948
- **HQ:** London, UK
- **Members:** 176
- **Purpose:** Safety and security of international shipping.
- **Main Work:** Maritime safety and prevention of marine pollution.

18. IFAD — International Fund for Agricultural Development

- **Founded:** 1977
- **HQ:** Rome, Italy
- **Purpose:** Reduce rural poverty and hunger.
- **Main Work:** Supports agriculture and rural development in developing countries.

19. INTERPOL

- **Full Name:** International Criminal Police Organization
- **Founded:** 1923
- **HQ:** Lyon, France
- **Members:** 196
- **Purpose:** International police cooperation.
- **Main Work:** Helps countries share information and fight transnational crime.

20. ICJ — International Court of Justice

- **Founded:** 1945
- **HQ:** The Hague, Netherlands
- **Judges:** 15
- **Purpose:** Settles legal disputes between states and gives advisory opinions.
- **Important:** It is the **principal judicial organ of the UN**.

21. IOM — International Organization for Migration

- **Founded:** 1951
- **HQ:** Geneva, Switzerland
- **Members:** 175
- **Purpose:** Safe, orderly and humane migration.
- **Main Work:** Migration assistance and support during displacement.

22. UNIDO — United Nations Industrial Development Organization

- **Founded:** 1966
- **HQ:** Vienna, Austria
- **Members:** 173
- **Purpose:** Promote inclusive and sustainable industrial development.
- **Main Work:** Industrial development, technology and innovation.

23. UNCTAD — UN Trade and Development

- **Founded:** 1964
- **HQ:** Geneva, Switzerland
- **Members:** 195
- **Purpose:** Promote development through trade and investment.
- **Main Work:** Research, policy advice and technical assistance.

24. WIPO — World Intellectual Property Organization

- **Founded:** 1967
- **HQ:** Geneva, Switzerland
- **Members:** 194
- **Purpose:** Protect intellectual property.
- **Main Work:** Patents, trademarks, copyright and related systems.

25. WMO — World Meteorological Organization

- **Founded:** 1950
- **HQ:** Geneva, Switzerland
- **Members:** 193
- **Purpose:** International cooperation in weather, climate and water.
- **Main Work:** Weather data, forecasting and climate information.

26. UPU — Universal Postal Union

- **Founded:** 1874
- **HQ:** Bern, Switzerland
- **Members:** 192
- **Purpose:** International cooperation in postal services.

- **Important:** One of the **oldest international organisations**.

27. ITU — International Telecommunication Union

- **Founded:** 1865
- **HQ:** Geneva, Switzerland
- **Members:** 194
- **Purpose:** International cooperation in telecommunications and digital technologies.
- **Important: Oldest UN specialized agency**.

28. UN Tourism — World Tourism Organization

- **Founded:** 1975
- **HQ:** Madrid, Spain
- **Members:** 160+
- **Purpose:** Promote responsible, sustainable and accessible tourism.
- **Important:** Formerly known as **UNWTO**.

29. OPCW — Organisation for the Prohibition of Chemical Weapons

- **Founded:** 1997
- **HQ:** The Hague, Netherlands
- **Members:** 193
- **Purpose:** Eliminate chemical weapons.
- **Important:** Nobel Peace Prize — **2013**.

30. IPCC — Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change

- **Founded:** 1988
- **HQ:** Geneva, Switzerland
- **Purpose:** Assess scientific knowledge about **climate change**.
- **Important:** Nobel Peace Prize — **2007**.

31. ASEAN

Association of Southeast Asian Nations

- **Founded:** 8 August 1967
- **HQ:** Jakarta, Indonesia
- **Members:** 11
- **Purpose:** Economic, political and regional cooperation in Southeast Asia.
- **Important:** Founded by **5 countries**.

32. SAARC

South Asian Association for Regional Cooperation

- **Founded:** 8 December 1985
- **HQ:** Kathmandu, Nepal
- **Members:** 8
- **Purpose:** Regional cooperation and development in South Asia.
- **Members:** Afghanistan, Bangladesh, Bhutan, India, Maldives, Nepal, Pakistan, Sri Lanka.

33. BIMSTEC

Bay of Bengal Initiative for Multi-Sectoral Technical and Economic Cooperation

- **Founded:** 1997
- **HQ:** Dhaka, Bangladesh
- **Members:** 7
- **Purpose:** Economic and technical cooperation around the Bay of Bengal.
- **Members:** Bangladesh, Bhutan, India, Myanmar, Nepal, Sri Lanka, Thailand.

34. BRICS

- **Originally:** Brazil, Russia, India, China, South Africa.
- **First BRIC summit:** 2009
- **South Africa joined:** 2010
- **Purpose:** Cooperation in economics, development and global governance.
- **Important:** Membership has expanded beyond the original five.

35. G7

Group of Seven

- **Members:** 7 countries
- **Members:** Canada, France, Germany, Italy, Japan, UK, USA
- **Purpose:** Economic and political cooperation among major advanced economies.
- **Important: EU also participates** in G7 meetings.

36. G20

Group of Twenty

- **Members:** 19 countries + **European Union + African Union**
- **Purpose:** International economic and financial cooperation.
- **Important:** Represents major developed and developing economies.
- **India hosted G20 Summit: 2023, New Delhi**.

37. NATO

North Atlantic Treaty Organization

- **Founded:** 1949
- **HQ:** Brussels, Belgium
- **Members:** 32
- **Purpose:** Collective defence and security.
- **Key Principle: Article 5 — attack on one is treated as an attack on all.**

38. OIC

Organisation of Islamic Cooperation

- **Founded:** 1969
- **HQ:** Jeddah, Saudi Arabia
- **Members:** 57
- **Purpose:** Cooperation among Muslim-majority/member states.
- **Important:** Second-largest intergovernmental organization after the UN by membership.

39. APEC

Asia-Pacific Economic Cooperation

- **Founded:** 1989
- **Members:** 21 economies
- **Purpose:** Promote economic cooperation and trade in the Asia-Pacific region.
- **Important:** Members are called **economies**, not countries.

40. SCO

Shanghai Cooperation Organisation

- **Founded:** 2001
- **HQ:** Beijing, China
- **Members:** 10
- **Purpose:** Security, political and economic cooperation.
- **Important: India and Pakistan joined in 2017.**

41. AU — African Union

- **Founded:** 2002
- **HQ:** Addis Ababa, Ethiopia
- **Members:** 55
- **Purpose:** African unity, peace, security and development.
- **Important:** Replaced **OAU (Organization of African Unity)**.

42. EU — European Union

- **Founded:** 1993
- **HQ:** Brussels, Belgium
- **Members:** 27
- **Purpose:** Political and economic cooperation among European countries.
- **Important: Euro** is the common currency of 20 EU countries.

43. Commonwealth of Nations

- **Established:** 1931 *(modern Commonwealth evolved later)*
- **HQ:** London, UK
- **Members:** 56
- **Purpose:** Cooperation in democracy, development and shared values.
- **Important:** Many members were formerly associated with the British Empire.

44. OECD

Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development

- **Founded:** 1961
- **HQ:** Paris, France
- **Members:** 38
- **Purpose:** Promote economic growth, development and better policies.
- **Important:** Known for economic research and policy analysis.

45. ADB

Asian Development Bank

- **Founded:** 1966
- **HQ:** Manila, Philippines
- **Members:** 69
- **Purpose:** Economic and social development in Asia-Pacific.
- **Main Work:** Development financing and technical assistance.

46. AIIB

Asian Infrastructure Investment Bank

- **Founded:** 2015
- **HQ:** Beijing, China
- **Members:** 100+
- **Purpose:** Finance infrastructure and sustainable development.
- **Important:** India is one of its major members.

47. OAS

Organization of American States

- **Founded:** 1948
- **HQ:** Washington, D.C., USA
- **Members:** 35
- **Purpose:** Democracy, human rights, security and cooperation in the Americas.

48. GCC

Gulf Cooperation Council

- **Founded:** 1981
- **HQ:** Riyadh, Saudi Arabia
- **Members:** 6
- **Members:** Saudi Arabia, UAE, Kuwait, Qatar, Bahrain, Oman.
- **Purpose:** Political, economic and security cooperation.

49. Arab League

League of Arab States

- **Founded:** 1945
- **HQ:** Cairo, Egypt
- **Members:** 22
- **Purpose:** Cooperation among Arab countries.
- **Main Areas:** Political, economic and cultural cooperation.

50. MERCOSUR

Southern Common Market

- **Founded:** 1991
- **HQ:** Montevideo, Uruguay
- **Purpose:** Regional economic integration and trade in South America.
- **Important Members:** Argentina, Brazil, Paraguay and Uruguay.

51. ICRC — International Committee of the Red Cross

- **Founded:** 1863
- **HQ:** Geneva, Switzerland
- **Purpose:** Protect victims of war and armed conflict.
- **Main Work:** Humanitarian assistance and protection of prisoners of war.

52. IFRC — International Federation of Red Cross and Red Crescent Societies

- **Founded:** 1919
- **HQ:** Geneva, Switzerland
- **Members:** 191 National Societies
- **Purpose:** Disaster response, health and humanitarian assistance.

53. IOM — International Organization for Migration

- **Founded:** 1951
- **HQ:** Geneva, Switzerland
- **Members:** 175
- **Purpose:** Safe, orderly and humane migration.
- **Important:** Became a **UN related organization in 2016**.

54. FATF — Financial Action Task Force

- **Founded:** 1989
- **HQ:** Paris, France
- **Members:** 40+ jurisdictions
- **Purpose:** Combat **money laundering, terrorist financing and proliferation financing**.
- **Important:** Creates international standards for combating financial crime.

55. INTERPOL

- **Founded:** 1923
- **HQ:** Lyon, France
- **Members:** 196
- **Purpose:** International police cooperation.
- **Main Work:** Sharing criminal information and helping fight transnational crime.

56. ICC — International Criminal Court

- **Established:** 2002
- **HQ:** The Hague, Netherlands
- **Purpose:** Prosecutes individuals for **genocide, crimes against humanity, war crimes and aggression**.
- **Important:** Different from **ICJ**, which deals mainly with disputes between states.

57. ICRC — International Committee of the Red Cross

- **Founded:** 1863
- **HQ:** Geneva, Switzerland
- **Purpose:** Protect people affected by armed conflict.
- **Important:** Works under principles of **international humanitarian law**.

58. WTO — World Trade Organization

- **Founded:** 1995
- **HQ:** Geneva, Switzerland
- **Members:** 166
- **Purpose:** International trade rules and cooperation.
- **Important:** Replaced **GATT**.

59. GATT — General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade

- **Established:** 1947
- **Purpose:** Reduce tariffs and promote international trade.
- **Important:** WTO replaced GATT as the main global trade organisation in **1995**.

60. UNFCCC — United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change

- **Adopted:** 1992
- **HQ/Secretariat:** Bonn, Germany
- **Purpose:** Address climate change and reduce greenhouse-gas emissions.
- **Important:** Framework for major climate agreements such as the **Paris Agreement**.

61. UNFPA — United Nations Population Fund

- **Founded:** 1969
- **HQ:** New York, USA
- **Purpose:** Population issues, reproductive health and maternal health.
- **Main Work:** Family planning and population data.

62. UN Women

- **Founded:** 2010
- **HQ:** New York, USA
- **Purpose:** Gender equality and women's empowerment.
- **Main Work:** Women's rights and elimination of discrimination.

63. UN-Habitat

- **Founded:** 1978
- **HQ:** Nairobi, Kenya
- **Purpose:** Sustainable cities and human settlements.
- **Main Work:** Urban development and adequate housing.

64. UNODC — United Nations Office on Drugs and Crime

- **Founded:** 1997

- **HQ:** Vienna, Austria
- **Purpose:** Combat drugs, organized crime, corruption and terrorism.
- **Main Work:** International crime prevention and legal cooperation.

65. UNAIDS

- **Founded:** 1996
- **HQ:** Geneva, Switzerland
- **Purpose:** Lead global action against **HIV/AIDS**.
- **Main Work:** HIV prevention, treatment and awareness.

66. WHO — World Health Organization

- **Founded:** 1948
- **HQ:** Geneva, Switzerland
- **Members:** 194
- **Purpose:** Global public health.
- **Important:** Coordinates international response to health emergencies.

67. IFRC

International Federation of Red Cross and Red Crescent Societies

- **Founded:** 1919
- **HQ:** Geneva, Switzerland
- **Members:** 191 National Societies
- **Purpose:** Disaster relief and humanitarian assistance.
- **Main Work:** Emergency response and community health.

68. ILO — International Labour Organization

- **Founded:** 1919
- **HQ:** Geneva, Switzerland
- **Members:** 187
- **Purpose:** Labour rights and decent work.
- **Important: Tripartite organisation** — governments, employers and workers.

69. ICAO — International Civil Aviation Organization

- **Founded:** 1944
- **HQ:** Montreal, Canada
- **Members:** 193
- **Purpose:** Safe and orderly international civil aviation.
- **Main Work:** International aviation standards.

70. IMO — International Maritime Organization

- **Founded:** 1948
- **HQ:** London, UK
- **Members:** 176
- **Purpose:** Safe, secure and environmentally responsible shipping.
- **Main Work:** Maritime safety and prevention of marine pollution.

71. IFAD — International Fund for Agricultural Development

- **Founded:** 1977
- **HQ:** Rome, Italy
- **Members:** 180
- **Purpose:** Reduce rural poverty and hunger.
- **Main Work:** Agricultural and rural development financing.

72. UNIDO — United Nations Industrial Development Organization

- **Founded:** 1966
- **HQ:** Vienna, Austria
- **Members:** 172
- **Purpose:** Promote inclusive and sustainable industrial development.
- **Main Work:** Industry, technology and innovation.

73. WIPO — World Intellectual Property Organization

- **Founded:** 1967
- **HQ:** Geneva, Switzerland
- **Members:** 194
- **Purpose:** Protect intellectual property.
- **Main Work:** Patents, trademarks, copyright and related rights.

74. WMO — World Meteorological Organization

- **Founded:** 1950
- **HQ:** Geneva, Switzerland
- **Members:** 193
- **Purpose:** International cooperation on weather, climate and water.
- **Main Work:** Weather forecasting and climate data.

75. ITU — International Telecommunication Union

- **Founded:** 1865
- **HQ:** Geneva, Switzerland
- **Members:** 194
- **Purpose:** Global cooperation in telecommunications and digital technologies.

- **Important: Oldest UN specialized agency.**

76. UPU — Universal Postal Union

- **Founded:** 1874
- **HQ:** Bern, Switzerland
- **Members:** 192
- **Purpose:** International cooperation in postal services.
- **Important:** UN specialized agency dealing with international postal systems.

77. IAEA — International Atomic Energy Agency

- **Founded:** 1957
- **HQ:** Vienna, Austria
- **Members:** 180
- **Purpose:** Peaceful use of nuclear energy.
- **Main Work:** Nuclear safety and safeguards.

78. UN Tourism

Formerly UNWTO — World Tourism Organization

- **Founded:** 1975
- **HQ:** Madrid, Spain
- **Members:** 160+
- **Purpose:** Promote sustainable and responsible tourism.
- **Important:** UN specialized agency for tourism.

79. OPCW — Organisation for the Prohibition of Chemical Weapons

- **Founded:** 1997
- **HQ:** The Hague, Netherlands
- **Members:** 193
- **Purpose:** Eliminate chemical weapons.
- **Important:** Nobel Peace Prize — **2013**.

80. IPCC — Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change

- **Founded:** 1988
- **HQ:** Geneva, Switzerland
- **Purpose:** Assess scientific knowledge on climate change.
- **Important:** Established by **WMO and UNEP**.

IMPORTANT INVENTIONS & INVENTORS

No.	Invention	Inventor / Inventors
1	Wheel	Ancient Mesopotamians
2	Paper	Cai Lun
3	Printing Press	Johannes Gutenberg
4	Telescope	Hans Lippershey
5	Microscope	Zacharias Janssen
6	Barometer	Evangelista Torricelli
7	Thermometer	Galileo Galilei
8	Mercury Thermometer	Daniel Gabriel Fahrenheit
9	Pendulum Clock	Christiaan Huygens
10	Calculator	Blaise Pascal
11	Steam Engine	James Watt *(major improvement)*
12	Steam Locomotive	George Stephenson
13	Bicycle	Kirkpatrick Macmillan
14	Pneumatic Tyre	John Boyd Dunlop
15	Electric Battery	Alessandro Volta
16	Electric Generator	Michael Faraday
17	Electric Motor	Michael Faraday / William Sturgeon
18	Telegraph	Samuel Morse
19	Morse Code	Samuel Morse
20	Telephone	Alexander Graham Bell
21	Phonograph	Thomas Edison
22	Gramophone	Emile Berliner
23	Incandescent Bulb	Thomas Edison
24	Radio	Guglielmo Marconi
25	Television	John Logie Baird
26	Airplane	Wright Brothers
27	Helicopter	Igor Sikorsky
28	Hot-Air Balloon	Montgolfier Brothers
29	Parachute	André-Jacques Garnerin
30	Submarine	John Philip Holland
31	Automobile	Karl Benz
32	Diesel Engine	Rudolf Diesel
33	Petrol Engine	Nikolaus Otto
34	Jet Engine	Frank Whittle
35	Rocket	Robert H. Goddard
36	Radar	Robert Watson-Watt

37	Sonar	Paul Langevin
38	Air Conditioner	Willis Carrier
39	Refrigerator	Carl von Linde
40	Washing Machine	Alva J. Fisher
41	Vacuum Cleaner	Hubert Cecil Booth
42	Dishwasher	Josephine Cochrane
43	Safety Pin	Walter Hunt
44	Sewing Machine	Elias Howe
45	Typewriter	Christopher Latham Sholes
46	Ballpoint Pen	László Bíró
47	Fountain Pen	Lewis Waterman
48	Braille	Louis Braille
49	Bifocal Lens	Benjamin Franklin
50	Lightning Conductor	Benjamin Franklin
51	Photography	Nicéphore Niépce
52	Cinema / Motion Pictures	Lumière Brothers
53	Cinematograph	Lumière Brothers
54	Calculator / Adding Machine	Blaise Pascal
55	Computer Concept	Charles Babbage
56	Programmable Computer	Konrad Zuse
57	Computer Mouse	Douglas Engelbart
58	Email	Ray Tomlinson
59	Internet / TCP-IP	Vint Cerf & Robert Kahn
60	World Wide Web	Tim Berners-Lee
61	Mobile Phone	Martin Cooper
62	Transistor	Bardeen, Brattain & Shockley
63	Integrated Circuit	Jack Kilby & Robert Noyce
64	Microprocessor	Intel team led by Federico Faggin
65	USB	Ajay Bhatt & team
66	Bluetooth	Jaap Haartsen & team
67	Laser	Theodore Maiman
68	X-Ray	Wilhelm Röntgen
69	Stethoscope	René Laennec
70	Vaccination	Edward Jenner
71	Penicillin	Alexander Fleming
72	Pasteurization	Louis Pasteur
73	Antiseptic Surgery	Joseph Lister
74	Aspirin	Felix Hoffmann
75	Insulin	Banting & Best
76	Blood Groups	Karl Landsteiner
77	ECG	Willem Einthoven
78	CT Scan	Godfrey Hounsfield & Allan Cormack
79	MRI	Paul Lauterbur & Peter Mansfield
80	Ultrasound Imaging	Ian Donald & colleagues

81	Anesthesia (Ether)	William T. G. Morton
82	Smallpox Vaccine	Edward Jenner
83	Polio Vaccine	Jonas Salk
84	Nuclear Fission	Otto Hahn & Fritz Strassmann; explained by Meitner & Frisch
85	Atomic Bomb	Manhattan Project
86	Dynamite	Alfred Nobel
87	Radioactivity	Henri Becquerel
88	Electron	J. J. Thomson
89	Neutron	James Chadwick
90	Proton	Ernest Rutherford
91	Periodic Table	Dmitri Mendeleev
92	Celsius Scale	Anders Celsius
93	Kelvin Scale	William Thomson (Lord Kelvin)
94	Diesel Fuel / Engine	Rudolf Diesel
95	Barbed Wire	Joseph Glidden
96	Adhesive Tape	Richard Drew
97	Electric Chair	Harold P. Brown
98	Ceiling Fan	Philip Diehl
99	Traffic Signal	Garrett Morgan
100	Escalator	Jesse Reno
101	Elevator Safety Brake	Elisha Otis
102	Safety Match	Gustaf Erik Pasch
103	Matchstick	John Walker
104	Modern Sewing Machine	Isaac Singer
105	Mechanical Calculator	Wilhelm Schickard
106	Automatic Calculator	Howard Aiken *(Harvard Mark I)*
107	Anemometer	Leon Battista Alberti
108	Celluloid	Alexander Parkes
109	Chloroform	James Young Simpson
110	Adhesive Tape	Richard G. Drew
111	FM Radio	Edwin Howard Armstrong
112	Television Remote Control	Robert Adler
113	Windshield Wiper	Mary Anderson
114	Crash-Test Dummy	Samuel Alderson
115	Coaxial Cable	Herman A. Affel
116	Frequency-Hopping Communication	Hedy Lamarr & George Antheil
117	Electric Razor	Jacob Schick
118	Modern Airplane Propeller	Wright Brothers
119	Steam Turbine	Charles Parsons
120	Gas Turbine	John Barber
121	AC Motor	Nikola Tesla
122	AC Power System	Nikola Tesla
123	Dynamo	Michael Faraday

124	Electromagnetic Induction	Michael Faraday
125	Telephone Exchange	Tivadar Puskás
126	Telegraph Printer	David Edward Hughes
127	Postage Stamp	Rowland Hill
128	Postage Meter	Arthur Pitney
129	Automatic Door	Horatio Jones
130	Escalator Improvement	Charles Seeberger
131	Modern Refrigerator	Carl von Linde
132	Air Brake	George Westinghouse
133	Safety Bicycle	John Kemp Starley
134	Motorcycle	Gottlieb Daimler & Wilhelm Maybach
135	Modern Camera	George Eastman
136	Color Photography	James Clerk Maxwell
137	Film Camera	Thomas Edison & W. K. L. Dickson
138	Motion Picture Projector	Thomas Armat
139	Word Processor	Evelyn Berezin
140	Graphical User Interface	Xerox PARC team
141	Computer Programming Concept	Ada Lovelace
142	First General-Purpose Electronic Computer	ENIAC team
143	QR Code	Masahiro Hara
144	ATM	John Shepherd-Barron
145	Credit Card	John Biggins
146	Barcode	Norman Woodland & Bernard Silver
147	Post-it Note	Spencer Silver & Art Fry
148	Kevlar	Stephanie Kwolek
149	Teflon	Roy Plunkett
150	Nylon	Wallace Carothers
151	Bakelite	Leo Baekeland
152	Vulcanized Rubber	Charles Goodyear
153	Stainless Steel	Harry Brearley
154	Dynamite	Alfred Nobel
155	Revolving Door	Theophilus van Kannel
156	Airplane Black Box	David Warren
157	Windshield Wiper	Mary Anderson
158	Microwave Oven	Percy Spencer
159	Electric Kettle	Arthur Leslie Large
160	Modern Traffic Light	Garrett Morgan

IN IMPORTANT INDIAN INVENTION / TECHNOLOGY FACTS

Invention / Contribution	**Indian Scientist / Inventor**
Raman Effect	C. V. Raman
Bose-Einstein Statistics	S. N. Bose
Radio communication experiment in India	Jagadish Chandra Bose
Wireless communication research	Jagadish Chandra Bose

India's space programme	Vikram Sarabhai
Missile programme	A. P. J. Abdul Kalam
India's nuclear programme	Homi J. Bhabha
India's first indigenous supercomputer project	Vijay Bhatkar
Param series	C-DAC / Vijay Bhatkar
Bhisotype	Shankar Abaji Bhisey
Mechanical calculator & electric motor innovations	G. D. Naidu

FIRST IN INDIA & FIRST IN THE WORLD

FIRST IN INDIA

No.	First in India	Person / Place / Event	Year
1	First President	Dr. Rajendra Prasad	1950
2	First Vice-President	Dr. S. Radhakrishnan	1952
3	First Prime Minister	Jawaharlal Nehru	1947
4	First Woman PM	Indira Gandhi	1966
5	First Woman President	Pratibha Patil	2007
6	First Chief Justice of India	H. J. Kania	1950
7	First Chief Election Commissioner	Sukumar Sen	1950
8	First Lok Sabha Speaker	G. V. Mavalankar	1952
9	First Indian Governor-General	C. Rajagopalachari	1948
10	First Governor-General of Independent India	Lord Mountbatten	1947
11	First Indian Nobel Prize winner	Rabindranath Tagore	1913
12	First Indian Nobel Prize in Science	C. V. Raman	1930
13	First Indian in Space	Rakesh Sharma	1984
14	First Indian Woman in Space	Kalpana Chawla	1997
15	First Indian to climb Everest	Tenzing Norgay	1953
16	First Indian Woman to climb Everest	Bachendri Pal	1984
17	First Indian individual Olympic Gold	Abhinav Bindra	2008
18	First Indian Oscar winner	Bhanu Athaiya	1983
19	First Indian to win Miss World	Reita Faria	1966
20	First Woman IPS Officer	Kiran Bedi	1972
21	First Woman Governor	Sarojini Naidu	1947
22	First Woman Supreme Court Judge	M. Fathima Beevi	1989
23	First Indian Pilot	J. R. D. Tata	1929
24	First Newspaper in India	Bengal Gazette	1780
25	First Railway	Mumbai–Thane	1853
26	First Electric Train	Bombay VT–Kurla	1925
27	First Metro	Kolkata Metro	1984
28	First Satellite	Aryabhata	1975
29	First Satellite launched by Indian rocket	Rohini	1980
30	First Nuclear Test	Pokhran-I	1974
31	First Nuclear Power Plant	Tarapur	1969

32	First Supercomputer	PARAM 8000	1991
33	First Moon Mission	Chandrayaan-1	2008
34	First Mars Mission	Mangalyaan	2013
35	First successful Moon south-pole soft landing	Chandrayaan-3	2023

These science, transport and political firsts are repeatedly included in competitive-exam preparation material.

🌎 FIRST IN THE WORLD

No.	First in the World	Person / Country / Place	Year
1	First man in space	Yuri Gagarin	1961
2	First woman in space	Valentina Tereshkova	1963
3	First person on Moon	Neil Armstrong	1969
4	First woman Prime Minister	Sirimavo Bandaranaike, Sri Lanka	1960
5	First person to reach South Pole	Roald Amundsen	1911
6	First ascent of Mount Everest	Edmund Hillary & Tenzing Norgay	1953
7	First person to reach North Pole*	Robert Peary	1909
8	First artificial satellite	Sputnik 1, USSR	1957
9	First country to send human into space	USSR	1961
10	First country to land humans on Moon	USA	1969
11	First country to launch artificial satellite	USSR	1957
12	First country to host modern Olympics	Greece	1896
13	First FIFA World Cup winner	Uruguay	1930
14	First country to use paper money	China	—
15	First country to print books	China	—
16	First country with written constitution	USA	1787
17	First woman to climb Everest	Junko Tabei, Japan	1975
18	First woman in space	Valentina Tereshkova	1963
19	First man to fly solo across Atlantic	Charles Lindbergh	1927
20	First person to fly an aeroplane	Wright Brothers	1903
21	First person to sail around the world*	Juan Sebastián Elcano	1522
22	First Secretary-General of UN	Trygve Lie	1946
23	First Nobel Prize	Awarded in 1901	—
24	First Nobel Prize in Physics	Wilhelm Röntgen	1901
25	First woman Nobel laureate	Marie Curie	1903
26	First woman Nobel Prize in Physics	Marie Curie	1903
27	First Olympic Games	Athens, Greece	1896
28	First nuclear weapon used in war	Hiroshima, Japan	1945
29	First country to use atomic bomb in war	USA	1945
30	First computer programmer	Ada Lovelace	1840s

*Some historical "first" claims, particularly North Pole and circumnavigation, have disputed or nuanced histories; for competitive exams, the commonly accepted answers above are generally used.

MUST-REMEMBER EXAM TRAPS

- **First Indian Nobel → Rabindranath Tagore**
- **First Indian in Space → Rakesh Sharma**
- **First Indian Woman in Space → Kalpana Chawla**
- **First Indian individual Olympic Gold → Abhinav Bindra**
- **First Woman PM in the World → Sirimavo Bandaranaike**
- **First Man in Space → Yuri Gagarin**
- **First Woman in Space → Valentina Tereshkova**
- **First Man on Moon → Neil Armstrong**
- **First Artificial Satellite → Sputnik 1**
- **First Modern Olympics → Athens, 1896**

IMPORTANT BOOKS & AUTHORS

No.	Book	Author
1	**Gitanjali**	Rabindranath Tagore
2	**The Discovery of India**	Jawaharlal Nehru
3	**An Autobiography**	Jawaharlal Nehru
4	**India Wins Freedom**	Maulana Abul Kalam Azad
5	**My Experiments with Truth**	Mahatma Gandhi
6	**Hind Swaraj**	Mahatma Gandhi
7	**Wings of Fire**	A. P. J. Abdul Kalam & Arun Tiwari
8	**Ignited Minds**	A. P. J. Abdul Kalam
9	**India 2020**	A. P. J. Abdul Kalam & Y. S. Rajan
10	**Playing It My Way**	Sachin Tendulkar
11	**The Test of My Life**	Yuvraj Singh
12	**Unbreakable**	M. C. Mary Kom
13	**A Suitable Boy**	Vikram Seth
14	**The God of Small Things**	Arundhati Roy
15	**The White Tiger**	Aravind Adiga
16	**Train to Pakistan**	Khushwant Singh
17	**Midnight's Children**	Salman Rushdie
18	**The Guide**	R. K. Narayan
19	**Malgudi Days**	R. K. Narayan
20	**Untouchable**	Mulk Raj Anand
21	**Coolie**	Mulk Raj Anand
22	**The Inheritance of Loss**	Kiran Desai
23	**The Palace of Illusions**	Chitra Banerjee Divakaruni

24	**The Namesake**	Jhumpa Lahiri
25	**Godan**	Munshi Premchand
26	**Nirmala**	Munshi Premchand
27	**Anandamath**	Bankim Chandra Chattopadhyay
28	**Devdas**	Sarat Chandra Chattopadhyay
29	**Geetanjali**	Rabindranath Tagore
30	**Rajatarangini**	Kalhana
31	**Arthashastra**	Kautilya (Chanakya)
32	**Indica**	Megasthenes
33	**Akbarnama**	Abul Fazl
34	**Ain-i-Akbari**	Abul Fazl
35	**Baburnama**	Babur
36	**Humayun Nama**	Gulbadan Begum
37	**Prithviraj Raso**	Chand Bardai
38	**The Republic**	Plato
39	**The Prince**	Niccolò Machiavelli
40	**Das Kapital**	Karl Marx
41	**The Communist Manifesto**	Karl Marx & Friedrich Engels
42	**The Wealth of Nations**	Adam Smith
43	**On the Origin of Species**	Charles Darwin
44	**A Brief History of Time**	Stephen Hawking
45	**The Theory of Everything**	Stephen Hawking
46	**The Diary of a Young Girl**	Anne Frank
47	**Mein Kampf**	Adolf Hitler
48	**The Art of War**	Sun Tzu
49	**The Iliad**	Homer
50	**The Odyssey**	Homer
51	**Divine Comedy**	Dante Alighieri
52	**Don Quixote**	Miguel de Cervantes
53	**Hamlet**	William Shakespeare
54	**Macbeth**	William Shakespeare
55	**Othello**	William Shakespeare
56	**Romeo and Juliet**	William Shakespeare
57	**Paradise Lost**	John Milton
58	**Pride and Prejudice**	Jane Austen
59	**Oliver Twist**	Charles Dickens
60	**A Tale of Two Cities**	Charles Dickens
61	**Great Expectations**	Charles Dickens
62	**David Copperfield**	Charles Dickens
63	**War and Peace**	Leo Tolstoy
64	**Anna Karenina**	Leo Tolstoy
65	**Crime and Punishment**	Fyodor Dostoevsky
66	**The Brothers Karamazov**	Fyodor Dostoevsky
67	**The Old Man and the Sea**	Ernest Hemingway

68	**For Whom the Bell Tolls**	Ernest Hemingway
69	**The Great Gatsby**	F. Scott Fitzgerald
70	**1984**	George Orwell
71	**Animal Farm**	George Orwell
72	**Brave New World**	Aldous Huxley
73	**The Alchemist**	Paulo Coelho
74	**The Little Prince**	Antoine de Saint-Exupéry
75	**The Hobbit**	J. R. R. Tolkien
76	**The Lord of the Rings**	J. R. R. Tolkien
77	**Harry Potter Series**	J. K. Rowling
78	**The Catcher in the Rye**	J. D. Salinger
79	**To Kill a Mockingbird**	Harper Lee
80	**The Kite Runner**	Khaled Hosseini
81	**A Thousand Splendid Suns**	Khaled Hosseini
82	**The Old Man and the Sea**	Ernest Hemingway
83	**The Prophet**	Kahlil Gibran
84	**The Stranger**	Albert Camus
85	**Utopia**	Thomas More
86	**Leviathan**	Thomas Hobbes
87	**Two Treatises of Government**	John Locke
88	**The Social Contract**	Jean-Jacques Rousseau
89	**The Second Sex**	Simone de Beauvoir
90	**The Feminine Mystique**	Betty Friedan
91	**Long Walk to Freedom**	Nelson Mandela
92	**I Am Malala**	Malala Yousafzai
93	**Becoming**	Michelle Obama
94	**The Story of My Life**	Helen Keller
95	**Mein Kampf**	Adolf Hitler
96	**The General Theory of Employment, Interest and Money**	John Maynard Keynes
97	**The Interpretation of Dreams**	Sigmund Freud
98	**Silent Spring**	Rachel Carson
99	**Cosmos**	Carl Sagan
100	**A Brief History of Nearly Everything**	Bill Bryson

IMPORTANT AWARDS & HONOURS

No.	Award / Honour	Field / Given For	Country / Organisation
1	**Nobel Prize**	Peace, Science, Literature, Economics	Sweden/Norway
2	**Bharat Ratna**	Highest civilian honour of India	India
3	**Padma Vibhushan**	Exceptional & distinguished service	India
4	**Padma Bhushan**	Distinguished service	India

5	**Padma Shri**	Distinguished contribution	India
6	**Param Vir Chakra**	Highest military gallantry award	India
7	**Maha Vir Chakra**	Second-highest wartime gallantry award	India
8	**Vir Chakra**	Wartime gallantry	India
9	**Ashoka Chakra**	Highest peacetime gallantry award	India
10	**Kirti Chakra**	Second-highest peacetime gallantry award	India
11	**Shaurya Chakra**	Peacetime gallantry	India
12	**Jnanpith Award**	Literature	India
13	**Sahitya Akademi Award**	Literature	India
14	**Dadasaheb Phalke Award**	Indian cinema	India
15	**Arjuna Award**	Outstanding sports performance	India
16	**Major Dhyan Chand Khel Ratna**	Highest sporting honour	India
17	**Dronacharya Award**	Sports coaching	India
18	**Dhyan Chand Award**	Lifetime achievement in sports	India
19	**Ramon Magsaysay Award**	Leadership & public service	Philippines
20	**Pulitzer Prize**	Journalism, literature & music	USA
21	**Booker Prize**	Fiction	UK/International
22	**International Booker Prize**	Translated fiction	International
23	**Pritzker Prize**	Architecture	International
24	**Fields Medal**	Mathematics	International
25	**Abel Prize**	Mathematics	Norway
26	**Turing Award**	Computer science	ACM
27	**Wolf Prize**	Science & arts	Israel
28	**Templeton Prize**	Spiritual/religious progress	International
29	**Grammy Awards**	Music	USA
30	**Academy Awards (Oscars)**	Cinema	USA
31	**Golden Globe Awards**	Film & television	USA
32	**BAFTA Awards**	Film & television	UK
33	**Emmy Awards**	Television	USA
34	**Tony Awards**	Theatre	USA
35	**Laureus World Sports Awards**	Sports	International
36	**Ballon d'Or**	Football	France Football
37	**Wisden Cricketer of the Year**	Cricket	England
38	**ICC Awards**	Cricket	International Cricket Council

39	**Green Nobel / Goldman Prize**	Environmental work	International
40	**UNESCO Peace Prize**	Peace & human rights	UNESCO

✪ MOST IMPORTANT FOR GK

- **Highest Civilian Award of India → Bharat Ratna**
- **Highest Military Gallantry Award → Param Vir Chakra**
- **Highest Peacetime Gallantry Award → Ashoka Chakra**
- **Highest Sports Honour → Major Dhyan Chand Khel Ratna**
- **Highest Literary Award in India → Jnanpith Award**
- **Highest Film Honour in India → Dadasaheb Phalke Award**
- **Mathematics → Fields Medal / Abel Prize**
- **Computer Science → Turing Award**
- **Architecture → Pritzker Prize**
- **Journalism → Pulitzer Prize**
- **Music → Grammy**
- **Cinema → Oscars**
- **Football → Ballon d'Or**

IMPORTANT DAYS & DATES — MASTER LIST

Date	Day	Importance
12 January	National Youth Day	Birth anniversary of Swami Vivekananda
15 January	Army Day	Indian Army
24 January	National Girl Child Day	Girl-child welfare
25 January	National Voters' Day	Election awareness
26 January	Republic Day	Indian Constitution came into effect
30 January	Martyrs' Day	Mahatma Gandhi
4 February	World Cancer Day	Cancer awareness
13 February	World Radio Day	Radio
28 February	National Science Day	Raman Effect
8 March	International Women's Day	Women's rights
15 March	World Consumer Rights Day	Consumer rights
22 March	World Water Day	Water conservation
7 April	World Health Day	WHO
14 April	Ambedkar Jayanti	Dr. B. R. Ambedkar
22 April	Earth Day	Environment
1 May	International Labour Day	Workers' rights
3 May	World Press Freedom Day	Press freedom
8 May	World Red Cross Day	Red Cross
11 May	National Technology Day	Pokhran nuclear tests
31 May	World No Tobacco Day	Tobacco awareness
5 June	World Environment Day	Environment

21 June	International Yoga Day	Yoga
26 June	International Day Against Drug Abuse	Drug awareness
11 July	World Population Day	Population issues
26 July	Kargil Vijay Diwas	Kargil War victory
29 July	International Tiger Day	Tiger conservation
6 August	Hiroshima Day	Atomic bombing remembrance
9 August	Quit India Movement Day	1942 Movement
15 August	Independence Day	India's independence
29 August	National Sports Day	Major Dhyan Chand
5 September	Teachers' Day	Dr. S. Radhakrishnan
8 September	International Literacy Day	Literacy
14 September	Hindi Diwas	Hindi language
16 September	World Ozone Day	Ozone protection
2 October	Gandhi Jayanti	Mahatma Gandhi
8 October	Indian Air Force Day	Indian Air Force
10 October	World Mental Health Day	Mental health awareness
16 October	World Food Day	FAO
24 October	United Nations Day	UN
31 October	National Unity Day	Sardar Patel
10 November	World Science Day	Science & peace
14 November	Children's Day	Jawaharlal Nehru
19 November	World Toilet Day	Sanitation
26 November	Constitution Day	Indian Constitution
1 December	World AIDS Day	HIV/AIDS awareness
4 December	Indian Navy Day	Indian Navy
10 December	Human Rights Day	Human rights
14 December	National Energy Conservation Day	Energy conservation
16 December	Vijay Diwas	1971 India-Pakistan War
22 December	National Mathematics Day	Srinivasa Ramanujan
23 December	National Farmers' Day	Chaudhary Charan Singh

MOST IMPORTANT EXAM FACTS

- **National Science Day → 28 February**
- **World Health Day → 7 April**
- **Earth Day → 22 April**
- **World Environment Day → 5 June**
- **International Yoga Day → 21 June**
- **Independence Day → 15 August**
- **Teachers' Day → 5 September**
- **Hindi Diwas → 14 September**
- **Gandhi Jayanti → 2 October**
- **UN Day → 24 October**

- **Constitution Day → 26 November**
- **Human Rights Day → 10 December**
- **National Mathematics Day → 22 December**

NATIONAL & INTERNATIONAL SYMBOLS

No.	Symbol / Category	India / World	Answer
1	National Flag of India	India	**Tiranga**
2	National Emblem	India	**Lion Capital of Ashoka**
3	National Anthem	India	**Jana Gana Mana**
4	National Song	India	**Vande Mataram**
5	National Animal	India	**Bengal Tiger**
6	National Bird	India	**Indian Peacock**
7	National Flower	India	**Lotus**
8	National Tree	India	**Banyan**
9	National Fruit	India	**Mango**
10	National River	India	**Ganga**
11	National Aquatic Animal	India	**Ganges River Dolphin**
12	National Heritage Animal	India	**Indian Elephant**
13	National Reptile	India	**King Cobra**
14	National Calendar	India	**Saka Calendar**
15	National Currency	India	**Indian Rupee (₹)**
16	National Motto	India	**Satyameva Jayate**
17	National Game*	India	**No officially declared national game**
18	National Flag of Bangladesh	Bangladesh	**Green with red circle**
19	National Animal of China	China	**Giant Panda**
20	National Animal of Australia	Australia	**Red Kangaroo**
21	National Animal of USA	USA	**Bald Eagle**
22	National Animal of Pakistan	Pakistan	**Markhor**
23	National Animal of Nepal	Nepal	**Cow**
24	National Animal of Sri Lanka	Sri Lanka	**Sri Lankan Elephant**
25	National Animal of Bhutan	Bhutan	**Takin**
26	National Animal of Russia	Russia	**Brown Bear**
27	National Flower of Japan	Japan	**Cherry Blossom**
28	National Flower of Pakistan	Pakistan	**Jasmine**
29	National Flower of Bangladesh	Bangladesh	**Water Lily**
30	National Flower of Nepal	Nepal	**Rhododendron**
31	National Flower of Sri Lanka	Sri Lanka	**Blue Water Lily**
32	National Bird of USA	USA	**Bald Eagle**
33	National Bird of Pakistan	Pakistan	**Chukar Partridge**
34	National Bird of Bangladesh	Bangladesh	**Oriental Magpie-Robin**
35	National Bird of Nepal	Nepal	**Himalayan Monal**
36	UN Flag	World	**UN emblem on light blue**
37	Red Cross Symbol	World	**Humanitarian/medical aid**
38	Olympic Symbol	World	**Five interlocking rings**

39	Paralympic Symbol	World	**Three Agitos**
40	Earth Symbol	World	**Globe / Earth**

IN IMPORTANT INDIAN SYMBOL FACTS

- **National Anthem:** Jana Gana Mana — **Rabindranath Tagore**
- **National Song:** Vande Mataram — **Bankim Chandra Chattopadhyay**
- **National Emblem:** Lion Capital of Ashoka
- **Motto: Satyameva Jayate**
- **National Animal:** Bengal Tiger
- **National Bird:** Indian Peacock
- **National Flower:** Lotus
- **National Tree:** Banyan
- **National River:** Ganga
- **National Aquatic Animal:** Ganges River Dolphin
- **National Calendar:** Saka Calendar
- **National Game: No officially declared national game**

Exam trap: Hockey is often called India's "national game," but the Government of India has **not officially declared any sport as the national game**.

🌎 COUNTRIES — CAPITALS & CURRENCIES

No.	Country	Capital	Currency
1	Afghanistan	Kabul	Afghani
2	Albania	Tirana	Lek
3	Algeria	Algiers	Algerian Dinar
4	Andorra	Andorra la Vella	Euro
5	Angola	Luanda	Kwanza
6	Antigua and Barbuda	St. John's	East Caribbean Dollar
7	Argentina	Buenos Aires	Argentine Peso
8	Armenia	Yerevan	Dram
9	Australia	Canberra	Australian Dollar
10	Austria	Vienna	Euro
11	Azerbaijan	Baku	Manat
12	Bahamas	Nassau	Bahamian Dollar
13	Bahrain	Manama	Bahraini Dinar
14	Bangladesh	Dhaka	Taka
15	Barbados	Bridgetown	Barbadian Dollar
16	Belarus	Minsk	Belarusian Ruble
17	Belgium	Brussels	Euro
18	Belize	Belmopan	Belize Dollar
19	Benin	Porto-Novo	West African CFA Franc
20	Bhutan	Thimphu	Ngultrum
21	Bolivia	Sucre	Boliviano
22	Bosnia and Herzegovina	Sarajevo	Convertible Mark

23	Botswana	Gaborone	Pula
24	Brazil	Brasília	Brazilian Real
25	Brunei	Bandar Seri Begawan	Brunei Dollar
26	Bulgaria	Sofia	Euro
27	Burkina Faso	Ouagadougou	West African CFA Franc
28	Burundi	Gitega	Burundian Franc
29	Cabo Verde	Praia	Escudo
30	Cambodia	Phnom Penh	Riel
31	Cameroon	Yaoundé	Central African CFA Franc
32	Canada	Ottawa	Canadian Dollar
33	Central African Republic	Bangui	Central African CFA Franc
34	Chad	N'Djamena	Central African CFA Franc
35	Chile	Santiago	Chilean Peso
36	China	Beijing	Yuan (Renminbi)
37	Colombia	Bogotá	Colombian Peso
38	Comoros	Moroni	Comorian Franc
39	Costa Rica	San José	Costa Rican Colón
40	Côte d'Ivoire	Yamoussoukro	West African CFA Franc
41	Croatia	Zagreb	Euro
42	Cuba	Havana	Cuban Peso
43	Cyprus	Nicosia	Euro
44	Czechia	Prague	Czech Koruna
45	Democratic Republic of the Congo	Kinshasa	Congolese Franc
46	Denmark	Copenhagen	Danish Krone
47	Djibouti	Djibouti	Djiboutian Franc
48	Dominica	Roseau	East Caribbean Dollar
49	Dominican Republic	Santo Domingo	Dominican Peso
50	Ecuador	Quito	US Dollar
51	Egypt	Cairo	Egyptian Pound
52	El Salvador	San Salvador	US Dollar
53	Equatorial Guinea	Malabo	Central African CFA Franc
54	Eritrea	Asmara	Nakfa
55	Estonia	Tallinn	Euro
56	Eswatini	Mbabane	Lilangeni
57	Ethiopia	Addis Ababa	Birr
58	Fiji	Suva	Fijian Dollar
59	Finland	Helsinki	Euro
60	France	Paris	Euro
61	Gabon	Libreville	Central African CFA Franc
62	Gambia	Banjul	Dalasi
63	Georgia	Tbilisi	Lari
64	Germany	Berlin	Euro
65	Ghana	Accra	Cedi
66	Greece	Athens	Euro

67	Grenada	St. George's	East Caribbean Dollar
68	Guatemala	Guatemala City	Quetzal
69	Guinea	Conakry	Guinean Franc
70	Guinea-Bissau	Bissau	West African CFA Franc
71	Guyana	Georgetown	Guyanese Dollar
72	Haiti	Port-au-Prince	Gourde
73	Honduras	Tegucigalpa	Lempira
74	Hungary	Budapest	Forint
75	Iceland	Reykjavík	Icelandic Króna
76	India	New Delhi	Indian Rupee
77	Indonesia	Jakarta	Rupiah
78	Iran	Tehran	Iranian Rial
79	Iraq	Baghdad	Iraqi Dinar
80	Ireland	Dublin	Euro
81	Israel	Jerusalem	New Shekel
82	Italy	Rome	Euro
83	Jamaica	Kingston	Jamaican Dollar
84	Japan	Tokyo	Yen
85	Jordan	Amman	Jordanian Dinar
86	Kazakhstan	Astana	Tenge
87	Kenya	Nairobi	Kenyan Shilling
88	Kiribati	South Tarawa	Australian Dollar
89	Kuwait	Kuwait City	Kuwaiti Dinar
90	Kyrgyzstan	Bishkek	Som
91	Laos	Vientiane	Kip
92	Latvia	Riga	Euro
93	Lebanon	Beirut	Lebanese Pound
94	Lesotho	Maseru	Loti
95	Liberia	Monrovia	Liberian Dollar
96	Libya	Tripoli	Libyan Dinar
97	Liechtenstein	Vaduz	Swiss Franc
98	Lithuania	Vilnius	Euro
99	Luxembourg	Luxembourg	Euro
100	Madagascar	Antananarivo	Ariary
101	Malawi	Lilongwe	Kwacha
102	Malaysia	Kuala Lumpur	Ringgit
103	Maldives	Malé	Rufiyaa
104	Mali	Bamako	West African CFA Franc
105	Malta	Valletta	Euro
106	Marshall Islands	Majuro	US Dollar
107	Mauritania	Nouakchott	Ouguiya
108	Mauritius	Port Louis	Mauritian Rupee
109	Mexico	Mexico City	Mexican Peso
110	Micronesia	Palikir	US Dollar

111	Moldova	Chișinău	Moldovan Leu
112	Monaco	Monaco	Euro
113	Mongolia	Ulaanbaatar	Tögrög
114	Montenegro	Podgorica	Euro
115	Morocco	Rabat	Moroccan Dirham
116	Mozambique	Maputo	Metical
117	Myanmar	Naypyidaw	Kyat
118	Namibia	Windhoek	Namibian Dollar
119	Nauru	Yaren*	Australian Dollar
120	Nepal	Kathmandu	Nepalese Rupee
121	Netherlands	Amsterdam	Euro
122	New Zealand	Wellington	New Zealand Dollar
123	Nicaragua	Managua	Córdoba
124	Niger	Niamey	West African CFA Franc
125	Nigeria	Abuja	Naira
126	North Korea	Pyongyang	Won
127	North Macedonia	Skopje	Denar
128	Norway	Oslo	Norwegian Krone
129	Oman	Muscat	Omani Rial
130	Pakistan	Islamabad	Pakistani Rupee
131	Palau	Ngerulmud	US Dollar
132	Palestine	East Jerusalem*	Israeli New Shekel / Jordanian Dinar
133	Panama	Panama City	Balboa / US Dollar
134	Papua New Guinea	Port Moresby	Kina
135	Paraguay	Asunción	Guaraní
136	Peru	Lima	Sol
137	Philippines	Manila	Philippine Peso
138	Poland	Warsaw	Złoty
139	Portugal	Lisbon	Euro
140	Qatar	Doha	Qatari Riyal
141	Republic of the Congo	Brazzaville	Central African CFA Franc
142	Romania	Bucharest	Romanian Leu
143	Russia	Moscow	Russian Ruble
144	Rwanda	Kigali	Rwandan Franc
145	Saint Kitts and Nevis	Basseterre	East Caribbean Dollar
146	Saint Lucia	Castries	East Caribbean Dollar
147	Saint Vincent and the Grenadines	Kingstown	East Caribbean Dollar
148	Samoa	Apia	Tala
149	San Marino	San Marino	Euro
150	São Tomé and Príncipe	São Tomé	Dobra
151	Saudi Arabia	Riyadh	Saudi Riyal
152	Senegal	Dakar	West African CFA Franc
153	Serbia	Belgrade	Serbian Dinar

154	Seychelles	Victoria	Seychellois Rupee
155	Sierra Leone	Freetown	Leone
156	Singapore	Singapore	Singapore Dollar
157	Slovakia	Bratislava	Euro
158	Slovenia	Ljubljana	Euro
159	Solomon Islands	Honiara	Solomon Islands Dollar
160	Somalia	Mogadishu	Somali Shilling
161	South Africa	Pretoria / Cape Town / Bloemfontein	Rand
162	South Korea	Seoul	Won
163	South Sudan	Juba	South Sudanese Pound
164	Spain	Madrid	Euro
165	Sri Lanka	Sri Jayawardenepura Kotte	Sri Lankan Rupee
166	Sudan	Khartoum	Sudanese Pound
167	Suriname	Paramaribo	Surinamese Dollar
168	Sweden	Stockholm	Swedish Krona
169	Switzerland	Bern	Swiss Franc
170	Syria	Damascus	Syrian Pound
171	Tajikistan	Dushanbe	Somoni
172	Tanzania	Dodoma	Tanzanian Shilling
173	Thailand	Bangkok	Baht
174	Timor-Leste	Dili	US Dollar
175	Togo	Lomé	West African CFA Franc
176	Tonga	Nuku'alofa	Pa‘anga
177	Trinidad and Tobago	Port of Spain	Trinidad and Tobago Dollar
178	Tunisia	Tunis	Tunisian Dinar
179	Türkiye	Ankara	Turkish Lira
180	Turkmenistan	Ashgabat	Manat
181	Tuvalu	Funafuti	Australian Dollar
182	Uganda	Kampala	Ugandan Shilling
183	Ukraine	Kyiv	Hryvnia
184	United Arab Emirates	Abu Dhabi	UAE Dirham
185	United Kingdom	London	Pound Sterling
186	United States	Washington, D.C.	US Dollar
187	Uruguay	Montevideo	Uruguayan Peso
188	Uzbekistan	Tashkent	Uzbekistani Som
189	Vanuatu	Port Vila	Vatu
190	Vatican City	Vatican City	Euro
191	Venezuela	Caracas	Bolívar
192	Vietnam	Hanoi	Dong
193	Yemen	Sana'a	Yemeni Rial
194	Zambia	Lusaka	Zambian Kwacha
195	Zimbabwe	Harare	Zimbabwe Gold (ZiG)

EXAM TRAPS

- **Australia → Canberra**
- **Brazil → Brasília**
- **Canada → Ottawa**
- **China → Beijing**
- **Türkiye → Ankara**
- **UAE → Abu Dhabi**
- **Switzerland → Bern**
- **Pakistan → Islamabad**
- **Sri Lanka → Sri Jayawardenepura Kotte**
- **Myanmar → Naypyidaw**
- **Kazakhstan → Astana**
- **Tanzania → Dodoma**
- **Nigeria → Abuja**
- **Côte d'Ivoire → Yamoussoukro**
- **Benin → Porto-Novo**
- **Bolivia → Sucre** *(constitutional capital; La Paz is seat of government)*
- **South Africa → 3 capitals**
- **Nauru → Yaren** *(de facto; no official capital)*

Note: This is the standard **195-country list: 193 UN members + Palestine + Vatican City**. Currency and capital arrangements can change, so this should be periodically updated for current-affairs exams.

FAMOUS PERSONALITIES & NICKNAMES

No.	Personality	Famous Nickname / Title
1	Mahatma Gandhi	Father of the Nation
2	Jawaharlal Nehru	Chacha Nehru
3	Subhas Chandra Bose	Netaji
4	Sardar Vallabhbhai Patel	Iron Man of India
5	Bal Gangadhar Tilak	Lokmanya
6	Lala Lajpat Rai	Punjab Kesari
7	Bhagat Singh	Shaheed-e-Azam
8	Sarojini Naidu	Nightingale of India
9	Rabindranath Tagore	Gurudev
10	Dr. Rajendra Prasad	Ajatshatru
11	Dr. B. R. Ambedkar	Father of the Indian Constitution
12	Swami Vivekananda	Young India / Cyclonic Monk*
13	A. P. J. Abdul Kalam	Missile Man of India
14	Homi J. Bhabha	Father of Indian Nuclear Programme
15	Vikram Sarabhai	Father of Indian Space Programme
16	C. V. Raman	Father of Indian Physics
17	Srinivasa Ramanujan	Man Who Knew Infinity

18	Jagadish Chandra Bose	Father of Indian Plant Physiology
19	M. S. Swaminathan	Father of Green Revolution in India
20	Verghese Kurien	Father of White Revolution
21	Dhirubhai Ambani	Business Magnate
22	J. R. D. Tata	Father of Indian Civil Aviation
23	R. K. Narayan	—
24	Premchand	Upanyas Samrat
25	Amir Khusrau	Parrot of India
26	Tansen	One of the Navratnas of Akbar
27	Major Dhyan Chand	Hockey Wizard
28	Sachin Tendulkar	Master Blaster
29	Kapil Dev	Haryana Hurricane
30	Sunil Gavaskar	Little Master
31	Rahul Dravid	The Wall
32	Virender Sehwag	Sultan of Multan
33	Sourav Ganguly	Dada
34	M. S. Dhoni	Captain Cool
35	Virat Kohli	King Kohli
36	Rohit Sharma	Hitman
37	Yuvraj Singh	Yuvi
38	Milkha Singh	Flying Sikh
39	P. T. Usha	Payyoli Express
40	Mary Kom	Magnificent Mary
41	Saina Nehwal	Shuttle Queen
42	P. V. Sindhu	—
43	Abhinav Bindra	Golden Boy
44	Neeraj Chopra	Golden Boy
45	Roger Federer	Swiss Maestro
46	Michael Jordan	His Airness
47	Diego Maradona	El Diego
48	Pelé	Black Pearl
49	Cristiano Ronaldo	CR7
50	Lionel Messi	La Pulga
51	Napoleon Bonaparte	Little Corporal
52	Abraham Lincoln	Honest Abe
53	George Washington	Father of His Country
54	Winston Churchill	British Bulldog
55	Nelson Mandela	Madiba
56	Martin Luther King Jr.	Apostle of Nonviolence
57	Mother Teresa	Saint of the Gutters
58	Florence Nightingale	Lady with the Lamp
59	Albert Einstein	Genius of Physics
60	Isaac Newton	Father of Classical Physics
61	Charles Darwin	Father of Evolution

62	Louis Pasteur	Father of Microbiology
63	Alexander Fleming	Discoverer of Penicillin
64	Thomas Edison	Wizard of Menlo Park
65	Nikola Tesla	Father of Modern Electricity
66	Galileo Galilei	Father of Modern Physics
67	Johannes Gutenberg	Father of Printing
68	William Shakespeare	Bard of Avon
69	Geoffrey Chaucer	Father of English Poetry
70	John Milton	Poet of Puritanism
71	Homer	Legendary Greek Poet
72	Aristotle	Father of Western Philosophy
73	Plato	Father of Western Political Philosophy
74	Socrates	Father of Western Philosophy
75	Adam Smith	Father of Economics
76	Karl Marx	Father of Communism
77	Sigmund Freud	Father of Psychoanalysis
78	Henry Ford	Father of Mass Production
79	Steve Jobs	Father of the Digital Revolution
80	Bill Gates	Co-founder of Microsoft

MUST REMEMBER

- **Gandhi → Father of the Nation**
- **Sardar Patel → Iron Man of India**
- **Subhas Chandra Bose → Netaji**
- **Lala Lajpat Rai → Punjab Kesari**
- **Sarojini Naidu → Nightingale of India**
- **Abdul Kalam → Missile Man of India**
- **Vikram Sarabhai → Father of Indian Space Programme**
- **Verghese Kurien → Father of White Revolution**
- **M. S. Swaminathan → Father of Green Revolution in India**
- **Dhyan Chand → Hockey Wizard**
- **Sachin → Master Blaster**
- **Rahul Dravid → The Wall**
- **Milkha Singh → Flying Sikh**
- **P. T. Usha → Payyoli Express**
- **Shakespeare → Bard of Avon**
- **Florence Nightingale → Lady with the Lamp**
- **Einstein → Genius of Physics**
- **Newton → Father of Classical Physics**
- **Adam Smith → Father of Economics**

SPORTS — CUPS, TROPHIES & IMPORTANT TERMS

Major Cups & Trophies

No.	Cup / Trophy	Sport
1	**FIFA World Cup**	Football
2	**AFC Asian Cup**	Football
3	**Santosh Trophy**	Football
4	**Durand Cup**	Football
5	**Subroto Cup**	Football
6	**Thomas Cup**	Badminton – Men
7	**Uber Cup**	Badminton – Women
8	**Sudirman Cup**	Badminton – Mixed
9	**All England Championship**	Badminton
10	**Davis Cup**	Tennis – Men
11	**Billie Jean King Cup**	Tennis – Women
12	**Wimbledon**	Tennis
13	**US Open**	Tennis
14	**French Open**	Tennis
15	**Australian Open**	Tennis
16	**Ryder Cup**	Golf
17	**Walker Cup**	Golf
18	**Ashes**	Cricket
19	**Border-Gavaskar Trophy**	Cricket
20	**Ranji Trophy**	Cricket
21	**Duleep Trophy**	Cricket
22	**Irani Cup**	Cricket
23	**Deodhar Trophy**	Cricket
24	**Vijay Hazare Trophy**	Cricket
25	**Syed Mushtaq Ali Trophy**	Cricket
26	**World Cup**	Cricket
27	**Hockey World Cup**	Hockey
28	**Sultan Azlan Shah Cup**	Hockey
29	**Beighton Cup**	Hockey
30	**Aga Khan Cup**	Hockey
31	**Wightman Cup**	Tennis
32	**Hopman Cup**	Tennis
33	**Laver Cup**	Tennis
34	**President's Cup**	Golf
35	**Durand Cup**	Football
36	**Aga Khan Gold Cup**	Polo
37	**Ezra Cup**	Polo
38	**Merdeka Cup**	Football
39	**Merlo Cup**	Polo
40	**Prakash Padukone Trophy**	Badminton

🏏 IMPORTANT SPORTS TERMS

Sport	Important Term
Cricket	LBW, Yorker, Googly, Maiden Over, Hat-trick
Football	Offside, Penalty, Corner Kick, Hat-trick
Hockey	Penalty Corner, Bully
Tennis	Love, Deuce, Ace, Break Point
Badminton	Smash, Drop, Rally, Let
Boxing	Knockout (KO), Jab, Uppercut
Wrestling	Pin, Takedown
Basketball	Dribble, Dunk, Rebound
Volleyball	Serve, Spike, Block
Golf	Birdie, Eagle, Bogey, Par
Baseball	Pitch, Strike, Home Run
Swimming	Freestyle, Backstroke, Butterfly
Athletics	Sprint, Hurdles, Relay
Chess	Check, Checkmate, Gambit, Stalemate
Table Tennis	Smash, Rally, Deuce
Cycling	Peloton
Polo	Chukker
Archery	Bull's-eye
Shooting	Bull's-eye

MUST REMEMBER

- **Thomas Cup → Badminton Men**
- **Uber Cup → Badminton Women**
- **Sudirman Cup → Mixed Badminton**
- **Davis Cup → Tennis Men**
- **Billie Jean King Cup → Tennis Women**
- **Ashes → England vs Australia Cricket**
- **Ranji Trophy → Indian First-Class Cricket**
- **Durand Cup → Football**
- **Santosh Trophy → Indian Football**
- **Sultan Azlan Shah Cup → Hockey**
- **Ryder Cup → Golf**
- **Wimbledon → Tennis**
- **Chukker → Polo**
- **Love → Tennis**
- **LBW → Cricket**
- **Penalty Corner → Hockey**
- **Checkmate → Chess**

GEOGRAPHCAL SUPERLATIVES — INDIA & WORLD

IN INDIA — IMPORTANT "LARGEST / HIGHEST / LONGEST"

No.	Superlative	Answer

1	Largest State by Area	Rajasthan
2	Largest State by Population	Uttar Pradesh
3	Smallest State by Area	Goa
4	Smallest State by Population	Sikkim
5	Largest Union Territory by Area	Ladakh
6	Smallest Union Territory by Area	Lakshadweep
7	Highest Mountain Peak in India	Kangchenjunga
8	Longest River in India	Ganga
9	Longest River entirely within India	Godavari
10	Largest River Island	Majuli
11	Largest Freshwater Lake	Wular Lake
12	Largest Brackish Water Lake	Chilika Lake
13	Largest Saltwater Lake	Sambhar Lake
14	Highest Waterfall	Kunchikal Falls
15	Longest Dam	Hirakud Dam
16	Largest Dam by Reservoir Capacity	Tehri Dam
17	Largest Desert	Thar Desert
18	Largest Delta	Sundarbans Delta
19	Longest Coastline State	Gujarat
20	Southernmost Point of India	Indira Point
21	Northernmost Point of India	Indira Col
22	Easternmost Point of India	Kibithu
23	Westernmost Point of India	Guhar Moti
24	Highest Motorable Road*	Umling La
25	Largest Plateau	Deccan Plateau
26	Largest Forest Cover State by Area	Madhya Pradesh
27	Largest Mangrove Forest	Sundarbans
28	Largest Cave	Krem Liat Prah, Meghalaya
29	Longest National Highway	NH 44
30	Largest Natural Port	Mumbai

🌎 WORLD — IMPORTANT SUPERLATIVES

No.	Superlative	Answer
1	Largest Continent	Asia
2	Smallest Continent	Australia
3	Largest Ocean	Pacific Ocean
4	Smallest Ocean	Arctic Ocean
5	Largest Country	Russia
6	Smallest Country	Vatican City
7	Highest Mountain	Mount Everest
8	Longest River*	Nile
9	Largest River by Volume	Amazon
10	Largest Hot Desert	Sahara

11	Largest Desert	Antarctica
12	Deepest Ocean Trench	Mariana Trench
13	Largest Island	Greenland
14	Largest Lake by Area	Caspian Sea
15	Deepest Lake	Lake Baikal
16	Largest Freshwater Lake by Area	Lake Superior
17	Highest Waterfall	Angel Falls
18	Largest Coral Reef System	Great Barrier Reef
19	Largest Rainforest	Amazon Rainforest
20	Largest Peninsula	Arabian Peninsula
21	Largest Bay	Bay of Bengal
22	Largest Gulf	Gulf of Mexico
23	Longest Mountain Range on Land	Andes
24	Longest Mountain System	Mid-Ocean Ridge
25	Lowest Land Point	Dead Sea Shore
26	Highest Plateau	Tibetan Plateau
27	Largest Delta	Ganges-Brahmaputra-Meghna Delta
28	Largest Volcano by Volume	Mauna Loa
29	Largest Country in Africa	Algeria
30	Largest Country in South America	Brazil

MUST REMEMBER

- **Largest Continent → Asia**
- **Largest Ocean → Pacific**
- **Highest Mountain → Mount Everest**
- **Largest Country → Russia**
- **Smallest Country → Vatican City**
- **Largest Island → Greenland**
- **Largest Hot Desert → Sahara**
- **Largest Desert → Antarctica**
- **Deepest Lake → Baikal**
- **Deepest Ocean Trench → Mariana Trench**
- **Largest Rainforest → Amazon**
- **Largest Coral Reef → Great Barrier Reef**
- **India's longest river → Ganga**
- **India's highest peak → Kangchenjunga**
- **India's largest state → Rajasthan**
- **India's largest state by population → Uttar Pradesh**
- **India's longest National Highway → NH 44**

*The Nile is traditionally given as the world's longest river in many exams, although the Nile–Amazon comparison has been debated depending on how river sources and lengths are measured.

🌊 IMPORTANT RIVERS, DAMS & PROJECTS — INDIA

No.	River / Dam / Project	Important Fact
1	**Ganga**	Longest river of India
2	**Yamuna**	Major tributary of Ganga
3	**Brahmaputra**	Called **Tsangpo** in Tibet
4	**Indus**	Major river of the Indus Valley; rises in Tibet
5	**Godavari**	Longest river of Peninsular India
6	**Krishna**	Major Peninsular river
7	**Narmada**	Flows west; forms an estuary
8	**Tapi (Tapti)**	Flows west; parallel to Narmada
9	**Mahanadi**	Major river of Odisha
10	**Kaveri**	Important river of southern India
11	**Sutlej**	Tributary of Indus
12	**Beas**	Tributary of Sutlej
13	**Ravi**	Indus river system
14	**Chenab**	Formed by Chandra and Bhaga
15	**Jhelum**	Rises in Kashmir
16	**Teesta**	Important Himalayan river
17	**Hirakud Dam**	Mahanadi; Odisha
18	**Bhakra Nangal Dam**	Sutlej; Himachal Pradesh/Punjab
19	**Tehri Dam**	Bhagirathi; Uttarakhand
20	**Sardar Sarovar Dam**	Narmada; Gujarat
21	**Nagarjuna Sagar Dam**	Krishna; Telangana/Andhra Pradesh
22	**Tungabhadra Dam**	Tungabhadra River; Karnataka
23	**Koyna Dam**	Koyna River; Maharashtra
24	**Rihand Dam**	Rihand River; Uttar Pradesh
25	**Indira Sagar Dam**	Narmada; Madhya Pradesh
26	**Idukki Dam**	Periyar; Kerala
27	**Mettur Dam**	Kaveri; Tamil Nadu
28	**Kallanai (Grand Anicut)**	Kaveri; Tamil Nadu
29	**Damodar Valley Project**	Damodar River; multipurpose project
30	**Bhakra Nangal Project**	Irrigation + hydroelectric power
31	**Narmada Valley Project**	Irrigation + power
32	**Tehri Project**	Hydroelectric power + irrigation
33	**Chambal Valley Project**	Chambal River; MP & Rajasthan
34	**Farakka Barrage**	Ganga; West Bengal
35	**Kosi Project**	Kosi River; Bihar
36	**Tungabhadra Project**	Irrigation + hydroelectric power
37	**Mahi Project**	Mahi River; Gujarat/Rajasthan
38	**Ranjit Sagar Dam**	Ravi River; Punjab/J&K region
39	**Ukai Dam**	Tapi River; Gujarat
40	**Khadakwasla Dam**	Mutha River; Maharashtra

MUST REMEMBER

- **Hirakud → Mahanadi**

- **Bhakra Nangal → Sutlej**
- **Tehri → Bhagirathi**
- **Sardar Sarovar → Narmada**
- **Nagarjuna Sagar → Krishna**
- **Mettur → Kaveri**
- **Idukki → Periyar**
- **Ukai → Tapi**
- **Farakka Barrage → Ganga**
- **Kallanai → Kaveri**

🧠 EXAM TRAPS

West-flowing major rivers: Narmada + Tapi
Longest Peninsular river: Godavari
Ganga's major tributary: Yamuna
Brahmaputra in Tibet: Tsangpo
Kaveri originates: Karnataka
Narmada originates: Madhya Pradesh

🔬 IMPORTANT SCIENTIFIC INSTRUMENTS & THEIR USES

No.	Instrument	Used For
1	**Barometer**	Atmospheric pressure
2	**Thermometer**	Temperature
3	**Hygrometer**	Humidity
4	**Anemometer**	Wind speed
5	**Wind Vane**	Wind direction
6	**Rain Gauge**	Rainfall
7	**Seismograph**	Earthquake vibrations
8	**Seismometer**	Measuring ground motion
9	**Altimeter**	Altitude/height
10	**Ammeter**	Electric current
11	**Voltmeter**	Voltage
12	**Galvanometer**	Small electric current
13	**Ohmmeter**	Electrical resistance
14	**Wattmeter**	Electrical power
15	**Multimeter**	Voltage, current & resistance
16	**Electroscope**	Electric charge
17	**Potentiometer**	Potential difference
18	**Calorimeter**	Heat measurement
19	**Hydrometer**	Relative density of liquids
20	**Lactometer**	Purity/density of milk
21	**Barometer**	Atmospheric pressure
22	**Manometer**	Pressure of gases
23	**Pyrometer**	Very high temperature

24	**Microscope**	Very small objects
25	**Telescope**	Distant celestial objects
26	**Periscope**	Viewing objects over/around obstacles
27	**Spectroscope**	Study of light spectrum
28	**Spectrometer**	Measure properties of spectrum
29	**Stethoscope**	Heart & lung sounds
30	**Sphygmomanometer**	Blood pressure
31	**Spirometer**	Lung capacity
32	**Otoscope**	Ear examination
33	**Ophthalmoscope**	Eye examination
34	**Endoscope**	Internal body examination
35	**ECG Machine**	Electrical activity of heart
36	**EEG Machine**	Electrical activity of brain
37	**Ultrasound Scanner**	Internal body imaging
38	**CT Scanner**	Cross-sectional body images
39	**MRI Scanner**	Detailed body/tissue imaging
40	**Geiger Counter**	Radioactivity
41	**Dosimeter**	Radiation exposure
42	**Mass Spectrometer**	Mass of particles/isotopes
43	**pH Meter**	Acidity/alkalinity
44	**Colorimeter**	Concentration of coloured solutions
45	**Centrifuge**	Separating substances by density
46	**Chromatograph**	Separating chemical mixtures
47	**Dynamometer**	Force/torque
48	**Odometer**	Distance travelled by vehicle
49	**Speedometer**	Speed of vehicle
50	**Tachometer**	Rotational speed
51	**Radar**	Detecting distance/speed/location
52	**Sonar**	Detecting underwater objects/depth
53	**GPS**	Location/navigation
54	**Seismometer**	Ground movement
55	**Aspirator**	Suction / creating low pressure
56	**Fathometer**	Depth of water
57	**Audiometer**	Hearing ability
58	**Caliper**	Measuring dimensions accurately
59	**Micrometer Screw Gauge**	Very small dimensions
60	**Vernier Calipers**	Precise length/diameter/depth

MUST REMEMBER

- **Barometer → Atmospheric pressure**
- **Hygrometer → Humidity**
- **Anemometer → Wind speed**
- **Rain Gauge → Rainfall**
- **Seismograph → Earthquakes**

- **Ammeter → Current**
- **Voltmeter → Voltage**
- **Lactometer → Milk**
- **Hydrometer → Density of liquids**
- **Sphygmomanometer → Blood pressure**
- **Spirometer → Lung capacity**
- **ECG → Heart**
- **EEG → Brain**
- **Geiger Counter → Radioactivity**
- **Pyrometer → High temperature**
- **Fathometer → Water depth**
- **Odometer → Distance**
- **Speedometer → Speed**
- **Tachometer → RPM**
- **Radar → Radio waves**
- **Sonar → Sound waves**

DISEASES & CAUSATIVE ORGANISMS

No.	Disease	Causative Organism
1	**Malaria**	*Plasmodium*
2	**Dengue**	Dengue virus
3	**Chikungunya**	Chikungunya virus
4	**Yellow Fever**	Yellow fever virus
5	**Typhoid**	*Salmonella Typhi*
6	**Cholera**	*Vibrio cholerae*
7	**Tuberculosis (TB)**	*Mycobacterium tuberculosis*
8	**Pneumonia**	Bacteria / viruses
9	**Leprosy**	*Mycobacterium leprae*
10	**Diphtheria**	*Corynebacterium diphtheriae*
11	**Whooping Cough**	*Bordetella pertussis*
12	**Tetanus**	*Clostridium tetani*
13	**Plague**	*Yersinia pestis*
14	**Anthrax**	*Bacillus anthracis*
15	**Syphilis**	*Treponema pallidum*
16	**Gonorrhoea**	*Neisseria gonorrhoeae*
17	**COVID-19**	SARS-CoV-2
18	**Influenza**	Influenza virus
19	**Measles**	Measles virus
20	**Mumps**	Mumps virus
21	**Chickenpox**	Varicella-zoster virus
22	**Polio**	Poliovirus
23	**Rabies**	Rabies virus
24	**Hepatitis B**	Hepatitis B virus
25	**AIDS**	HIV

26	**Hepatitis C**	Hepatitis C virus
27	**Japanese Encephalitis**	Japanese encephalitis virus
28	**Rabies**	Rabies virus
29	**Ringworm**	Fungi
30	**Athlete's Foot**	Fungi
31	**Candidiasis**	*Candida* fungus
32	**Kala-azar**	*Leishmania*
33	**Sleeping Sickness**	*Trypanosoma*
34	**Amoebiasis**	*Entamoeba histolytica*
35	**Giardiasis**	*Giardia*
36	**Ascariasis**	*Ascaris*
37	**Filariasis**	*Wuchereria bancrofti* and related worms
38	**Hookworm infection**	Hookworms
39	**Scabies**	*Sarcoptes scabiei* mite
40	**Trachoma**	*Chlamydia trachomatis*

IMPORTANT DISEASE → VECTOR

Disease	Main Vector
Malaria	Female *Anopheles* mosquito
Dengue	*Aedes* mosquito
Chikungunya	*Aedes* mosquito
Yellow Fever	*Aedes* mosquito
Filariasis	Mosquitoes, commonly *Culex*
Kala-azar	Sandfly
Sleeping Sickness	Tsetse fly
Plague	Rat flea

MUST REMEMBER

- **Malaria → Plasmodium → Female Anopheles**
- **Dengue → Virus → Aedes**
- **Typhoid → Salmonella Typhi**
- **Cholera → Vibrio cholerae**
- **TB → Mycobacterium tuberculosis**
- **AIDS → HIV**
- **Rabies → Rabies virus**
- **Polio → Poliovirus**
- **Tetanus → Clostridium tetani**
- **Leprosy → Mycobacterium leprae**
- **Kala-azar → Leishmania → Sandfly**
- **Sleeping sickness → Trypanosoma → Tsetse fly**
- **Ringworm → Fungus**

💻 TOP 100 TECH GIANTS & POPULAR APPS

1–20: Biggest Tech Companies

1. Microsoft

- Founded: **1975**
- Founders: **Bill Gates, Paul Allen**
- Current CEO: **Satya Nadella**
- HQ: Redmond, USA
- Work: Windows, Office, Azure, AI, Xbox, LinkedIn

2. Apple

- Founded: **1976**
- Founders: **Steve Jobs, Steve Wozniak, Ronald Wayne**
- CEO: **Tim Cook**
- Work: iPhone, Mac, iPad, Apple Watch, software & services

3. Alphabet / Google

- Google founded: **1998**
- Founders: **Larry Page, Sergey Brin**
- CEO: **Sundar Pichai**
- Work: Search, YouTube, Android, Cloud, AI, advertising

4. Amazon

- Founded: **1994**
- Founder: **Jeff Bezos**
- CEO: **Andy Jassy**
- Work: E-commerce, AWS Cloud, streaming, AI

5. Meta Platforms

- Founded: **2004**
- Founder: **Mark Zuckerberg**
- CEO: **Mark Zuckerberg**
- Work: Facebook, Instagram, WhatsApp, Messenger, AI

6. NVIDIA

- Founded: **1993**
- Founders: **Jensen Huang, Chris Malachowsky, Curtis Priem**
- CEO: **Jensen Huang**
- Work: GPUs, AI chips, computing

7. IBM

- Founded: **1911**
- CEO: **Arvind Krishna**
- Work: Cloud, AI, enterprise software, computing

8. Intel

- Founded: **1968**
- Founders: **Robert Noyce, Gordon Moore**
- CEO: **Lip-Bu Tan**
- Work: Computer processors and semiconductors

9. AMD

- Founded: **1969**
- Founders: **Jerry Sanders and others**
- CEO: **Lisa Su**
- Work: CPUs, GPUs, AI chips

10. Oracle

- Founded: **1977**
- Founders: **Larry Ellison, Bob Miner, Ed Oates**
- CEO: **Clay Magouyrk & Mike Sicilia**
- Work: Databases, Cloud, enterprise software

11. Samsung

- Founded: **1938**
- Founder: **Lee Byung-chul**
- Executive Chairman: **Jay Y. Lee**
- Work: Smartphones, TVs, semiconductors, electronics

12. Sony

- Founded: **1946**
- Founders: **Masaru Ibuka, Akio Morita**
- CEO: **Hiroki Totoki**

- Work: Electronics, PlayStation, entertainment

13. Huawei

- Founded: **1987**
- Founder: **Ren Zhengfei**
- Rotating Chairman system
- Work: Telecom, smartphones, networking, AI/cloud

14. Dell Technologies

- Founded: **1984**
- Founder: **Michael Dell**
- CEO: **Michael Dell**
- Work: Computers, servers, IT infrastructure

15. HP

- Founded: **1939**
- Founders: **Bill Hewlett, David Packard**
- CEO: **Enrique Lores**
- Work: PCs, printers, technology

16. Cisco

- Founded: **1984**
- Founders: **Leonard Bosack, Sandy Lerner**
- CEO: **Chuck Robbins**
- Work: Networking, cybersecurity, cloud

17. Adobe

- Founded: **1982**
- Founders: **John Warnock, Charles Geschke**
- CEO: **Shantanu Narayen**
- Work: Photoshop, Acrobat, Creative Cloud, AI

18. Salesforce

- Founded: **1999**
- Founder: **Marc Benioff & others**
- CEO: **Marc Benioff**
- Work: CRM, cloud software, AI

19. PayPal

- Founded: **1998**
- Founders: **Peter Thiel, Max Levchin, Luke Nosek & others**
- CEO: **Enrique Lores**
- Work: Online payments

20. Shopify

- Founded: **2006**
- Founders: **Tobias Lütke, Daniel Weinand, Scott Lake**
- CEO: **Tobias Lütke**
- Work: E-commerce platforms

21–40: Internet, AI & Emerging Tech

21. OpenAI

- Founded: **2015**
- Founders: **Sam Altman, Elon Musk, Greg Brockman, Ilya Sutskever & others**
- CEO: **Sam Altman**
- Work: AI research, ChatGPT, AI models

22. Anthropic

- Founded: **2021**
- Founders: **Dario Amodei, Daniela Amodei & others**
- CEO: **Dario Amodei**
- Work: AI; Claude

23. xAI

- Founded: **2023**
- Founder: **Elon Musk**
- CEO: **Elon Musk**
- Work: AI; Grok

24. DeepMind

- Founded: **2010**
- Founders: **Demis Hassabis, Shane Legg, Mustafa Suleyman**
- Current leadership: **Koray Kavukcuoglu**
- Owner: **Google**
- Work: AI research, Gemini

25. ByteDance

- Founded: **2012**
- Founder: **Zhang Yiming**
- CEO: **Shou Zi Chew**
- Work: TikTok, Douyin and digital platforms

26. Tencent

- Founded: **1998**
- Founder: **Pony Ma**
- CEO: **Pony Ma**
- Work: WeChat, gaming, cloud, fintech

27. Alibaba

- Founded: **1999**
- Founder: **Jack Ma**
- CEO: **Eddie Wu**
- Work: E-commerce, cloud computing, AI

28. Baidu

- Founded: **2000**
- Founders: **Robin Li, Eric Xu**
- CEO: **Robin Li**
- Work: Search engine, AI, cloud

29. Xiaomi

- Founded: **2010**
- Founder: **Lei Jun**
- CEO: **Lei Jun**
- Work: Smartphones, electronics, IoT

30. Spotify

- Founded: **2006**
- Founders: **Daniel Ek, Martin Lorentzon**
- CEO: **Daniel Ek**
- Work: Music and podcast streaming

31. Netflix

- Founded: **1997**
- Founders: **Reed Hastings, Marc Randolph**
- CEO: **Ted Sarandos & Greg Peters**
- Work: Video streaming

32. Uber

- Founded: **2009**
- Founders: **Garrett Camp, Travis Kalanick**
- CEO: **Dara Khosrowshahi**
- Work: Ride-hailing, delivery

33. Airbnb

- Founded: **2008**
- Founders: **Brian Chesky, Joe Gebbia, Nathan Blecharczyk**
- CEO: **Brian Chesky**
- Work: Accommodation/travel platform

34. Zoom

- Founded: **2011**
- Founder: **Eric Yuan**
- CEO: **Eric Yuan**
- Work: Video conferencing

35. Slack

- Founded: **2009**
- Founder: **Stewart Butterfield**
- Owner: **Salesforce**
- Work: Workplace communication

36. Dropbox

- Founded: **2007**
- Founders: **Drew Houston, Arash Ferdowsi**
- CEO: **Drew Houston**
- Work: Cloud storage

37. Reddit

- Founded: **2005**
- Founders: **Steve Huffman, Alexis Ohanian, Aaron Swartz**
- CEO: **Steve Huffman**
- Work: Online communities/discussions

38. Pinterest

- Founded: **2010**
- Founders: **Ben Silbermann, Paul Sciarra, Evan Sharp**

- CEO: **Bill Ready**
- Work: Image discovery/social platform

39. Discord

- Founded: **2015**
- Founders: **Jason Citron, Stan Vishnevskiy**
- CEO: **Humam Sakhnini**
- Work: Community and voice/text communication

40. Perplexity AI

- Founded: **2022**
- Founders: **Aravind Srinivas & others**
- CEO: **Aravind Srinivas**
- Work: AI-powered search/answer engine

41–60: Most Important Apps & Platforms

41. WhatsApp

- Launched: **2009**
- Founders: **Jan Koum, Brian Acton**
- Current Global CEO: **Kunal Shah**
- Owner: **Meta**
- Work: Messaging, voice/video calls, payments/business communication.

42. Instagram

- Launched: **2010**
- Founders: **Kevin Systrom, Mike Krieger**
- Head: **Adam Mosseri**
- Owner: **Meta**
- Work: Photos, videos, Reels, social networking

43. Facebook

- Launched: **2004**
- Founder: **Mark Zuckerberg & co-founders**
- Head/CEO: **Mark Zuckerberg**
- Owner: **Meta**
- Work: Social networking

44. YouTube

- Launched: **2005**
- Founders: **Steve Chen, Chad Hurley, Jawed Karim**
- CEO: **Neal Mohan**
- Owner: **Google**
- Work: Video sharing/streaming

45. TikTok

- Launched: **2016**
- Created by: **ByteDance**
- CEO: **Shou Zi Chew**
- Work: Short-form videos

46. Telegram

- Launched: **2013**
- Founders: **Pavel Durov, Nikolai Durov**
- CEO/Founder: **Pavel Durov**
- Work: Messaging, channels, communities

47. Snapchat

- Launched: **2011**
- Founders: **Evan Spiegel, Bobby Murphy, Reggie Brown**
- CEO: **Evan Spiegel**
- Work: Messaging, Stories, multimedia

48. X / Twitter

- Launched: **2006**
- Founders: **Jack Dorsey, Biz Stone, Evan Williams, Noah Glass**
- Owner: **xAI**
- Work: Microblogging/social media

49. LinkedIn

- Founded: **2003**
- Founder group led by **Reid Hoffman**
- CEO: **Ryan Roslansky**
- Owner: **Microsoft**
- Work: Professional networking/jobs

50. Messenger

- Launched: **2011**
- Owner: **Meta**

- Work: Messaging and calls

51. Google Maps

- Launched: **2005**
- Owner: **Google**
- Work: Maps, navigation, location services

52. Google Chrome

- Launched: **2008**
- Owner: **Google**
- Work: Web browser

53. Gmail

- Launched: **2004**
- Owner: **Google**
- Work: Email service

54. Google Drive

- Launched: **2012**
- Owner: **Google**
- Work: Cloud storage and file sharing

55. Google Meet

- Launched: **2017**
- Owner: **Google**
- Work: Video meetings

56. Google Gemini

- Launched: **2023**
- Owner: **Google**
- Work: Generative AI assistant

57. ChatGPT

- Launched: **2022**
- Creator: **OpenAI**
- CEO of OpenAI: **Sam Altman**
- Work: AI chatbot, writing, reasoning, coding, research

58. Microsoft Teams

- Launched: **2017**
- Owner: **Microsoft**
- Work: Communication, meetings, collaboration

59. Microsoft Copilot

- Launched: **2023**
- Owner: **Microsoft**
- Work: AI assistant

60. GitHub

- Founded: **2008**
- Founders: **Tom Preston-Werner, Chris Wanstrath, P. J. Hyett**
- CEO: **Thomas Dohmke**
- Owner: **Microsoft**
- Work: Software development and code hosting

61–80: Popular Digital Services

61. CapCut — ByteDance; video editing.

62. Canva — Founded **2013**; Melanie Perkins, Cliff Obrecht, Cameron Adams; CEO **Melanie Perkins**; graphic design.

63. Figma — Founded **2012**; Dylan Field, Evan Wallace; CEO **Dylan Field**; collaborative design.

64. Notion — Founded **2013**; Ivan Zhao, Simon Last; CEO **Ivan Zhao**; notes/productivity/workspace.

65. Trello — Founded **2011**; Fog Creek; now owned by **Atlassian**; project management.

66. Skype — Founded **2003**; now owned by **Microsoft**; internet calling/messaging. **Important:** Microsoft retired Skype in May 2025; Teams replaced it for many users.

67. Paytm — Founded **2010**; Vijay Shekhar Sharma; CEO **Vijay Shekhar Sharma**; digital payments/financial services.

68. PhonePe — Founded **2015**; Sameer Nigam, Rahul Chari, Burzin Engineer; CEO **Sameer Nigam**; digital payments.

69. Google Pay — Google; digital payments.

70. CRED — Founded **2018**; Kunal Shah; CEO **Kunal Shah**; credit-card payments/rewards.

71. Swiggy — Founded **2014**; Sriharsha Majety, Nandan Reddy, Rahul Jaimini; CEO **Sriharsha Majety**; food delivery/quick commerce.

72. Zomato / Eternal — Founded **2008**; Deepinder Goyal, Pankaj Chaddah; CEO **Rakesh Ranjan**; food delivery and restaurant services.

73. Flipkart — Founded **2007**; Sachin Bansal, Binny Bansal; CEO **Kalyan Krishnamurthy**; e-commerce.

74. Ola — Founded **2010**; Bhavish Aggarwal, Ankit Bhati; CEO **Hemant Bakshi**; mobility/ride-hailing.

75. Meesho — Founded **2015**; Vidit Aatrey, Sanjeev Barnwal; CEO **Vidit Aatrey**; e-commerce/social commerce.

76. Razorpay — Founded **2014**; Harshil Mathur, Shashank Kumar; CEO **Harshil Mathur**; online payments/business finance.

77. Truecaller — Founded **2009**; Alan Mamedi, Nami Zarringhalam; CEO **Alan Mamedi**; caller identification.

78. Duolingo — Founded **2011**; Luis von Ahn, Severin Hacker; CEO **Luis von Ahn**; language learning.

79. Grammarly — Founded **2009**; Max Lytvyn, Alex Shevchenko, Dmytro Lider; CEO **Shishir Mehrotra**; writing/AI assistant.

80. Wikipedia — Launched **2001**; founded by **Jimmy Wales & Larry Sanger**; operated by **Wikimedia Foundation**; online encyclopedia.

81–100: Other Very Important Tech Names

81. Tesla

- Founded: **2003**
- Important founder: **Elon Musk** (joined early; not sole founder)
- CEO: **Elon Musk**
- Work: Electric vehicles, batteries, energy

82. SpaceX

- Founded: **2002**
- Founder: **Elon Musk**
- CEO: **Elon Musk**

- Work: Rockets, spacecraft, satellites

83. PayPal

- Online payments; one of the world's major digital-payment companies.

84. Stripe

- Founded: **2010**
- Founders: **Patrick Collison, John Collison**
- CEO: **Patrick Collison**
- Work: Online payment infrastructure

85. Shopify

- E-commerce platform for businesses.

86. ASML

- Founded: **1984**
- CEO: **Christophe Fouquet**
- Work: Advanced semiconductor manufacturing machines; crucial to chip industry.

87. TSMC

- Founded: **1987**
- Founder: **Morris Chang**
- CEO: **C.C. Wei**
- Work: Semiconductor manufacturing.

88. Qualcomm

- Founded: **1985**
- Founders: **Irwin Jacobs & others**
- CEO: **Cristiano Amon**
- Work: Mobile chips and wireless technology.

89. ARM

- Founded: **1990**
- CEO: **Rene Haas**
- Work: CPU architecture used in smartphones and many computers.

90. Broadcom

- Founded: **1961**

- CEO: **Hock E. Tan**
- Work: Semiconductors and infrastructure software.

91. Salesforce

- CRM, cloud software and AI.

92. SAP

- Founded: **1972**
- Founders: **Dietmar Hopp, Hasso Plattner, Klaus Tschira, Hans-Werner Hector, Claus Wellenreuther**
- CEO: **Christian Klein**
- Work: Enterprise software/business management.

93. ServiceNow

- Founded: **2004**
- Founder: **Fred Luddy**
- CEO: **Bill McDermott**
- Work: Enterprise cloud/software and AI.

94. Airbnb

- Travel and accommodation platform.

95. Booking.com

- Founded: **1996**
- Owner: **Booking Holdings**
- Work: Hotel/travel booking.

96. Pinterest

- Visual discovery and idea-sharing platform.

97. Roblox

- Founded: **2004**
- Founders: **David Baszucki, Erik Cassel**
- CEO: **David Baszucki**
- Work: Online gaming and user-created virtual worlds.

98. Epic Games

- Founded: **1991**

- Founder: **Tim Sweeney**
- CEO: **Tim Sweeney**
- Work: Fortnite, Unreal Engine, gaming.

99. Unity

- Founded: **2004**
- Founders: **David Helgason, Nicholas Francis, Joachim Ante**
- CEO: **Matthew Bromberg**
- Work: Game engine and 3D development.

100. Mojang Studios

- Founded: **2009**
- Founder: **Markus Persson**
- Owner: **Microsoft**
- Work: Minecraft and game development.

EXAM MEIN SABSE IMPORTANT

Founder → Company

- Bill Gates → Microsoft
- Steve Jobs → Apple
- Larry Page & Sergey Brin → Google
- Jeff Bezos → Amazon
- Mark Zuckerberg → Facebook/Meta
- Jensen Huang → NVIDIA
- Elon Musk → SpaceX
- Jack Ma → Alibaba
- Lei Jun → Xiaomi
- Zhang Yiming → ByteDance
- Sam Altman → OpenAI
- Pavel Durov → Telegram
- Jan Koum → WhatsApp
- Kevin Systrom → Instagram
- Reid Hoffman → LinkedIn
- Daniel Ek → Spotify
- Reed Hastings → Netflix
- Brian Chesky → Airbnb
- Eric Yuan → Zoom
- Kunal Shah → CRED
- Vijay Shekhar Sharma → Paytm

IN INDIAN-ORIGIN CEOs — VERY IMPORTANT

- **Sundar Pichai → Google/Alphabet**
- **Satya Nadella → Microsoft**
- **Shantanu Narayen → Adobe**
- **Arvind Krishna → IBM**
- **Neal Mohan → YouTube**
- **Nikesh Arora → Palo Alto Networks**
- **Raghu Raghuram → VMware (former CEO)**
- **Leena Nair → Chanel**
- **Indra Nooyi → PepsiCo (former CEO)**
- **Kunal Shah → WhatsApp Global CEO (2026)**

INDIAN COMPANIES, APPS & DIGITAL PLATFORMS — TOP 50

1. Reliance Industries

- **Founded:** 1966
- **Founder:** Dhirubhai Ambani
- **Chairman/MD:** Mukesh Ambani
- **Work:** Energy, telecom, retail, digital services
- **Important:** Jio is part of Reliance

2. Tata Group

- **Founded:** 1868
- **Founder:** Jamsetji Tata
- **Chairman:** N. Chandrasekaran
- **Work:** IT, automobiles, steel, aviation, consumer products
- **Important:** One of India's oldest major business groups

3. Infosys

- **Founded:** 1981
- **Founders:** N. R. Narayana Murthy & others
- **CEO:** Salil Parekh
- **Work:** IT services, consulting, digital technology

4. TCS

- **Founded:** 1968
- **Parent:** Tata Group
- **CEO:** K. Krithivasan
- **Work:** IT services, consulting, software
- **Important:** India's largest IT services company

5. Wipro

- **Founded:** 1945
- **Founder:** M. H. Hasham Premji
- **CEO:** Srini Pallia
- **Work:** IT services and consulting

6. HCLTech

- **Founded:** 1976
- **Founder:** Shiv Nadar
- **CEO:** C. Vijayakumar
- **Work:** IT, cloud, cybersecurity, engineering

7. Tech Mahindra

- **Founded:** 1986
- **Parent:** Mahindra Group
- **CEO:** Mohit Joshi
- **Work:** IT and telecommunications technology

8. Bharti Airtel

- **Founded:** 1995
- **Founder:** Sunil Bharti Mittal
- **Chairman:** Sunil Mittal
- **MD & CEO:** Gopal Vittal
- **Work:** Telecom, mobile, broadband, digital services

9. Jio

- **Launched:** 2016
- **Parent:** Reliance Industries
- **Chairman:** Akash Ambani
- **Work:** Mobile network, 5G, broadband, digital services
- **Important:** Major Indian telecom company

10. Adani Group

- **Founded:** 1988
- **Founder:** Gautam Adani
- **Chairman:** Gautam Adani
- **Work:** Infrastructure, ports, energy, airports, logistics

---

INDIAN APPS & STARTUPS

11. Flipkart

- **Founded:** 2007
- **Founders:** Sachin Bansal, Binny Bansal
- **CEO:** Kalyan Krishnamurthy
- **Work:** E-commerce
- **Important:** One of India's biggest online shopping platforms

12. Paytm

- **Founded:** 2010
- **Founder:** Vijay Shekhar Sharma
- **CEO:** Vijay Shekhar Sharma
- **Work:** Digital payments and financial services

13. PhonePe

- **Founded:** 2015
- **Founders:** Sameer Nigam, Rahul Chari, Burzin Engineer
- **CEO:** Sameer Nigam
- **Work:** UPI, payments, financial services
- **Important:** One of India's largest UPI platforms

14. Zomato / Eternal

- **Founded:** 2008
- **Founder:** Deepinder Goyal
- **CEO:** Rakesh Ranjan
- **Work:** Food delivery and quick commerce
- **Important:** Blinkit is part of Eternal

15. Swiggy

- **Founded:** 2014
- **Founders:** Sriharsha Majety, Nandan Reddy, Rahul Jaimini
- **CEO:** Sriharsha Majety
- **Work:** Food delivery and quick commerce

16. Ola

- **Founded:** 2010
- **Founders:** Bhavish Aggarwal, Ankit Bhati
- **CEO:** Hemant Bakshi

- **Work:** Ride-hailing and mobility

17. OYO

- **Founded:** 2012
- **Founder:** Ritesh Agarwal
- **CEO:** Ritesh Agarwal
- **Work:** Hotels and hospitality

18. Zerodha

- **Founded:** 2010
- **Founders:** Nithin Kamath, Nikhil Kamath
- **CEO:** Nithin Kamath
- **Work:** Stock trading and investment
- **Important:** India's major discount stock broker

19. Groww

- **Founded:** 2016
- **Founders:** Lalit Keshre, Harsh Jain, Neeraj Singh, Ishan Bansal
- **CEO:** Lalit Keshre
- **Work:** Stocks, mutual funds and investments

20. Razorpay

- **Founded:** 2014
- **Founders:** Harshil Mathur, Shashank Kumar
- **CEO:** Harshil Mathur
- **Work:** Online payments and business banking

21. CRED

- **Founded:** 2018
- **Founder:** Kunal Shah
- **Current:** Miten Sampat — interim CEO
- **Work:** Credit-card payments, rewards and financial services
- **Important 2026:** Kunal Shah moved to lead WhatsApp globally.

22. Nykaa

- **Founded:** 2012
- **Founder:** Falguni Nayar
- **CEO:** Falguni Nayar
- **Work:** Beauty, cosmetics and fashion e-commerce

23. Meesho

- **Founded:** 2015
- **Founders:** Vidit Aatrey, Sanjeev Barnwal
- **CEO:** Vidit Aatrey
- **Work:** E-commerce/social commerce

24. Lenskart

- **Founded:** 2010
- **Founder:** Peyush Bansal
- **CEO:** Peyush Bansal
- **Work:** Eyewear and optical products

25. Zepto

- **Founded:** 2021
- **Founders:** Aadit Palicha, Kaivalya Vohra
- **CEO:** Aadit Palicha
- **Work:** Quick-commerce/grocery delivery

26. Dream11

- **Founded:** 2008
- **Founders:** Harsh Jain, Bhavit Sheth
- **CEO:** Harsh Jain
- **Work:** Fantasy sports

27. Unacademy

- **Founded:** 2015
- **Founders:** Gaurav Munjal, Roman Saini, Himesh Singh
- **CEO:** Gaurav Munjal
- **Work:** Online education

28. BYJU'S

- **Founded:** 2011
- **Founder:** Byju Raveendran
- **Work:** EdTech/online education
- **Important:** Formerly one of India's biggest EdTech startups

29. Vedantu

- **Founded:** 2011

- **Founders:** Vamsi Krishna, Pulkit Jain, Anand Prakash, Saurabh Saxena
- **CEO:** Vamsi Krishna
- **Work:** Online learning

30. ShareChat

- **Founded:** 2015
- **Founders:** Ankush Sachdeva, Bhanu Pratap Singh, Farid Ahsan
- **CEO:** Ankush Sachdeva
- **Work:** Indian-language social media

💻 INDIAN TECH / SOFTWARE / DIGITAL COMPANIES

31. Zoho

- **Founded:** 1996
- **Founder:** Sridhar Vembu
- **CEO:** Shailesh Kumar Davey
- **Work:** Business software, CRM, cloud applications

32. Freshworks

- **Founded:** 2010
- **Founder:** Girish Mathrubootham
- **CEO:** Dennis Woodside
- **Work:** Customer support/business software

33. Postman

- **Founded:** 2014
- **Founders:** Abhinav Asthana, Ankit Sobti, Abhijit Kane
- **CEO:** Abhinav Asthana
- **Work:** API development/testing

34. BrowserStack

- **Founded:** 2011
- **Founders:** Ritesh Arora, Nakul Aggarwal
- **CEO:** Ritesh Arora
- **Work:** Website/app testing

35. InMobi

- **Founded:** 2007
- **Founder:** Naveen Tewari
- **CEO:** Naveen Tewari
- **Work:** Mobile advertising technology

36. Dream Sports

- **Founded:** 2008
- **Founders:** Harsh Jain, Bhavit Sheth
- **Work:** Sports technology; parent of Dream11

37. Policybazaar

- **Founded:** 2008
- **Founders:** Yashish Dahiya, Alok Bansal, Avaneesh Nirjar
- **CEO:** Sarbvir Singh
- **Work:** Insurance comparison and financial services

38. Udaan

- **Founded:** 2016
- **Founders:** Sujeet Kumar, Amod Malviya, Vaibhav Gupta
- **Work:** B2B e-commerce

39. BharatPe

- **Founded:** 2018
- **Founders:** Ashneer Grover, Bhavik Koladiya, Shashvat Nakrani
- **Work:** Merchant payments and fintech

40. ShareChat / Moj

- **Company:** Mohalla Tech
- **Work:** Regional-language social media and short videos
- **Important: Moj** is its short-video platform.

🚀 NEW & IMPORTANT INDIAN TECH

41. Krutrim

- **Founder:** Bhavish Aggarwal

- **Work:** Indian AI models, AI ecosystem
- **Important:** Major Indian AI initiative

42. Sarvam AI

- **Founded:** 2023
- **Founders:** Vivek Raghavan, Pratyush Buddiga
- **Work:** Indian-language AI and foundation models
- **Important:** Important name in India's AI ecosystem.

43. Skyroot Aerospace

- **Founded:** 2017
- **Founders:** Pawan Kumar Chandana, Naga Bharath Daka
- **Work:** Private rockets and space technology

44. Agnikul Cosmos

- **Founded:** 2017
- **Founders:** Srinath Ravichandran, Moin SPM
- **Work:** Space launch vehicles and rocket technology

45. Ather Energy

- **Founded:** 2013
- **Founders:** Tarun Mehta, Swapnil Jain
- **CEO:** Tarun Mehta
- **Work:** Electric scooters and EV technology

46. Ola Electric

- **Founded:** 2017
- **Founder:** Bhavish Aggarwal
- **CEO:** Bhavish Aggarwal
- **Work:** Electric vehicles

47. boAt

- **Founded:** 2016
- **Founders:** Aman Gupta, Sameer Mehta
- **CEO:** Vivek Gambhir
- **Work:** Earphones, headphones, smartwatches and consumer electronics

48. Licious

- **Founded:** 2015
- **Founders:** Abhay Hanjura, Vivek Gupta
- **Work:** Meat and seafood delivery

49. Apna

- **Founded:** 2019
- **Founders:** Nirmit Parikh
- **CEO:** Nirmit Parikh
- **Work:** Jobs and employment platform

50. Physics Wallah (PW)

- **Founded:** 2020
- **Founders:** Alakh Pandey, Prateek Maheshwari
- **CEO/Founder:** Alakh Pandey
- **Work:** EdTech, competitive-exam preparation

⭐ EXAM KE LIYE SABSE IMPORTANT

Company → Founder

- **Reliance → Dhirubhai Ambani**
- **Tata Group → Jamsetji Tata**
- **Infosys → Narayana Murthy & others**
- **Flipkart → Sachin & Binny Bansal**
- **Paytm → Vijay Shekhar Sharma**
- **PhonePe → Sameer Nigam, Rahul Chari, Burzin Engineer**
- **Zomato → Deepinder Goyal**
- **Swiggy → Sriharsha Majety, Nandan Reddy, Rahul Jaimini**
- **Ola → Bhavish Aggarwal, Ankit Bhati**
- **OYO → Ritesh Agarwal**
- **Zerodha → Nithin & Nikhil Kamath**
- **Razorpay → Harshil Mathur, Shashank Kumar**
- **CRED → Kunal Shah**
- **Nykaa → Falguni Nayar**
- **Lenskart → Peyush Bansal**
- **Zepto → Aadit Palicha, Kaivalya Vohra**
- **Dream11 → Harsh Jain, Bhavit Sheth**
- **Unacademy → Gaurav Munjal & others**
- **Zoho → Sridhar Vembu**
- **Freshworks → Girish Mathrubootham**
- **Postman → Abhinav Asthana & others**
- **boAt → Aman Gupta, Sameer Mehta**

- **Physics Wallah → Alakh Pandey**

INDIAN ART & CULTURE

1. Classical Dance

Classical Dance: A traditional Indian dance form based on **fixed rules, techniques, gestures, expressions and movements**. It is often connected with Indian mythology and cultural traditions.

8 Classical Dances of India

1. **Bharatanatyam** → Tamil Nadu
2. **Kathak** → North India
3. **Kathakali** → Kerala
4. **Kuchipudi** → Andhra Pradesh
5. **Odissi** → Odisha
6. **Manipuri** → Manipur
7. **Mohiniyattam** → Kerala
8. **Sattriya** → Assam

Remember: India has **8 major classical dance forms**.

---

2. Folk Dance

Folk Dance: A traditional dance of a particular **region or community**, usually performed during festivals, celebrations, weddings and social events.

Important Folk Dances

- **Bhangra** → Punjab
- **Giddha** → Punjab
- **Garba** → Gujarat
- **Dandiya Raas** → Gujarat
- **Ghoomar** → Rajasthan
- **Kalbelia** → Rajasthan
- **Bihu Dance** → Assam
- **Lavani** → Maharashtra
- **Nati** → Himachal Pradesh
- **Rouf** → Jammu & Kashmir
- **Dollu Kunitha** → Karnataka
- **Yakshagana** → Karnataka
- **Chhau** → Odisha, Jharkhand, West Bengal
- **Cheraw** → Mizoram

- **Dalkhai** → Odisha
- **Hafiza** → Jammu & Kashmir

Exam Focus

Bhangra → Punjab
Garba → Gujarat
Ghoomar → Rajasthan
Lavani → Maharashtra
Bihu → Assam
Rouf → Jammu & Kashmir
Cheraw → Mizoram

---

3. Indian Classical Music

Classical Music: Music based on established **rules, ragas and rhythmic patterns (talas)**.

Two Major Traditions

Hindustani Music

- Mainly North India
- Important instruments: **Sitar, Tabla, Sarod, Santoor**

Carnatic Music

- Mainly South India
- Important instruments: **Veena, Mridangam, Violin**

Famous Musicians

- **Ravi Shankar** → Sitar
- **Bismillah Khan** → Shehnai
- **Zakir Hussain** → Tabla
- **Hariprasad Chaurasia** → Flute
- **Amjad Ali Khan** → Sarod
- **Shiv Kumar Sharma** → Santoor
- **M. S. Subbulakshmi** → Carnatic Vocal
- **Bhimsen Joshi** → Hindustani Vocal

---

4. Important Indian Paintings

Painting Tradition: A traditional style of visual art associated with a particular region, community or culture.

- **Madhubani** → Bihar
- **Warli** → Maharashtra
- **Pattachitra** → Odisha
- **Kalamkari** → Andhra Pradesh & Telangana
- **Gond** → Madhya Pradesh
- **Phad** → Rajasthan
- **Tanjore Painting** → Tamil Nadu
- **Kangra Painting** → Himachal Pradesh
- **Mysore Painting** → Karnataka
- **Cheriyal Painting** → Telangana

Remember

Madhubani → Bihar
Warli → Maharashtra
Pattachitra → Odisha
Gond → Madhya Pradesh
Tanjore → Tamil Nadu
Kangra → Himachal Pradesh

---

5. Indian Festivals

Festival: A special cultural or religious celebration observed by a community or region.

- **Diwali** → Festival of Lights
- **Holi** → Festival of Colours
- **Baisakhi** → Punjab
- **Bihu** → Assam
- **Pongal** → Tamil Nadu
- **Onam** → Kerala
- **Durga Puja** → West Bengal
- **Ganesh Chaturthi** → Maharashtra
- **Navratri** → Gujarat & other states
- **Rath Yatra** → Odisha
- **Hornbill Festival** → Nagaland
- **Hemis Festival** → Ladakh
- **Losar** → Ladakh/Tibetan Buddhist regions
- **Mysore Dasara** → Karnataka
- **Thrissur Pooram** → Kerala
- **Pushkar Fair** → Rajasthan

---

6. Indian Tribes

Tribe: A community with its own **traditional culture, customs, language and social practices**.

Important tribes:

- **Gond** → Madhya Pradesh, Maharashtra, Chhattisgarh
- **Bhil** → Rajasthan, Gujarat, Madhya Pradesh
- **Santhal** → Jharkhand, West Bengal, Odisha
- **Bodo** → Assam
- **Khasi** → Meghalaya
- **Garo** → Meghalaya
- **Toda** → Tamil Nadu
- **Naga Tribes** → Nagaland
- **Mizo** → Mizoram
- **Jarawa** → Andaman & Nicobar Islands
- **Great Andamanese** → Andaman & Nicobar Islands

🎭 **OTHER IMPORTANT CULTURAL TERMS**

Raga: A traditional melodic framework used in Indian classical music.

Tala: A rhythmic cycle or pattern in Indian classical music.

Nritya: Dance involving **expressions and storytelling**.

Nritta: Pure dance involving **rhythmic movements without storytelling**.

Natya: Dance/drama involving **acting, expression and storytelling**.

Folk Art: Traditional art created and practiced by local communities.

Handicraft: Objects made mainly by hand using traditional skills.

Heritage: Cultural or historical things passed from one generation to another.

UNESCO: United Nations organization that works in areas including **education, science, culture and heritage protection**.

SUPER QUICK REVISION

Classical Dance → 8 forms
Folk Dance → Regional/community tradition
Hindustani → North India
Carnatic → South India
Madhubani → Bihar
Warli → Maharashtra
Pattachitra → Odisha
Bhangra → Punjab
Garba → Gujarat
Rouf → J&K
Bihu → Assam
Onam → Kerala
Pongal → Tamil Nadu
Hornbill → Nagaland

FAMOUS MONUMENTS & UNESCO WORLD HERITAGE SITES

1. Monument

Monument: A building, structure or place built to remember an important person, event, or part of history.

IN Famous Monuments of India

1. **Taj Mahal** → Agra, Uttar Pradesh
    - Built by **Shah Jahan**
    - In memory of **Mumtaz Mahal**
    - Famous for **white marble**
2. **Red Fort** → Delhi
    - Built by **Shah Jahan**
    - Important Mughal monument
3. **Qutub Minar** → Delhi
    - Started by **Qutb-ud-din Aibak**
    - Completed mainly by **Iltutmish**
4. **India Gate** → New Delhi
    - War memorial
    - Designed by **Edwin Lutyens**
5. **Gateway of India** → Mumbai, Maharashtra
    - Built during British period
    - Associated with the visit of **King George V and Queen Mary**
6. **Charminar** → Hyderabad, Telangana
    - Built by **Muhammad Quli Qutb Shah**
7. **Sanchi Stupa** → Madhya Pradesh
    - Associated with **Emperor Ashoka**

    - Important Buddhist monument
8. **Ajanta Caves** → Maharashtra
    - Famous for **Buddhist paintings and sculptures**
9. **Ellora Caves** → Maharashtra
    - Represent **Buddhism, Hinduism and Jainism**
10. **Konark Sun Temple** → Odisha

- Dedicated to **Surya (Sun God)**
- Famous for its **chariot design**

11. **Hawa Mahal** → Jaipur, Rajasthan

- Built by **Sawai Pratap Singh**

12. **Fatehpur Sikri** → Uttar Pradesh

- Built mainly by **Akbar**

13. **Victoria Memorial** → Kolkata, West Bengal

- Built in memory of **Queen Victoria**

14. **Mysore Palace** → Karnataka

- Famous royal palace

15. **Gol Gumbaz** → Vijayapura, Karnataka

- Famous for its **huge dome**

🌎 2. UNESCO World Heritage Site

UNESCO World Heritage Site: A place recognized by **UNESCO** as having outstanding cultural or natural importance to humanity.

IN Important Indian UNESCO Sites

1. **Taj Mahal** → Uttar Pradesh
2. **Agra Fort** → Uttar Pradesh
3. **Qutub Minar** → Delhi
4. **Red Fort Complex** → Delhi
5. **Ajanta Caves** → Maharashtra
6. **Ellora Caves** → Maharashtra

7. **Elephanta Caves** → Maharashtra
8. **Sanchi Buddhist Monuments** → Madhya Pradesh
9. **Khajuraho Group of Monuments** → Madhya Pradesh
10. **Konark Sun Temple** → Odisha
11. **Fatehpur Sikri** → Uttar Pradesh
12. **Mahabodhi Temple Complex** → Bihar
13. **Great Living Chola Temples** → Tamil Nadu
14. **Group of Monuments at Hampi** → Karnataka
15. **Group of Monuments at Mahabalipuram** → Tamil Nadu
16. **Kaziranga National Park** → Assam
17. **Manas Wildlife Sanctuary** → Assam
18. **Sundarbans National Park** → West Bengal
19. **Keoladeo National Park** → Rajasthan
20. **Nanda Devi & Valley of Flowers** → Uttarakhand
21. **Western Ghats** → Multiple states
22. **Great Himalayan National Park** → Himachal Pradesh
23. **Khangchendzonga National Park** → Sikkim
24. **Dholavira** → Gujarat
25. **Rani-ki-Vav** → Gujarat
26. **Ramappa Temple** → Telangana
27. **Dholavira: A Harappan City** → Gujarat

🗾 3. Important UNESCO Categories

Cultural Site: Mainly important because of human history, architecture, art or culture.
Example: Taj Mahal.

Natural Site: Important because of exceptional natural features, wildlife or ecosystems.
Example: Kaziranga National Park.

Mixed Site: Has both cultural and natural importance.
Example: Khangchendzonga National Park.

⭐ MUST REMEMBER

- **Taj Mahal → Agra → Shah Jahan**
- **Red Fort → Delhi → Shah Jahan**
- **Qutub Minar → Delhi → Qutb-ud-din Aibak**
- **Charminar → Hyderabad → Muhammad Quli Qutb Shah**
- **Sanchi → Buddhism → Ashoka**
- **Konark → Sun Temple → Odisha**
- **Ajanta → Buddhist paintings**

- **Ellora → Hindu + Buddhist + Jain**
- **Hampi → Karnataka**
- **Khajuraho → Madhya Pradesh**
- **Dholavira → Gujarat → Harappan Civilization**
- **Rani-ki-Vav → Gujarat**
- **Ramappa Temple → Telangana**
- **Kaziranga → Assam → One-horned rhinoceros**
- **Sundarbans → West Bengal → Royal Bengal Tiger**
- **Valley of Flowers → Uttarakhand**

🔑 Easy Difference

Monument → Important historical structure/place.
UNESCO Site → A place officially recognized for outstanding cultural or natural value.

IMPORTANT HISTORICAL EVENTS & DATES

IN Ancient & Medieval India

1. **c. 2500 BCE** → Indus Valley Civilization flourished
2. **c. 1500 BCE** → Beginning of Vedic Period
3. **563 BCE** → Birth of **Gautama Buddha** *(traditional date)*
4. **599 BCE** → Birth of **Mahavira** *(traditional date)*
5. **322 BCE** → **Mauryan Empire** founded by Chandragupta Maurya
6. **261 BCE** → **Kalinga War** fought by Ashoka
7. **320 CE** → **Gupta Empire** began under Chandragupta I
8. **1206** → Delhi Sultanate began
9. **1526** → **First Battle of Panipat**; Mughal Empire established by Babur
10. **1556** → **Second Battle of Panipat**
11. **1565** → **Battle of Talikota**
12. **1600** → English East India Company established
13. **1658** → Aurangzeb became Mughal emperor
14. **1707** → Death of Aurangzeb

IN British Rule & Freedom Struggle

15. **1757** → **Battle of Plassey**
16. **1764** → **Battle of Buxar**
17. **1773** → Regulating Act
18. **1857** → **Revolt of 1857**
19. **1885** → **Indian National Congress founded**
20. **1905** → **Partition of Bengal**
21. **1906** → Muslim League founded at **Dhaka**

22. **1907** → Surat Split of Congress
23. **1911** → Capital shifted from **Calcutta to Delhi**
24. **1915** → Mahatma Gandhi returned to India from South Africa
25. **1919** → **Jallianwala Bagh Massacre**
26. **1920** → **Non-Cooperation Movement**
27. **1922** → Chauri Chaura incident; Non-Cooperation Movement withdrawn
28. **1927** → Simon Commission appointed
29. **1929** → Lahore Session; demand for **Purna Swaraj**
30. **1930** → **Dandi March / Civil Disobedience Movement**
31. **1931** → Gandhi-Irwin Pact
32. **1932** → Poona Pact
33. **1935** → Government of India Act
34. **1942** → **Quit India Movement**
35. **1946** → Cabinet Mission
36. **1947** → **India became independent**
37. **1950** → **India became a Republic**

★ IMPORTANT WORLD HISTORICAL DATES

1. **1215** → Magna Carta signed
2. **1492** → Christopher Columbus reached the Americas
3. **1776** → American Declaration of Independence
4. **1789** → French Revolution began
5. **1914** → First World War began
6. **1917** → Russian Revolution
7. **1918** → First World War ended
8. **1939** → Second World War began
9. **1945** → Second World War ended; **United Nations established**
10. **1947** → India & Pakistan became independent
11. **1949** → NATO established
12. **1950** → Korean War began
13. **1961** → Berlin Wall constructed
14. **1969** → First humans landed on the Moon
15. **1989** → Berlin Wall fell
16. **1991** → Soviet Union dissolved
17. **2001** → 9/11 attacks
18. **2008** → Global Financial Crisis

🧠 IMPORTANT TERMS

Revolution: A major and rapid change in a country's political or social system.

Empire: A large territory ruled by an emperor/empress or a powerful central authority.

Colony: A territory controlled and governed by another country.

Treaty: A formal agreement between countries or political groups.

Independence: Freedom of a country from foreign control.

Republic: A country where the head of state is generally elected, directly or indirectly.

Nationalism: Strong identification with and support for one's nation.

Renaissance: European revival of art, literature and learning, beginning roughly in the 14th century.

Industrial Revolution: Major transformation from hand production to machine-based manufacturing, beginning in Britain in the 18th century.

Cold War: Political, military and ideological rivalry mainly between the **USA and USSR** after World War II.

🔥 MOST IMPORTANT DATES TO MEMORISE

1526 → First Battle of Panipat
1757 → Battle of Plassey
1764 → Battle of Buxar
1857 → Revolt of 1857
1885 → INC founded
1905 → Partition of Bengal
1919 → Jallianwala Bagh
1920 → Non-Cooperation
1930 → Dandi March
1942 → Quit India Movement
1947 → Independence
1950 → Republic

🌍 World

1492 → Columbus
1776 → American Independence
1789 → French Revolution
1914 → WWI
1939 → WWII

1945 → UN established
1969 → Moon landing
1989 → Berlin Wall fell
1991 → USSR dissolved

IMPORTANT AWARDS & HONOURS

IN 1. Bharat Ratna

Definition: India ka **highest civilian award**.

- Started → **1954**
- Given for → Exceptional service/performance in any field of human endeavour
- First recipients → **C. Rajagopalachari, S. Radhakrishnan, C. V. Raman**
- Important → **No cash prize**
- Can be awarded to a maximum of **3 people in a year** under the usual rule.

Famous Bharat Ratna Awardees

- Mahatma Gandhi → **Never received Bharat Ratna**
- Dr. B. R. Ambedkar
- Sardar Vallabhbhai Patel
- Jawaharlal Nehru
- Rajendra Prasad
- A. P. J. Abdul Kalam
- Atal Bihari Vajpayee
- Sachin Tendulkar
- Lata Mangeshkar
- Nanaji Deshmukh
- Karpoori Thakur
- P. V. Narasimha Rao
- Chaudhary Charan Singh
- M. S. Swaminathan

🏅 2. Padma Awards

Definition: India's major civilian honours, given for distinguished contributions in different fields.

Three Categories

Padma Vibhushan
→ Exceptional and distinguished service.

Padma Bhushan
→ Distinguished service of a high order.

Padma Shri
→ Distinguished contribution/service.

Started → 1954

Fields

- Art
- Literature & Education
- Medicine
- Science & Engineering
- Social Work
- Public Affairs
- Sports
- Civil Service
- Trade & Industry

---

3. Gallantry Awards

Gallantry Award: Award given for **bravery and courage**, especially during war or other dangerous situations.

Wartime

Param Vir Chakra
→ India's **highest military gallantry award**

Mahavir Chakra
→ Second-highest wartime gallantry award

Vir Chakra
→ Third-highest wartime gallantry award

Peacetime

Ashoka Chakra
→ Highest peacetime gallantry award

Kirti Chakra
→ Second-highest

Shaurya Chakra
→ Third-highest

🌟 Remember

Param Vir Chakra → Wartime → Highest

Ashoka Chakra → Peacetime → Highest

📚 4. Jnanpith Award

Definition: India's most prestigious literary award.

- Started → **1961**
- Field → Literature
- First recipient → **G. Sankara Kurup**
- Important → Given for outstanding contribution to Indian literature.

✍️ 5. Sahitya Akademi Award

Definition: Award for outstanding literary works in recognized Indian languages.

- Started → **1954**
- Field → Literature
- Given by → **Sahitya Akademi**

🎭 6. Sangeet Natak Akademi Award

Definition: Major national award for performing arts.

- Field → **Music, Dance & Drama**
- Given by → **Sangeet Natak Akademi**

🎨 7. Lalit Kala Akademi Award

Field → Visual Arts

Includes:

- Painting
- Sculpture
- Photography
- Graphics etc.

🎬 8. Dadasaheb Phalke Award

Definition: India's highest honour in the field of **cinema**.

- Started → **1969**
- Named after → **Dadasaheb Phalke**
- First recipient → **Devika Rani**

🏏 9. Major Sports Awards

Major Dhyan Chand Khel Ratna Award

Definition: India's highest sporting honour.

- Started → **1991–92**
- Given for → Outstanding sporting performance

Arjuna Award

- Started → **1961**
- Given to → Outstanding sportspersons

Dronacharya Award

- Given to → **Sports coaches**

Dhyan Chand Award

- Given for → **Lifetime achievement in sports**

🌍 10. Nobel Prize

Definition: One of the world's most prestigious international awards.

- Established by → **Alfred Nobel**
- First awarded → **1901**

Categories

- Physics
- Chemistry
- Physiology or Medicine
- Literature
- Peace
- Economic Sciences

Indian / India-associated Nobel Laureates

Rabindranath Tagore
→ Literature, **1913**
→ First Asian Nobel laureate

C. V. Raman
→ Physics, **1930**

Mother Teresa
→ Peace, **1979**

Amartya Sen
→ Economic Sciences, **1998**

Kailash Satyarthi
→ Peace, **2014**

📖 11. Booker Prize

Definition: Major international literary award for fiction.

Important Indian/Indian-origin winners

- **Arundhati Roy** → *The God of Small Things* → **1997**
- **Kiran Desai** → *The Inheritance of Loss* → **2006**
- **Aravind Adiga** → *The White Tiger* → **2008**
- **Geetanjali Shree** → *Tomb of Sand* → **2022**
  → First Hindi novel to win the International Booker Prize.

🎥 12. Academy Awards (Oscars)

Definition: Major international awards for achievements in **film/cinema**.

- Presented by → **Academy of Motion Picture Arts and Sciences**
- First ceremony → **1929**

Indian Oscar Winners/Important Facts

Bhanu Athaiya
→ First Indian to win an Oscar
→ Costume Design, *Gandhi* (1983)

Satyajit Ray
→ Honorary Oscar, **1992**

A. R. Rahman
→ Best Original Score + Best Original Song
→ *Slumdog Millionaire* (2009)

Gulzar
→ Best Original Song as lyricist
→ *Slumdog Millionaire* (2009)

⭐ EXAM QUICK REVISION

- **Highest Civilian Award → Bharat Ratna**
- **Highest Military Gallantry Award (Wartime) → Param Vir Chakra**
- **Highest Peacetime Gallantry Award → Ashoka Chakra**
- **Highest Literary Award → Jnanpith Award**
- **Highest Indian Cinema Honour → Dadasaheb Phalke Award**
- **Highest Sports Honour → Major Dhyan Chand Khel Ratna**
- **Nobel → Alfred Nobel**
- **First Asian Nobel Laureate → Rabindranath Tagore**
- **First Indian Oscar Winner → Bhanu Athaiya**
- **First Indian Nobel Laureate → Rabindranath Tagore**
- **C. V. Raman → Nobel Physics**
- **Mother Teresa → Nobel Peace**
- **Amartya Sen → Nobel Economics**
- **Kailash Satyarthi → Nobel Peace**

IMPORTANT PERSONALITIES: INDIA & WORLD

Important Personality: A person who is notable because of their contribution to politics, science, literature, sports, culture, or another important field.

IN INDIA — IMPORTANT PERSONALITIES

🏛️ Politics & Freedom Movement

1. **Mahatma Gandhi** → Father of the Indian Independence Movement; Non-Violence
2. **Jawaharlal Nehru** → First Prime Minister of India
3. **Sardar Vallabhbhai Patel** → Iron Man of India; integration of princely states
4. **Subhas Chandra Bose** → Founded/led INA; **"Netaji"**
5. **B. R. Ambedkar** → Chief architect of Indian Constitution
6. **Bhagat Singh** → Revolutionary freedom fighter
7. **Bal Gangadhar Tilak** → "Swaraj is my birthright"
8. **Lala Lajpat Rai** → "Punjab Kesari"
9. **Bipin Chandra Pal** → Lal-Bal-Pal
10. **Sarojini Naidu** → "Nightingale of India"
11. **Maulana Abul Kalam Azad** → First Education Minister of independent India
12. **Rajendra Prasad** → First President of India
13. **S. Radhakrishnan** → First Vice-President; second President
14. **A. P. J. Abdul Kalam** → Missile Man of India; 11th President

---

🔬 Science & Technology

15. **C. V. Raman** → Raman Effect; Nobel Prize in Physics
16. **Homi J. Bhabha** → Father of Indian Nuclear Programme
17. **Vikram Sarabhai** → Father of Indian Space Programme
18. **Satish Dhawan** → Major figure in development of ISRO
19. **A. P. J. Abdul Kalam** → Missile technology and space programme
20. **M. S. Swaminathan** → Father of Indian Green Revolution
21. **Jagadish Chandra Bose** → Pioneer in radio/microwave research and plant science
22. **Srinivasa Ramanujan** → Mathematics
23. **Satyendra Nath Bose** → Bose-Einstein statistics
24. **Meghnad Saha** → Saha ionization equation

📚 Literature & Education

25. **Rabindranath Tagore** → *Gitanjali*; Nobel Prize in Literature
26. **Munshi Premchand** → Famous Hindi-Urdu novelist

27. **R. K. Narayan** → *Malgudi Days*
28. **Sarvepalli Radhakrishnan** → Philosopher and educationist
29. **Amartya Sen** → Nobel Prize in Economic Sciences
30. **Arundhati Roy** → *The God of Small Things*
31. **Ruskin Bond** → Indian writer and author

🎵 Art, Music & Cinema

32. **Satyajit Ray** → Legendary filmmaker; Honorary Oscar
33. **Bismillah Khan** → Shehnai maestro
34. **Ravi Shankar** → Sitar maestro
35. **Zakir Hussain** → Tabla maestro
36. **M. S. Subbulakshmi** → Carnatic vocalist
37. **Lata Mangeshkar** → Legendary playback singer
38. **Asha Bhosle** → Playback singer
39. **Bhupen Hazarika** → Musician, singer and filmmaker
40. **Dadasaheb Phalke** → Father of Indian Cinema

🌎 WORLD — IMPORTANT PERSONALITIES

🏛 Leaders & Historical Figures

41. **Abraham Lincoln** → US President; abolition of slavery
42. **George Washington** → First US President
43. **Nelson Mandela** → Anti-apartheid leader; first Black President of South Africa
44. **Winston Churchill** → British PM during much of WWII
45. **Napoleon Bonaparte** → French military leader and emperor
46. **Julius Caesar** → Roman military and political leader
47. **Alexander the Great** → Macedonian conqueror
48. **Mao Zedong** → Founder of People's Republic of China
49. **Mustafa Kemal Atatürk** → Founder of modern Turkey

🔬 Science

50. **Albert Einstein** → Theory of Relativity
51. **Isaac Newton** → Laws of Motion & Universal Gravitation
52. **Galileo Galilei** → Pioneer of modern astronomy
53. **Charles Darwin** → Theory of Evolution
54. **Marie Curie** → Radioactivity; Nobel laureate
55. **Nikola Tesla** → Electrical engineering and AC technology

56. **Thomas Edison** → Major inventor and electrical technology pioneer
57. **Stephen Hawking** → Black holes and theoretical physics
58. **Louis Pasteur** → Germ theory and vaccination
59. **Alexander Fleming** → Discovered penicillin

Philosophy & Literature

60. **Plato** → Greek philosopher; *The Republic*
61. **Aristotle** → Greek philosopher and scientist
62. **William Shakespeare** → *Hamlet, Macbeth, Othello*
63. **Leo Tolstoy** → *War and Peace*
64. **George Orwell** → *1984, Animal Farm*
65. **Charles Dickens** → *Oliver Twist, A Tale of Two Cities*
66. **Mark Twain** → *The Adventures of Tom Sawyer*
67. **J. K. Rowling** → *Harry Potter*

MUST REMEMBER

- **Constitution → B. R. Ambedkar**
- **Space Programme → Vikram Sarabhai**
- **Nuclear Programme → Homi Bhabha**
- **Green Revolution → M. S. Swaminathan**
- **Raman Effect → C. V. Raman**
- **Mathematics → Ramanujan**
- **Gitanjali → Rabindranath Tagore**
- **Shehnai → Bismillah Khan**
- **Sitar → Ravi Shankar**
- **Tabla → Zakir Hussain**
- **Relativity → Einstein**
- **Gravity/Laws of Motion → Newton**
- **Evolution → Darwin**
- **Penicillin → Alexander Fleming**
- **Radioactivity → Marie Curie**
- **Telephone → Alexander Graham Bell**
- **Apartheid struggle → Nelson Mandela**
- **Harry Potter → J. K. Rowling**

IMPORTANT DAYS & DATES

Important Day: A day officially or internationally observed to highlight an important **event, cause, person, issue or awareness campaign**.

IN IMPORTANT NATIONAL DAYS — INDIA

1. **12 January** → National Youth Day
2. **15 January** → Army Day
3. **25 January** → National Voters' Day
4. **26 January** → Republic Day
5. **28 February** → National Science Day
6. **8 March** → International Women's Day
7. **22 March** → World Water Day
8. **7 April** → World Health Day
9. **14 April** → Ambedkar Jayanti
10. **22 April** → Earth Day
11. **1 May** → Labour Day / International Workers' Day
12. **11 May** → National Technology Day
13. **5 June** → World Environment Day
14. **21 June** → International Day of Yoga
15. **11 July** → World Population Day
16. **15 August** → Independence Day
17. **29 August** → National Sports Day
18. **5 September** → Teachers' Day
19. **14 September** → Hindi Diwas
20. **2 October** → Gandhi Jayanti
21. **24 October** → United Nations Day
22. **31 October** → National Unity Day
23. **14 November** → Children's Day
24. **26 November** → Constitution Day
25. **10 December** → Human Rights Day

🌎 IMPORTANT INTERNATIONAL DAYS

26. **24 January** → International Day of Education
27. **4 February** → World Cancer Day
28. **21 February** → International Mother Language Day
29. **8 March** → International Women's Day
30. **22 March** → World Water Day
31. **7 April** → World Health Day
32. **22 April** → Earth Day
33. **3 May** → World Press Freedom Day
34. **5 June** → World Environment Day
35. **8 June** → World Oceans Day
36. **12 June** → World Day Against Child Labour
37. **20 June** → World Refugee Day
38. **21 June** → International Day of Yoga
39. **30 July** → World Day Against Trafficking in Persons

40. **12 August** → International Youth Day
41. **8 September** → International Literacy Day
42. **16 September** → World Ozone Day
43. **21 September** → International Day of Peace
44. **24 October** → United Nations Day
45. **16 November** → International Day for Tolerance
46. **19 November** → World Toilet Day
47. **20 November** → World Children's Day
48. **1 December** → World AIDS Day
49. **3 December** → International Day of Persons with Disabilities
50. **10 December** → Human Rights Day

🧠 IMPORTANT TERMS

National Day: A day officially observed by a country for an important national event or purpose.

International Day: A day recognized internationally to create awareness about a particular issue or cause.

Awareness: Knowledge and understanding about an important issue.

Commemoration: Remembering and honouring an important event or person.

🔥 MOST IMPORTANT FOR EXAMS

26 January → Republic Day
28 February → National Science Day
22 March → World Water Day
7 April → World Health Day
22 April → Earth Day
11 May → National Technology Day
5 June → World Environment Day
21 June → International Yoga Day
15 August → Independence Day
29 August → National Sports Day
5 September → Teachers' Day
2 October → Gandhi Jayanti
31 October → National Unity Day
14 November → Children's Day
26 November → Constitution Day

1 December → World AIDS Day
10 December → Human Rights Day

list of all **28 States** and **8 Union Territories (UTs)** of India along with their Chief Ministers (or administrative status) and their official government web portals.

States of India

#	State	Chief Minister	Official Government Portal
1	**Andhra Pradesh**	N. Chandrababu Naidu	ap.gov.in
2	**Arunachal Pradesh**	Pema Khandu	arunachalpradesh.gov.in
3	**Assam**	Himanta Biswa Sarma	assam.gov.in
4	**Bihar**	Samrat Choudhary	state.bihar.gov.in
5	**Chhattisgarh**	Vishnu Deo Sai	cgstate.gov.in
6	**Goa**	Pramod Sawant	goa.gov.in
7	**Gujarat**	Bhupendrabhai Patel	gujaratindia.gov.in
8	**Haryana**	Nayab Singh Saini	haryana.gov.in
9	**Himachal Pradesh**	Sukhvinder Singh Sukhu	himachal.nic.in
10	**Jharkhand**	Hemant Soren	jharkhand.gov.in
11	**Karnataka**	D. K. Shivakumar	karnataka.gov.in
12	**Kerala**	V. D. Satheesan	kerala.gov.in

13	**Madhya Pradesh**	Mohan Yadav	mp.gov.in
14	**Maharashtra**	Devendra Fadnavis	maharashtra.gov.in
15	**Manipur**	Yumnam Khemchand Singh	manipur.gov.in
16	**Meghalaya**	Conrad Sangma	meghalaya.gov.in
17	**Mizoram**	Lalduhoma	mizoram.gov.in
18	**Nagaland**	Neiphiu Rio	nagaland.gov.in
19	**Odisha**	Mohan Charan Majhi	odisha.gov.in
20	**Punjab**	Bhagwant Mann	punjab.gov.in
21	**Rajasthan**	Bhajan Lal Sharma	rajasthan.gov.in
22	**Sikkim**	Prem Singh Tamang (P. S. Golay)	sikkim.gov.in
23	**Tamil Nadu**	C. Joseph Vijay	tn.gov.in
24	**Telangana**	A. Revanth Reddy	telangana.gov.in
25	**Tripura**	Dr. Manik Saha	tripura.gov.in
26	**Uttar Pradesh**	Yogi Adityanath	up.gov.in
27	**Uttarakhand**	Pushkar Singh Dhami	uk.gov.in
28	**West Bengal**	Suvendu Adhikari	wb.gov.in

Union Territories (UTs)

(Note: Only 3 UTs currently have legislative assemblies and Chief Ministers. The remaining UTs are administered directly by Lieutenant Governors or Administrators appointed by the President).

#	Union Territory	Chief Minister / Administrative Head	Official Government Portal
1	**Delhi (NCT)**	Rekha Gupta	delhi.gov.in
2	**Jammu and Kashmir**	Omar Abdullah	jk.gov.in
3	**Puducherry**	N. Rangaswamy	puducherry.gov.in
4	**Andaman & Nicobar Islands**	*No CM* (Lt. Governor Administered)	andaman.gov.in
5	**Chandigarh**	*No CM* (Administrator Administered)	chandigarh.gov.in
6	**Dadra & Nagar Haveli and Daman & Diu**	*No CM* (Administrator Administered)	daman.nic.in
7	**Ladakh**	*No CM* (Lt. Governor Administered)	ladakh.gov.in
8	**Lakshadweep**	*No CM* (Administrator Administered)	lakshadweep.gov.in

SPACE, SCIENCE & TECHNOLOGY

🌌 1. SPACE & UNIVERSE BASICS

Universe: Everything that exists — space, stars, planets, galaxies, matter and energy.

Galaxy: A huge collection of stars, gas and dust held together by gravity.

Milky Way: The galaxy in which our **Solar System** is located.

Solar System: The **Sun and all objects that orbit it**, including planets, moons, asteroids and comets.

Star: A huge ball of hot gases that produces its own **light and heat**.

Planet: A celestial body that orbits a star and does not produce its own light.

Satellite: An object that revolves around a planet or another celestial body.

Natural Satellite: A naturally occurring body orbiting a planet, e.g. **Moon**.

Artificial Satellite: A human-made object placed in space to perform specific tasks.

🌞 2. SOLAR SYSTEM

Order of Planets from the Sun

Mercury → Venus → Earth → Mars → Jupiter → Saturn → Uranus → Neptune

⭐ Important Facts

- **Nearest planet to Sun → Mercury**
- **Farthest planet → Neptune**
- **Largest planet → Jupiter**
- **Smallest planet → Mercury**
- **Hottest planet → Venus**
- **Planet known as Red Planet → Mars**
- **Planet known as Blue Planet → Earth**
- **Planet with prominent rings → Saturn**
- **Planet rotating on its side → Uranus**
- **Planet with fastest rotation → Jupiter**
- **Earth's natural satellite → Moon**

Dwarf Planet: A celestial body that orbits the Sun but does not meet all the conditions required to be classified as a planet.

Pluto → Dwarf Planet

🌙 3. MOON

- **Moon is Earth's natural satellite.**
- It has **no significant atmosphere** like Earth.
- It does not produce its own light; it **reflects sunlight**.
- **First human on Moon → Neil Armstrong**
- **Mission → Apollo 11**
- **Year → 1969**
- First humans to walk on Moon → **Neil Armstrong and Buzz Aldrin**

Moon Landing: Apollo 11 landed on the Moon on **20 July 1969** (UTC).

🚀 4. IMPORTANT SPACE MILESTONES

First artificial satellite → Sputnik 1 (1957)
Country → Soviet Union (USSR)

First human in space → Yuri Gagarin (1961)
Country → USSR

First woman in space → Valentina Tereshkova (1963)
Country → USSR

First person to walk on Moon → Neil Armstrong (1969)

First woman to walk on Moon → None yet *(as of 2026)*

First Indian citizen in space → Rakesh Sharma (1984)

First Indian-born woman in space → Kalpana Chawla

IN 5. ISRO

ISRO: Indian Space Research Organisation.

- Established → **1969**
- Headquarters → **Bengaluru, Karnataka**
- Founder/Key figure → **Vikram Sarabhai**
- Current Chairman → **V. Narayanan**

Important ISRO Missions

Aryabhata

- India's first satellite
- Launched → **1975**

Chandrayaan-1

- India's first Moon mission
- Launched → **2008**
- Important discovery → Evidence of **water molecules/water-related signatures on the Moon**

Mangalyaan / Mars Orbiter Mission

- India's first Mars mission
- Launched → **2013**
- Made India the **first Asian nation to reach Mars orbit on its first attempt**

Chandrayaan-3

- Launched → **2023**
- Achieved a successful **soft landing near the Moon's south polar region**
- India became the **4th country to achieve a soft lunar landing**

Aditya-L1

- India's first dedicated solar mission
- Studies the **Sun**
- Placed in **halo orbit around Sun–Earth L1 point**

Gaganyaan

- India's planned **human spaceflight programme**
- Objective → Send Indian astronauts to low Earth orbit and safely return them.

🛰️ 6. IMPORTANT INDIAN SATELLITES

Aryabhata → First Indian satellite

INSAT → Communication and meteorological services

IRS → Earth observation / remote sensing

Cartosat → Earth imaging and mapping

NavIC → India's regional satellite navigation system

RISAT → Radar imaging / Earth observation

🌎 7. IMPORTANT SPACE ORGANISATIONS

NASA
→ United States
→ National Aeronautics and Space Administration

ESA
→ European Space Agency

Roscosmos
→ Russia's space agency

CNSA
→ China National Space Administration

JAXA
→ Japan Aerospace Exploration Agency

ISRO
→ India

🔬 8. IMPORTANT SCIENTIFIC DISCOVERIES

Gravity → Isaac Newton

Laws of Motion → Isaac Newton

Theory of Relativity → Albert Einstein

Evolution by Natural Selection → Charles Darwin

Penicillin → Alexander Fleming

Radioactivity → Henri Becquerel

Electron → J. J. Thomson

Atomic Nucleus → Ernest Rutherford

Neutron → James Chadwick

X-rays → Wilhelm Conrad Röntgen

Periodic Table → Dmitri Mendeleev

Raman Effect → C. V. Raman

Blood Circulation → William Harvey

🤖 9. MODERN TECHNOLOGY

Artificial Intelligence (AI): Technology that enables computers to perform tasks requiring human-like intelligence, such as learning, reasoning and language processing.

Machine Learning (ML): A branch of AI in which computers learn patterns from data.

Robotics: Technology involving the design and use of robots.

Internet: A worldwide network connecting computers and devices.

Cloud Computing: Using remote internet-based servers to store data and run applications.

Cybersecurity: Protection of computers, networks and data from unauthorized access or attacks.

Blockchain: A distributed digital record system in which transactions are stored in linked blocks.

5G: Fifth-generation mobile network technology offering high speed, low latency and greater connectivity.

IoT (Internet of Things): Network of physical devices connected to the internet that can collect and exchange data.

GPS: Global Positioning System used to determine location and provide navigation.

🧠 10. AI & NEW TECHNOLOGIES

Generative AI: AI that can create new content such as **text, images, audio, video or code**.

Chatbot: Software designed to communicate with users through conversation.

Large Language Model (LLM): AI model trained on large amounts of text to understand and generate language.

Quantum Computing: Computing technology based on **quantum mechanics**, using quantum bits or **qubits**.

Drone: An unmanned aircraft that can be controlled remotely or operate autonomously.

3D Printing: Creating physical objects layer by layer from a digital design.

Virtual Reality (VR): Technology that creates an immersive computer-generated environment.

Augmented Reality (AR): Technology that adds digital information or objects to the real-world view.

★ MOST IMPORTANT EXAM ONE-LINERS

- **Milky Way → Our galaxy**
- **Solar System → Milky Way**
- **Largest planet → Jupiter**
- **Smallest planet → Mercury**
- **Hottest planet → Venus**
- **Red Planet → Mars**
- **Blue Planet → Earth**
- **Planet with prominent rings → Saturn**
- **Natural satellite of Earth → Moon**
- **First artificial satellite → Sputnik 1**
- **First human in space → Yuri Gagarin**
- **First human on Moon → Neil Armstrong**
- **First Indian in space → Rakesh Sharma**
- **First Indian satellite → Aryabhata**
- **ISRO headquarters → Bengaluru**
- **Chandrayaan-1 → 2008**
- **Mangalyaan → Mars**
- **Chandrayaan-3 → 2023**
- **Aditya-L1 → Sun**
- **Gaganyaan → Human spaceflight**
- **Gravity → Newton**
- **Relativity → Einstein**
- **Penicillin → Fleming**
- **Electron → J. J. Thomson**
- **Neutron → Chadwick**
- **Raman Effect → C. V. Raman**
- **AI → Artificial Intelligence**

- **ML → Machine Learning**
- **IoT → Internet of Things**
- **GPS → Global Positioning System**
- **5G → Fifth-generation mobile network**

🚀 SPACE, SCIENCE & TECHNOLOGY — COMPLETE GK

1. 🚀 SPACE EXPLORATION & IMPORTANT MILESTONES

Space Exploration: Space ke planets, stars, Moon, galaxies aur other celestial objects ka scientific study aur exploration.

Milestone	Important Fact
First artificial satellite	**Sputnik 1 — USSR, 1957**
First human in space	**Yuri Gagarin — USSR, 1961**
First woman in space	**Valentina Tereshkova — USSR, 1963**
First spacewalk	**Alexei Leonov — USSR, 1965**
First human on Moon	**Neil Armstrong — USA, 1969**
First humans on Moon	**Neil Armstrong & Buzz Aldrin — Apollo 11**
First Indian in space	**Rakesh Sharma — 1984**
First reusable orbital spacecraft	**Space Shuttle Columbia — 1981**
First space station	**Salyut 1 — USSR, 1971**
First privately funded spacecraft to reach orbit	**Falcon 1 — SpaceX, 2008**

International Space Station (ISS): A large international space laboratory orbiting Earth.

SpaceX: Private aerospace company founded by **Elon Musk**, known for reusable rockets and spacecraft.

IN 2. ISRO

ISRO: Indian Space Research Organisation — India's national space agency.

- Established → **1969**
- Headquarters → **Bengaluru**
- Founder/key architect → **Vikram Sarabhai**
- First ISRO Chairman → **Vikram Sarabhai**
- Current Chairman → **V. Narayanan**
- Major work → Satellites, launch vehicles, space science and Earth observation

Important Indian Launch Vehicles

PSLV: Polar Satellite Launch Vehicle
→ Known as a highly reliable workhorse for launching satellites.

GSLV: Geosynchronous Satellite Launch Vehicle
→ Used for heavier satellites.

LVM3: Launch Vehicle Mark-3
→ India's powerful heavy-lift launch vehicle.

🛰️ 3. INDIAN SATELLITES & MISSIONS

Important Satellites

Aryabhata
→ India's first satellite
→ **1975**

INSAT
→ Communication, broadcasting and meteorological services.

IRS
→ Remote sensing and Earth observation.

Cartosat
→ Mapping and Earth imaging.

NavIC
→ India's regional satellite navigation system.

Important Missions

Chandrayaan-1
→ India's first Moon mission
→ **2008**
→ Important evidence of water/hydroxyl on the Moon.

Chandrayaan-2
→ Moon mission launched in **2019**
→ Orbiter continues to provide scientific data; lander lost contact during landing.

Chandrayaan-3
→ **2023**
→ Successful soft landing near the Moon's south polar region.
→ India became the **4th country to achieve a soft lunar landing**.

Mangalyaan / Mars Orbiter Mission
→ India's first Mars mission
→ Launched **2013**
→ India became the first country to reach Mars orbit on its first attempt.

Aditya-L1
→ India's first dedicated solar mission
→ Studies the **Sun**
→ Located around the **Sun–Earth L1 point**.

Gaganyaan
→ India's human spaceflight programme
→ Aim: Carry Indian astronauts to low Earth orbit and return them safely.

🌎 4. MAJOR SPACE AGENCIES

Agency	Country/Region	Full Form / Main Work
ISRO	India	Indian space programme
NASA	USA	National Aeronautics and Space Administration
ESA	Europe	European Space Agency
Roscosmos	Russia	Russian space agency
CNSA	China	China National Space Administration
JAXA	Japan	Japan Aerospace Exploration Agency

🌟 Important Missions

NASA → Apollo 11 → First humans on Moon

CNSA → Chang'e missions → Moon exploration

ESA → Rosetta mission → Comet study

JAXA → Hayabusa missions → Asteroids

🔬 5. MAJOR SCIENTIFIC DISCOVERIES

Discovery	Scientist
Gravity	**Isaac Newton**
Laws of Motion	**Isaac Newton**
Electromagnetic induction	**Michael Faraday**
Evolution by natural selection	**Charles Darwin**
Penicillin	**Alexander Fleming**
X-rays	**Wilhelm Röntgen**
Radioactivity	**Henri Becquerel**
Electron	**J. J. Thomson**
Atomic nucleus	**Ernest Rutherford**
Neutron	**James Chadwick**
Proton	**Ernest Rutherford**
Periodic Table	**Dmitri Mendeleev**
Raman Effect	**C. V. Raman**
Blood circulation	**William Harvey**
Vaccination against smallpox	**Edward Jenner**
Germ theory	**Louis Pasteur / Robert Koch**
Insulin	**Frederick Banting & Charles Best**

---

6. IMPORTANT PHYSICS, CHEMISTRY & BIOLOGY SCIENTISTS

Physics

Isaac Newton → Laws of Motion & Gravitation

Albert Einstein → Theory of Relativity

Galileo Galilei → Modern observational astronomy

James Clerk Maxwell → Electromagnetic theory

C. V. Raman → Raman Effect

J. J. Thomson → Electron

Ernest Rutherford → Nuclear model; proton

James Chadwick → Neutron

Chemistry

Dmitri Mendeleev → Periodic Table

Antoine Lavoisier → Father of Modern Chemistry

John Dalton → Atomic Theory

Amedeo Avogadro → Avogadro's law

Marie Curie → Research on radioactivity

Robert Boyle → Boyle's Law

🧬 Biology

Charles Darwin → Evolution by natural selection

Gregor Mendel → Father of Genetics

Louis Pasteur → Germ theory and vaccines

Robert Hooke → Coined term "cell" after observing cork

Anton van Leeuwenhoek → Pioneer of microscopy; observed microorganisms

Alexander Fleming → Penicillin

Carolus Linnaeus → Scientific classification / taxonomy

Watson & Crick → DNA double-helix model, based importantly on data from Rosalind Franklin and Maurice Wilkins.

🤖 7. AI & MACHINE LEARNING

Artificial Intelligence (AI): Technology that enables machines to perform tasks associated with human intelligence, such as learning, reasoning and language processing.

Machine Learning (ML): A branch of AI where computers learn patterns from data instead of being explicitly programmed for every task.

Deep Learning: A type of machine learning using multi-layered **neural networks**.

Generative AI: AI that can create new content such as text, images, audio, video or code.

Natural Language Processing (NLP): Technology that enables computers to understand and generate human language.

Computer Vision: AI technology that enables computers to interpret images and video.

Neural Network: Computing model inspired by the structure of the human brain.

Chatbot: Software that communicates with users through text or voice.

⭐ Easy Difference

AI → Big field

ML → Learning from data

Deep Learning → Neural networks

Generative AI → Creates new content

💻 8. INTERNET, 5G, GPS, IoT & BLOCKCHAIN

🌐 Internet

Internet: A global network connecting millions of computers and devices.

World Wide Web (WWW): A system of interlinked web pages and resources accessed through the Internet.

URL: Uniform Resource Locator — the address of a resource on the Internet.

HTTP/HTTPS: Protocols used for transferring web resources; **HTTPS** adds encryption/security.

IP Address: Numerical/network address used to identify a device or interface on a network.

📱 5G

5G: Fifth generation of mobile network technology.

Important features:

- Higher data speeds
- Lower latency
- Greater device connectivity
- Supports technologies such as IoT and autonomous systems

GPS

GPS: Global Positioning System.

- Developed by → **United States**
- Uses → Satellites
- Purpose → Location, navigation and timing

NavIC: India's regional satellite navigation system.

IoT

IoT: Internet of Things.

Definition: Connecting physical devices to the Internet so they can collect, send or receive data.

Examples:

- Smart watches
- Smart TVs
- Smart homes
- Connected vehicles
- Industrial sensors

Blockchain

Blockchain: A distributed digital ledger in which records are stored in linked blocks.

Main features:

- Distributed
- Difficult to alter
- Transparent depending on implementation
- Used in cryptocurrencies and many other applications

Bitcoin: A decentralized digital cryptocurrency that uses blockchain technology.

🧠 9. MODERN & EMERGING TECHNOLOGIES

☁️ Cloud Computing

Using remote internet-based servers for **storage, computing and software services**.

🥽 Virtual Reality (VR)

Creates a **computer-generated immersive environment**.

📱 Augmented Reality (AR)

Adds digital information or objects to the **real-world view**.

🖨️ 3D Printing

Creates physical objects **layer by layer** from a digital model.

🤖 Robotics

Design and use of machines/robots that can perform tasks automatically or semi-automatically.

🧬 Biotechnology

Use of living organisms, cells or biological processes to develop useful products and technologies.

⚛️ Quantum Computing

Computing based on principles of **quantum mechanics**, using **qubits** instead of ordinary bits.

🧠 Edge Computing

Processing data closer to the device/source instead of sending everything to a distant central server.

🔐 Cybersecurity

Protection of computers, networks, systems and data from unauthorized access and cyberattacks.

🤖 Big Data

Extremely large and complex datasets that require advanced methods to store, process and analyze.

🌐 6G

The proposed next generation after 5G, expected to provide even greater speed, connectivity and low latency.

🔥 FINAL EXAM ONE-LINERS

- **First artificial satellite → Sputnik 1**
- **First human in space → Yuri Gagarin**
- **First woman in space → Valentina Tereshkova**
- **First human on Moon → Neil Armstrong**
- **First Indian in space → Rakesh Sharma**
- **ISRO established → 1969**
- **ISRO HQ → Bengaluru**
- **India's first satellite → Aryabhata**
- **First Indian Moon mission → Chandrayaan-1**
- **India's first Mars mission → Mangalyaan**
- **Successful lunar landing → Chandrayaan-3**
- **Solar mission → Aditya-L1**
- **Human spaceflight programme → Gaganyaan**
- **USA space agency → NASA**
- **European space agency → ESA**
- **Russia → Roscosmos**
- **China → CNSA**
- **Japan → JAXA**
- **Electron → J. J. Thomson**
- **Neutron → James Chadwick**
- **Nucleus → Rutherford**
- **Periodic Table → Mendeleev**
- **Genetics → Gregor Mendel**
- **Evolution → Charles Darwin**
- **Penicillin → Alexander Fleming**
- **Raman Effect → C. V. Raman**
- **AI → Artificial Intelligence**
- **ML → Machine Learning**
- **IoT → Internet of Things**
- **GPS → Global Positioning System**
- **5G → Fifth-generation mobile network**

- **VR → Virtual Reality**
- **AR → Augmented Reality**
- **Blockchain → Distributed digital ledger**
- **Quantum computing → Qubits**

FINAL REVISION

Remember What You Learn

This book has been prepared to provide students and competitive examination aspirants with important and useful General Knowledge in a simple, concise and exam-oriented format.

COVERED TOPICS

India • World • History • Geography • Science • Technology • Space • Art & Culture
Awards • Important Personalities • Organizations • Environment • Sports • Current Affairs

QUICK REVISION

Important Facts • One-Liners • Important Dates • Important Places
Important People • Important Discoveries • Important Organizations

> "Knowledge becomes powerful when you understand, remember and apply it."

COMPILED & PREPARED BY

MAJJARIB KHAN

2026 EDITION

LEARN • REVISE • REMEMBER • SUCCEED